EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 7

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers

Excel Publishers
"Excellence in every page"

For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies in Victoria Mutundwe Primary School and Makindye Junior school with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorized act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

***Author*:** **Kimbugwe Apollo**

Typing: **Nassuuna Joyce**

Technical adviser: **Mary Flavia Namulindwa**

Cover design: **Excel Graphics**

Editing: **Excel Publishers Editorial Board**

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Seven has been developed basing on the revised Primary Seven Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organized, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Seven in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the candidates.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts:

TEL: +256 771 623617  and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Topic 1: Location of Africa on the Map of the World.

- Introduction to The World.....6
- Continents of The World.....6
- Uniqueness of Africa 7
- Locating Africa using Lines of Longitude and Lines of Latitude 7
- Using The Prime Meridian to tell the International time.....9
- The Shape and Size of Africa.....11
- African Countries 12
- Political Regions of Africa 14
- Land Locked Countries in Africa.....15

Topic 2: Physical Features of Africa.

- Introduction to Physical Features 22
- Location of Major Physical Features in Africa.....23
- Mountains 23
- Plateaus 26
- The Great Rift Valley and Basins.....27
- Coastal Plains 28
- Lakes 28
- Rivers 31
- The Influence of Physical Features 35

Topic 3: The Climate of Africa.

- Weather 39
- Climatic Zones of Africa 43
- Factors that Influence the Climate of Africa 50
- Breezes and Pressure Belts.....53
- Climate Change.....54
- The Influence of Climate on Human Activities.....55

Topic 4: Vegetation of Africa.

- Introduction to Vegetation 60
- Vegetation Zones of Africa 60
- Vegetation Distribution in Africa 67
- The Influence of Vegetation on Animals 68
- National Parks in Africa 69
- Tourism industry in Africa 72
- The Influence of Vegetation on Population 73
- Vegetation Conservation 74

Topic 5:The People of Africa, Ethnic Groups and Settlement patterns.

- Origin of the People of Africa 78
- Major Ethnic Groups in Africa 81
- Migrations today 86
- Political, Social and Economic Organisation among The People of Africa.....90

- Trans-Saharan trade 97

Topic 6. Foreign Influence in Africa.

- Foreign Traders in Africa.....100
- Trans-Atlantic trade.....102
- Christian Missionaries in Africa.....103
- European Explorers in Africa.....107
- The Portuguese Explorers in Africa.....112
- Colonialists in Africa.....114
- Scramble for and Partition of Africa.....115
- Establishment of Colonial Rule in Africa.....117
- Colonial Administrative systems in Africa.....119
- The Great Trek 121
- Apartheid Policy in South Africa.....122
- Reactions to Colonial Rule in Africa.....124
- Effects of Colonial rule.....126

Topic 7. Nationalism and The Road to Independence in Africa.

- Pan Africanism.....131
- The Rise of African Nationalism.....133
- The Struggle for Independence in Africa.....136
- Decolonisation of Africa.....137
- Systems of Government.....139
- Elections.....141

Topic 8. Post Independence Africa.

- Formation of The OAU.....146
- Formation of The AU.....148
- Regional Economic Groupings in Africa.....150
- EAC as a Common Market.....152

Topic 9. Economic Developments in Africa.

- Economic Resources and Developments in Africa.....156
- Industrial Development in Africa.....157
- Energy Resources in Africa.....159
- Multipurpose River Projects in Africa.....159
- Agricultural Development in Africa.....161
- Mining Industry in Africa.....163
- Tourism Industry in Africa.....164
- The Fishing Industry in Africa.....165
- Case Studies of Economic Developments.....167
- Challenges affecting Economic Developments in Africa.....185

Topic 10. Major World Organisations.

- Formation of The League of Nations.....193
- The United Nations Organisation (UNO).....193
- The Universal Declaration of Human rights.....197
- The Commonwealth of Nations.....199
- Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC).....202

TOPIC 1: LOCATION OF AFRICA ON THE MAP OF THE WORLD

INTRODUCTION TO THE WORLD

- The world refers to the earth, its countries, peoples and natural features.
- The earth is the part of the world made up of land and water.
- The part of the earth made of water is called hydrosphere.
- The Rotation of the earth on its axis causes days and nights.
- One complete rotation of the earth (of 360°) is made in a period of 24hrs.Therefore, the earth rotates through an angle of 15° in every 1hr (15°=60min/1hr), 1° in every 4min (1°=4min)
- The Revolution of the earth around the sun causes changes in seasons.
- An Orbit is the path followed by a planet as it moves around the sun.

Other planets that move around (revolve) the sun.

Distance from the sun in million km.	*Planet*	*Duration of one complete revolution*	*Diameter*	*Position according to size*	*Number of satellites*
57.9	Mercury	88days	4,879km	8th	0
107.9	Venus	225days	12,104km	6th	0
145.5	Earth	365.3days	12,756km	5th	1
228	Mars	1.9years	6,794km	7th	2
777.9	Jupiter	11.9years	142,984km	1st	16
1426	Saturn	29.4years	120,536km	2nd	18
2868	Uranus	83.8years	51,118km	3rd	18
4495	Neptune	163.8	49,528km	4th	8

- The hydrosphere is made up of water bodies such as;Oceans,seas and lakes.

NB. A Water body is a large area covered with water.

The Major oceans and seas of the world

- Pacific ocean
- Atlantic ocean
- Indian ocean
- Arctic ocean
- Mediterranean sea
- Red sea
- Caspian sea
- Dead sea

CONTINENTS OF THE WORLD.

- *A continent* is a large mass of land on the earth's surface.

The world is divided into 7 continents.

These include;

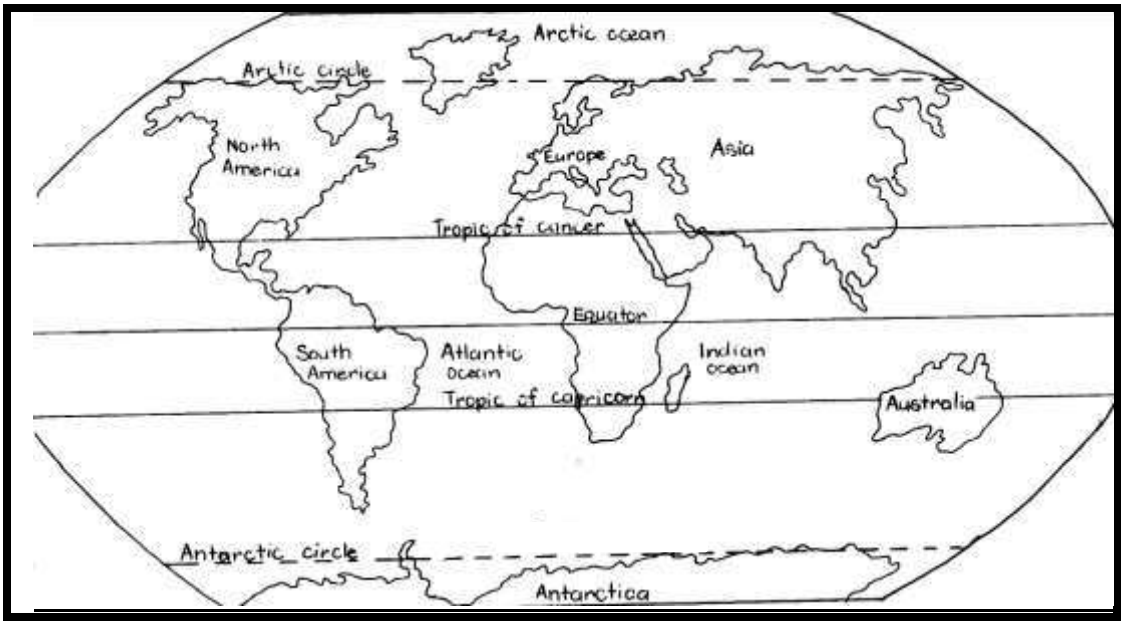
- Asia
- Africa
- North America.
- South America
- Antarctica
- Europe
- Australia

POSITION OF WORLD CONTINENTS, OCEANS AND SEAS

Facts about world continents.

- ✓ *Asia is the largest continent, followed by Africa, North America, South America, Antarctica, Europe and Australia.*
- ✓ ***Antarctica*** *is the only continent which is not inhabited by people because it experiences very cold climatic conditions.*
- ✓ *The highest point on earth is mountain Everest in Asia.*
- ✓ *Africa is the most central continent. This is because it is the only continent crossed by both the Equator and the Prime meridian,*
- ✓ *Antarctica is the largest cold desert in the world.*

THE WORLD MAP



THE CONTINENT OF AFRICA

How Africa is unique (different from other continents)

- Africa is the second largest continent.
- Africa is the most central continent
- Africa has the largest and hottest desert in the world.
- Africa has the largest number of inland countries.
- Africa has the largest race of black people.
- The longest river in the world is found in Africa.
- It is the only continent that lies within the four hemispheres.
- It has the largest area lying between the tropics.
- The shortest people in the world are found in Africa (the Pygmies)

Note:- *The Early Europeans referred to Africa as a dark continent because they had little knowledge about the interior of Africa.*

Factors that kept Africa's interior unknown to the Europeans for so long.

- Presence of huge highlands at certain entry points
- Africa's interior had hostile people.
- Presence of hot deserts at both extremes of the continent.
- Presence of dangerous animals in the interior of Africa.
- Lack of proper routes to the interior of Africa.
- Africa's interior had thick forests which harboured disease vectors.

LOCATING AFRICA USING LINES OF LONGITUDE AND LINES OF LATITUDE. (Grid reference)

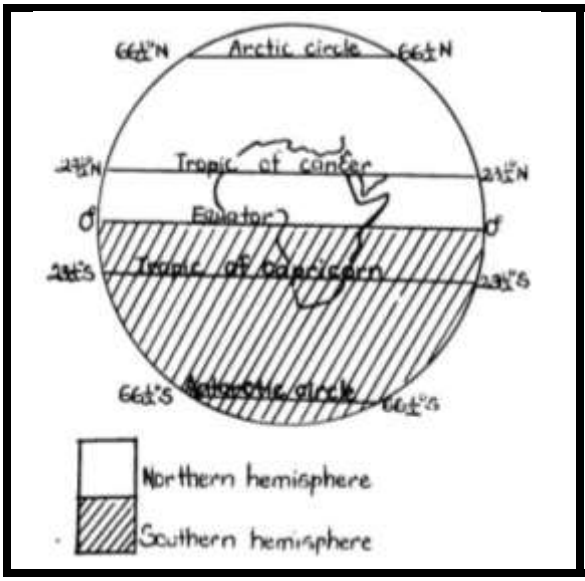
- ***Grid reference system*** is the method of locating places using lines of longitude and lines of latitude.
- Africa lies between latitudes 37°N and 35°S, and longitudes 17°W and 52°E.

Lines of Latitude.

- These are imaginary lines drawn on maps or globe from East to West.
- The general name for all lines of latitude is ***parallels*** because they do not meet at any point.
- ***Latitude*** is the distance in degrees North or South of the equator.
- Lines of latitude help in determining climate of places.
- Lines of latitude help us to tell how far a place is North or South of the equator.

Major lines of latitude.

- **The Equator (0º)**
- **Tropic of Cancer (23½ºN)**
- **Tropic of Capricorn (23½ºS)**
- **Arctic circle (66½ºN)**
- **Antarctic circle (66½ºS)**



THE EQUATOR

- **The Equator divides the world into two equal parts (hemispheres)**
- **The Equator is marked 0º because it is the starting point for all latitude readings.**
- **The Equator is the most important line of latitude because it crosses the world at the centre.**
- **All countries which are crossed by the equator lie in both the Northern and Southern hemisphere.**
- ***A hemisphere* is a half part of the world as divided by the equator or prime meridian.**
- **The area between the Tropic of cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn is called the *Tropical region*.**

Activity;

Use the political map of Africa and identify all African countries that;

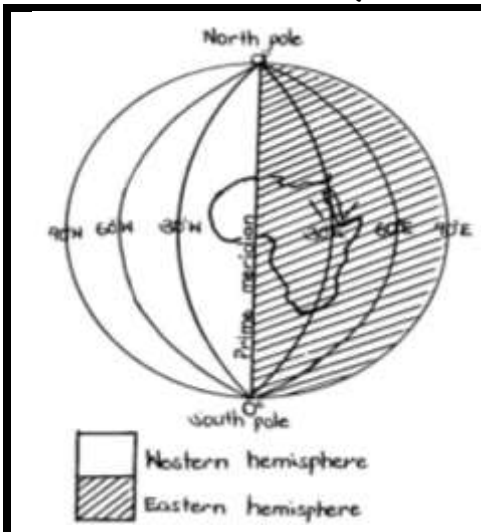
(i) are crossed by the Equator.
(ii) completely lie in the Northern hemisphere
(iii) completely lie in the Southern hemisphere.
(iv) lie in both the Northern and the Southern hemisphere

Lines of Longitude

- ***Lines of longitude* are imaginary lines drawn on maps or globes from North pole to the South pole of the earth.**
- **The general name for all lines of longitude is *Meridians*.**
- **Lines of longitude meet at the poles of the earth.**
- ***Longitude* is the distance in degrees East or West of the Prime meridian.**

Major lines of longitude.

The Prime meridian/ Greenwich meridian (0º)
The International dateline. (180ºE or W)



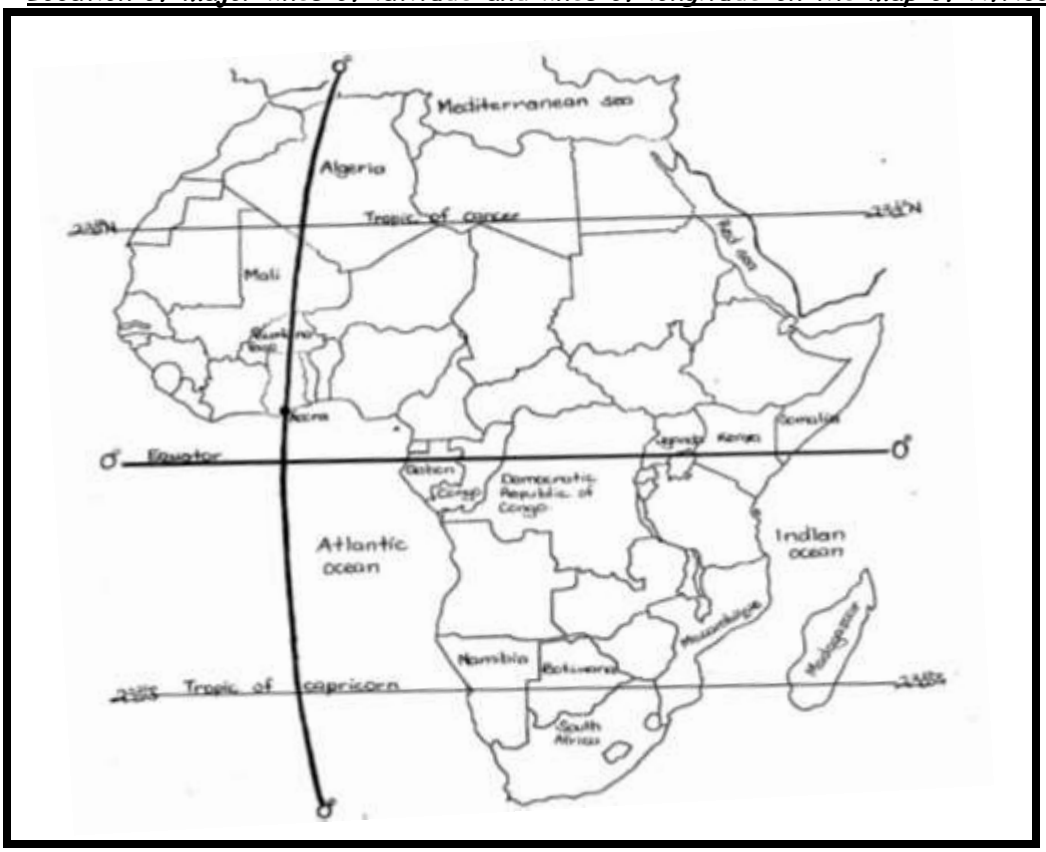
THE PRIME MERIDIAN/ GREENWICH MERIDIAN

- **The Prime meridian is also called the *Greenwich meridian* because it crosses Greenwich town in London.**
- **The Prime meridian is marked 0º because it is the starting point for all longitude readings.**
- **The Prime meridian divides the world into the Eastern and Western hemisphere.**
- **All countries crossed by the Prime meridian lie in both the Eastern and Western hemisphere.**

NOTE;

- *The Prime meridian helps in telling international time.*
- *The International dateline separates one day from the next day.*
  e.g. East of the Greenwich meridian may be Friday while West of it is Thursday
- *Both lines of longitude and lines of latitude help in locating places on a map.*

Location of major lines of latitude and lines of longitude on the map of Africa.



Activity.

Use the political map of Africa and identify all African countries that;

(i) are crossed by the Greenwich meridian.
(ii) completely lie in Western hemisphere
(iii) completely lie in the Eastern hemisphere.
(iv) lie in both the Western and the Eastern hemisphere.

Finding Time According to GMT.

- **Different regions of the world have different time zone according to the distance from the Prime meridian.**
- **Places which are in the same time zone have the same standard time.**

E.g. Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania are in the same time zone, and so have the same standard time. (East Africa standard time)

- **East Africa lies at longitude 45º while Rwanda and Burundi are 30ºE of the Greenwich meridian.**

Note:

- ✓ *The rotation of the earth on its axis causes day and night.*
- ✓ *The earth makes one complete rotation of 360^0 in one day (24hours).*
- ✓ *Therefore, it rotates through an angle of 15^0 in every 1hour (60min).*
- ✓ *Every 15^0 E or W of the Greenwich meridian is a time zone.*
- ✓ *When you travel 15^0 westwards, you lose an hour while travelling 15^0 eastwards makes you gain an hour.*

Note:

-We usually add (+) hours for places which are in the East and subtract (-) the time when finding the time for places which are in the West.

*-Changing of the time to and from 24hr clock (by either adding or subtracting 12 hrs) affects the units in which the time is given.(ie. From **am** to **pm** and viceversa).*

- **Time in each time zone is calculated basing on the Greenwich mean time (GMT) which is at 0º longitude.**

Example 1:

Find the time in East Africa which is 45^0 if it is 2:00pm at GMT.

Solution,

15^0=1hr

$45^0=(\frac{45}{15})$ hrs.

=3hrs

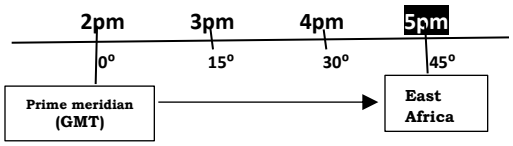
Time in East Africa=2:00pm

+3.00hrs

5:00pm

Therefore, time in East Africa is ***5:00pm.***

OR:



Therefore, time in East Africa is ***5:00pm***

Example 2.

What time will it be in a country P which is 60^0W if it is 2:00pm in Ghana?

Solution,

15^0=1hr

$60^0=(\frac{60}{15})$ hrs

=4hrs

Time in coutry P is = 2:00pm (+12hours)

-4.00hrs

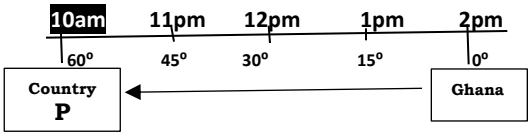
=14.00hrs

-4.00hrs

10:00am

Therefore, the time in that country will be ***10:00am.***

OR:



Therefore, the time in country P will be ***10:00am***

Example 3.

If it is 1:00pm at GMT, what time is it in East Africa?

Solution,

15^0=1hr

$45^0=(\frac{45}{15})$ hrs.

=3hrs

Time in East Africa=1:00pm

+3.00hrs

4:00pm

Therefore, time in East Africa is ***4:00pm.***

Example 4.

Find the time in Dakar, Senegal which is 15°W if it is 1:00pm in Ghana.

Solution,

15^0=1hr

$15^0=(\frac{15}{15})$ hrs

=1hr

Time in Dakar, Senegal =1:00pm (+12hours)

-1.00hr

=13.00hrs

-1.00hr

12:00midday.

Therefore, time in Dakar, Senegal is ***4:00pm.***

THE SHAPE AND SIZE OF AFRICA

- The shape of Africa is not even. It is wide in the North and narrow in the south.
- Africa is about 8,000km from the far North at Ras Ben Sakka in Tunisia to the far South at Cape Agulhas in South Africa.
- Horizontally, Africa is about 7,400km from the far East at Ras Hafun in Somalia to the far West at Cape Vert peninsula in Senegal.
- Africa's coastline is more regular than those of other continents, with few bays and gulfs.
- A coast is an area of land besides the sea or ocean.
- A coastline is the land lying along the coast.

Features along Africa's coastline.

- Bays
- Gulfs
- Capes
- Straits
- Isthmus
- Islands
- Peninsulas.

A bay is a part of the sea or ocean partly enclosed by land.

Examples of bays include;

- Bengo bay in Angola.
- Richards bay in South Africa.
- Delagoa bay in Mozambique.
- Ungwana bay in Kenya.
- St. Helena bay in South Africa.

A gulf is a large area of the sea or ocean which is almost surrounded by land.

Examples of gulfs include;

- Gulf of Guinea
- Gulf of Suez.
- Gulf of Aqaba
- Gulf of Aden (between Yemen and Somalia)

A cape is an area of land that protrudes/ continues into the sea.

Examples of capes include;

- Cape Agulhas in south Africa.
- Cape Vert in Senegal
- Cape Hafun in Somalia.
- Cape Blanc in Tunisia.

A strait is a narrow water passage joining two water masses.

OR; is a narrow water passage separating two land masses.

Examples of straits include;

- Strait of Gibraltar (separating Africa from Europe)
- Strait of Mandals / Bab-el-Mandeb.
- Mozambique channel (separating Madagascar from Africa's main land)
- Zanzibar channel.

A peninsula is an area of land that is almost surrounded by a water body.

Examples of peninsulas include;

- The Horn of Africa
- The Sinai peninsula
- Cape Vert peninsula
- The Arabian Peninsula.

An island is an area of land that is completely surrounded by a water body.

Island countries in Africa include;

- Madagascar.
- Comoros
- Seychelles
- Mauritius
- Sao Tome and Principe.
- Cape Verde

An Isthmus is a narrow strip of land connecting two land masses.

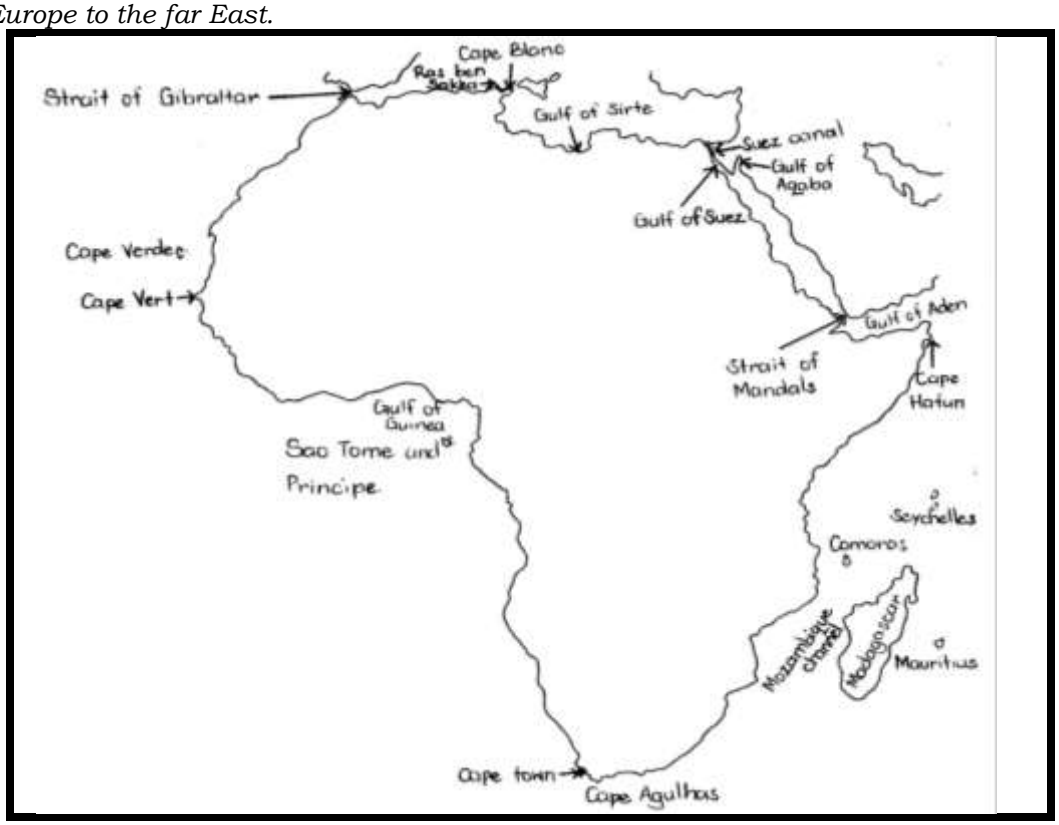
OR: Is a narrow strip of land separating two water masses.

For example, -the Suez isthmus (before the construction of the Suez canal)

NOTE;

- ✓ ***The Suez canal*** *is a large man made water channel in Egypt connecting the Red sea to the Mediterranean sea.*
- ✓ *It was constructed between 1859 and 1869 by the French Suez company led by Ferdinand De Lesseps. It was officially opened on 17th Nov, 1869.*

- ✓ *In July 1956, president Gamal Abdel Nasser brought the Suez canal under control of the Egyptian government.*
- ✓ *The Suez canal was constructed to shorten the distance travelled by water vessels from Europe to the far East.*



AFRICAN COUNTRIES

- **The African continent is made up of 55 countries.**
- **Algeria is the largest country in Africa while Seychelles is the smallest.**
- **The creation of South Sudan as an independent nation made Sudan lose her position as the largest African country.**
- **Africa has 6 island countries while 49 are inland countries.**

African countries in their order of size,and their capital cities.

No	*Country*	*Capital city*		*No*	*Country*	*Capital city*
1.	Algeria	Algiers		29	Burkina Faso	Ouagadougou
2.	Dem.Rep. of Congo	Kinshasa		30	Gabon	Libreville
3.	Sudan	Khartoum		31	Western Sahara	El-Aaiun
4.	Libya	Tripoli		32	Guinea	Conakry
5.	Chad	N'Djamena		33	Uganda	Kampala
6.	Niger	Niamey		34	Ghana	Accra
7.	Angola	Luanda		35	Senegal	Dakar
8.	Mali	Bamako		36	Tunisia	Tunis
9.	South Africa	Pretoria		37	Malawi	Lilongwe
10.	Ethiopia	Addis Ababa		38	Eritrea	Asmara
11.	Mauritania	Nouakchott		39	Benin	Porto Novo
12.	Egypt	Cairo		40	Liberia	Monrovia
13.	Tanzania	Dodoma		41	Sierra Leone	Freetown
14.	Nigeria	Abuja		42	Togo	Lomé

15.	Namibia	Windhoek		43	Guinea Bissau	Bissau
16.	Mozambique	Maputo		44	Lesotho	Maseru
17.	Zambia	Lusaka		45	Equatorial Guinea	Malabo
18.	South Sudan	Juba		46	Burundi	Gitega
19.	Somalia	Mogadishu		47	Rwanda	Kigali
20.	Central.A.Republic	Bangui		48	Djibouti	Djibouti
21.	Madagascar	Antananarivo		49	Swaziland (Eswatini)	Mbabane
22.	Botswana	Gaborone		50	Gambia	Banjul
23.	Kenya	Nairobi		51	Cape Verde	Praia
24.	Cameroon	Yaoundé		52	Comoros	Moroni
25.	Morocco	Rabat		53	Mauritius	Port Louis
26.	Zimbabwe	Harare		54	Sao Tome & Principe	Sao Tome
27.	Congo Brazzaville	Brazzaville		55	Seychelles	Victoria
28.	Cote d'Ivoire	Yamoussoukro				

Newly created states in Africa

- **Western Sahara from Morocco in 1976**
- **Eritrea from Ethiopia in 1993**
- **South Sudan from Sudan in 2011.**

NB: *The creation of Eritrea as an independent state made Ethiopia become a land locked country.*

LOCATION OF AFRICAN COUNTRIES.

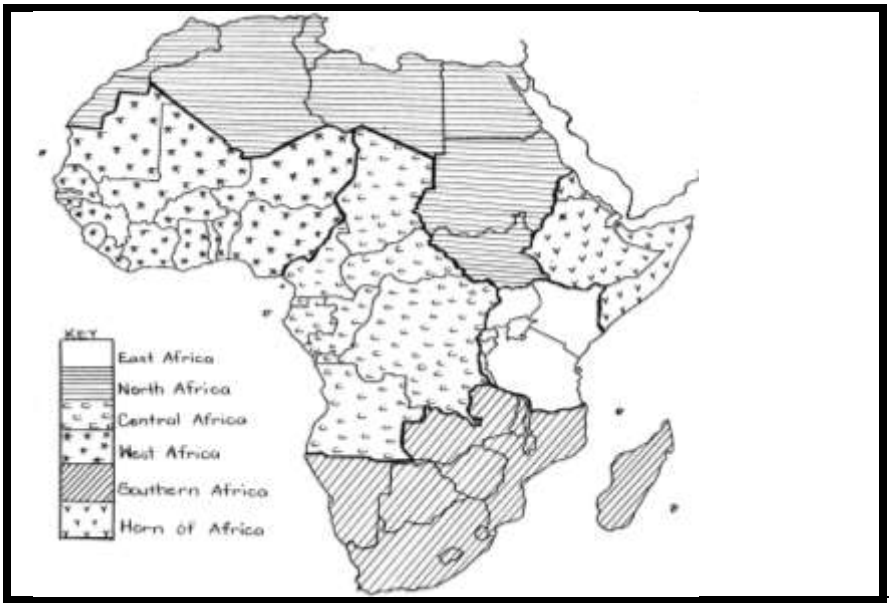


POLITICAL REGIONS OF AFRICA.

- Africa is divided into six major geographical regions.

These include:

- East Africa
- West Africa.
- Central Africa.
- Southern Africa.
- North Africa
- Horn of Africa.



Political region	*Countries*	*Dominant common market*
East Africa	-Uganda -Burundi -Kenya -Seychelles -Tanzania -Mauritius -Rwanda -Comoros	East African Community(EAC)
Central Africa	-DRC -Cameroon -Chad -Equatorial Guinea -Angola -C.A.Rep -Gabon -Congo Brazzaville -Sao Tome and Principe	Economic Community of Central African states (ECCAS)
Horn of Africa	-Somalia -Eritrea -Ethiopia -Djibouti	Intergovernmental Authority on Development(IGAD)
Southern Africa	-South Africa -Lesotho -Namibia -Eswatini -Botswana -Zimbabwe -Malawi -Madagascar -Zambia -Mozambique	-Southern African Development Community (SADC)
West Africa	-Nigeria -Gambia -Mali -Cape Verde -Burkina Faso -Senegal -Niger -Mauritania -Benin -Guinea Bissau -Ghana -Guinea -Cote D'Ivoire -Sierra Leone -Liberia -Togo	-Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS)
North Africa	-Egypt -Western Sahara -Libya -Tunisia -Morocco -Algeria -Sudan -South Sudan	

LAND LOCKED COUNTRIES IN AFRICA

- *A land locked country* **is a country without a coastline.**
- **There are 16 land locked countries in Africa.**

These include;

- **Uganda**
- **Mali**
- **Burkina Faso**
- **Chad**
- **Zambia**
- **Lesotho**
- **C.A.R**
- **South Sudan**
- **Ethiopia**
- **Zimbabwe**
- **Eswatini**
- **Botswana**
- **Burundi**
- **Rwanda**
- **Malawi**
- **Niger**

Note;-*Lesotho* *is an enclave state. It is completely surrounded by the Republic of South Africa.*

*-**An enclave state** is an independent country which is completely surrounded by another country.*

Problems faced by land locked countries in Africa.

- **High taxation on overseas imports at the sea port.**
- **Delay of overseas imports in transit.**
- **High transport costs when importing goods.**
- **There is limited trade with the rest of the world.**
- **High prices for imported goods.**

➢ **Note:**

- ✓ ***Smuggling*** *is the illegal importation and exportation of goods.*
- ✓ *Smuggling reduces market for locally manufactured goods.*
  Smuggled goods compete for market with the locally manufactured goods.
- ✓ *smuggling may also lead to importation of low quality goods into the country.*
- ✓ ***Imports*** *are goods that are brought in a country from other countries eg. Vehicles Uganda imports from Germany.*
- ✓ ***Exports*** *are goods a country sells to other countries eg.food Uganda sells to South Sudan.*

Steps land locked countries can take/ have taken to solve some of the above challenges.

- **By joining regional economic groupings.**
- **By using alternative sea routes when importing goods.**
- **By encouraging domestic industrial production.**
- **By improving security along the high ways.**
- **By using more than one sea ports to handle their imports and exports.**
- **By using air transport when transporting overseas goods.**

Non-Land Locked Countries in Africa.

- ***A non-land locked country*** **is a country which has a coastline.**
- **There are 39 non-land locked countries in Africa, each with one or more than one sea ports.**
- **These sea ports handle imports and exports for both the land locked and non-land locked countries.**

Major sea ports in Africa

Sea port	*Country*
-Port Mombasa	Kenya
-Port Dar-es-salaam	Tanzania
-Port Sudan	Sudan
-Port Mogadishu	Somalia
-Port Matadi	DRC
-Port Accra -Port Takoradi	Ghana
-Port Durban -Cape Town -Port Elizabeth -Port East London	South Africa

-Port Lagos -Port Harcourt	Nigeria
-Port Tunis	Tunisia
-Port Alexandria	Egypt
-Port Luanda	Angola
-Port Tripoli -Port Benghazi	Libya

Benefits enjoyed by non-land locked countries

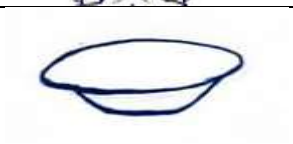
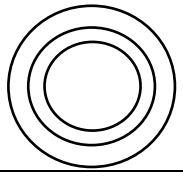
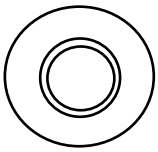
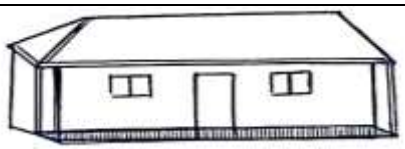
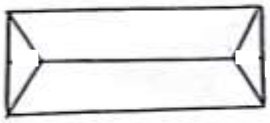
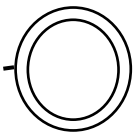
- Low taxation on overseas goods at the sea ports.
- They earn income through taxing goods for land locked countries that pass through them.
- They enjoy wide trade with the rest of the world.

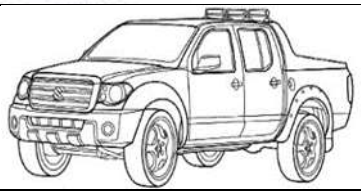
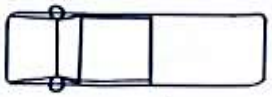
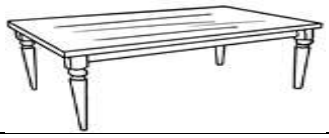
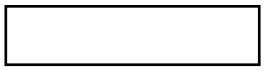
Note:-***Hinterlands*** *are areas in a country that are far away from the coast or main cities.*

REVISION OF MAPS AND PICTURES.

- A map is a drawing/ respresentation of an object as seen from above.
- Maps show how objects look like when viewed directly from above.
- We use symbols to help us understand and interpret a map of a detailed area.
- The boundary of a map determines the size and shape of the map.
- A picture is a representation of an object as seen from above.
- All features on a picture can be clearly seen as real objects.
- Pictures are more detailed than maps.

Maps and Pictures of different objects

Object name	*Picture*	*Map*
a tree		
a plate		
a pot		
a house		
a chair		
a cup		

a hut		
a car		
a table		

Similarity between maps and pictures.

- Both are representations of objects.

Types of maps.

(i) Political maps. These maps show boundaries of villages, counties, districts and countries.

(ii) Topographic maps. These maps show physical features/ landforms of a given area.eg.mountains etc.

(iii) Flow-line maps. These show movement of people, goods, animals etc.

(iv) Thematic maps. These show various social and economic themes eg. trade, energy.

Importance of maps.

- ❖ They are used for locating places.
- ❖ They help travelers to plan for routes to take while on their journeys.
- ❖ They help people to know the relief, climate and vegetation of different areas.

ELEMENTS OF A MAP.

- ❖ A compass direction
- ❖ A scale
- ❖ A title/heading
- ❖ A frame
- ❖ A key.

Importance of different elements of a good map.

Element	*Importance*
❖ A compass direction	❖ It shows the direction of places on a map
❖ A title/ heading	❖ It helps one to know what the map is all about.
❖ A key	❖ It helps a map reader to interpret symbols used on a map.
❖ A scale	❖ It helps a map reader to calculate the actual ground distance on a map.
❖ A frame	❖ It shows the extent of the area represented by the map.

MAP SYMBOLS

- These are features that are used to represent real objects on a map.

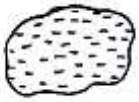
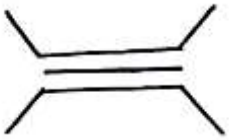
Why symbols are used on maps.

- ❖ To avoid congestion an the map.
- ❖ To ensure neatness of a map.

Common colours used on maps.

- ✓ Green-represents vegetation.
- ✓ Brown and purple-represent hills and mountains (highlands)
- ✓ Blue-represents water bodies.
- ✓ Yellow-represents scattered short grass.
- ✓ Red-represents major roads and boundaries.

Common symbols used on maps.

				
a rift valley	*waterfall*	*a dam*	*a canal*	*a swamp*
				
a quarry	*a hill*	*airport*	*contours*	*factory*
				
railway line	*a port*	*hospital*	*mountain peak*	*permanent lake*
				
seasonal lake	*church*	*a bridge*	*seasonal river*	*compass direction*

A COMPASS DIRECTION

- **A compass** is an instrument used to find direction of places.
- A drawn compass is called *a compass rose.*

People who use a compass.

- Rally drivers
- Tourists
- Pilots
- Mountain climbers
- Sailors
- Scouts and girl guides.
- Soldiers.

A compass direction.

- **A compass direction** is a symbol used on a map to show the direction of places.
- The compass points are divided into the cardinal points,semi-cardinal points (secondary points) and tertiary points.
- **Cardinal points** are the four major points of a compass.

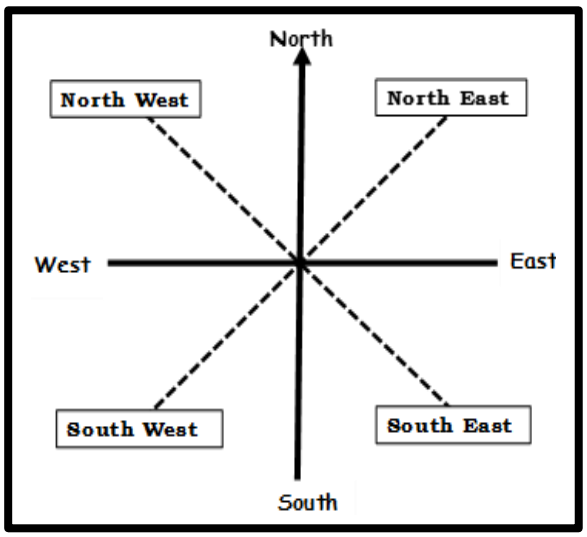
These include;

- North
- South
- West
- East

- **Secondary points** are the directions that lie midway of cardinal poits.
- Semi-cardinal points lie at 45° from cardinal points.

These include;

- South East
- South West
- North East
- North West



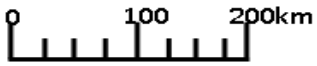
A SCALE.

- **A scale helps a map reader to calculate the actual ground distance on a map.**
- **A map reader who reads a map without a scale may fail to calculate the actual ground distance on a map.**
- **A scale is only found on accurate maps.**
- **A sketch map is a map which is not drawn to scale while an accurate map is a map which is drawn to scale.**

Types of scales.

(i) Linear scale.

This is the type of scale drawn using lines that are divided into equal parts.



Example;

*Find the actual ground distance between town **Q** and town **S** if there is a distance of 6cm between the two towns on the map.*

Solution;

1cm = 100km

6cm = (6×100)km

= 600km.

*Therefore,the actual ground distance between Town **Q** and Town **S** is 600km.*

(ii) Representative scale/ fractional scale.

This is the type of scale written in as a mathematical fraction.

It can also be written as a ratio.eg. $\frac{1}{100km}$ **or 1:100km.**

(iii) Statement scale.

This type of scale can be given as a statement or words.

Eg.1cm on a map represents 100km on the ground





1. **What is a continent?**
2. **Mention the seven continents of the world in the world in the order of their size starting with the largest.**
3. **Name the water body that separates Africa from;**
   - **(i) Europe.**
   - **(ii) America.**
   - **(iii) Arabia.**
   - **(iv) Australia**
4. **Name the only continent which is not inhabited by people.**
5. **Why is the continent in (4) above not inhabited by human beings?**
6. **What causes days and night?**
7. **State the effect of the revolution of the earth around the sun.**
8. **Mention the commonest way of telling directions in your community.**
9. **Give any three ways one can locate places on a map.**
10. **What is the direction of Africa from Europe?**
11. **Kato was going to school in the morning and he saw his shadow;**
    - **(i) Infront of him. In which direction was the school?**
    - **(ii) behind himself. In which direction was his home?**
    - **(iii) on his right hand side. In which direction was the school?**
    - **(iv) on his left hand side. In which direction was his school?**

12. Name the most central continent of the world.
13. Why is the above continent considered to be the most central continent?
14. Why was Africa referred to as a dark continent by the early Europeans?
15. Mention any three factors that kept Africa's interior unknown to the early Europeans for so long.
16. Give any three ways Africa is different from other continents.
17. What general name is given to lines of latitude?
18. Give the meaning of each of the following.
    (i) Latitude
    (ii) Lines of latitude
    (iii) Lines of longitude
    (iv) Tropical region
    (v) A hemisphere
19. Apart from Uganda, mention four other African countries which are crossed by the Equator.
20. Mention two major physical features which are crossed by the Equator in Uganda.
21. Why is the equator marked 0^0?
22. Why are lines of latitude sometimes called the parallels?
23. Name the island countries in Africa which are crossed by the following lines of latitude.
    (i) Equator.
    (ii) Tropic of Capricorn
24. What general name is given to lines of longitude?
25. Name the city in West Africa which is crossed by the Prime meridian.
26. Why is the Prime meridian sometimes called the Greenwich meridian?
27. Name the water body that neighbours Africa which is crossed by the Prime meridian
28. Mention the four countries which are crossed by the Prime meridian.
29. Name the line of longitude that helps in telling the international time.
30. Why do people living in Mombasa see the sun earlier than those in Kasese?
31. How are lines of latitude and lines of longitude important?
32. Find the time in East Africa which is 45^0 E if it is 10:00pm in England.
33. How is a Strait different from an Isthmus?
34. State the main reason for the construction o0f the Suez canal.
35. Name the water way that separates Africa from Europe.
36. What term refers to a narrow water passage that connects two large water bodies?
37. Name the water way that connects the Red sea to the Mediterranean sea.
38. How is the strait of Gibraltar politically important to Africa?
39. Name the water channel that separates Madagascar from Africa's main land.
40. What is an Island?
41. Mention the two island countries in Africa which are surrounded by the Atlantic ocean.
42. Name the largest African country.
43. How did the creation of Eritrea as an independent state affect Ethiopia?
44. Complete the table below.

Region of Africa.	*Any three countries*
(i) East Africa	---------- ---------- ----------
(ii) West Africa	---------- ---------- ----------
(iii) ----------	South Africa ---------- ----------
(iv) Central Africa	---------- ---------- ----------
(v) ----------	---------- ---------- Somalia
(vi) ----------	Libya ---------- ----------

45. Mention the newest state in Africa.

46. Name any three African countries which are completely surrounded by the Indian ocean.
47. Why is Lesotho referred to as an enclave state?
48. Name the smallest East African country.
49. Why is Seychelles islands historically remembered in Buganda and Bunyoro?
50. Why is Uganda referred to as a land locked country?
51. State any three problems Uganda faces due to her location.
52. Mention the two neighbouring countries of Uganda which are land locked.
53. How is Uganda different from Nigeria in terms of location?
54. Give one way port Mombasa has promoted economic development of Uganda.
55. Why are imports more expensive in Uganda than in Kenya?
56. Mention the type of tax charged on;
    (i) Locally manufactured goods.
    (ii) Imports/ goods entering a country.
57. Name the body that was set up by Uganda Revenue Authority (URA) to control smuggling in the country.
58. Give any two ways smuggling affects economic development in a country.
59. Why does Uganda import most of her goods through port Mombasa?
60. State any two ways Uganda can solve the challenges she faces due to her location.
61. How is a map different from a picture?
62. Mention any three elements of a good map.
63. Why are maps drawn by P.7 pupils referred to as sketch maps?
64. What problem is a map reader likely to face when reading a map without a;
    (i) Scale?
    (ii) Key?
    (iii) Title?
    (iv) Compass direction?
65. Mention any two types of scales commonly used on maps.
66. Why are foreign tourist to Uganda always given maps of places they are to visit?
67. Why are symbols used on maps instead of real objects?
68. Find the actual ground distance between Town K and Town S which are 8cm apart using the scale 1cm=150km.
69. How is a compass different from a compass direction?
70. Sarah was facing North West and she turned through an angle of 135^0 anti-clockwise. Which new direction did she face?

TOPIC 2: PHYSICAL FEATURES OF AFRICA.

INTRODUCTION TO PHYSICAL FEATURES

- **Physical features are features of the earth's surface that give it shape.**
- **These features are categorised into; drainage and relief features.**

Relief features

- **These are landforms which are identified according to their altitude.**
- ***Altitude* is the height above the sea level.**
- **Altitude is measured using an instrument called an *altimeter.***
- ***Relief* is the physical appearance of the land.**
- **Relief features are the highlands and low lands of an area.**

Relief features include;

- **Mountains**
- **Plateaus**
- **Rift valleys**
- **Valleys**
- **Coastal plains**
- **Basins**
- **Highlands**
- **Low lands**

Drainage features

- **Drainage features are landforms that contain water.**
- **Drainage features are the water bodies of an area.**

Drainage features include;

- **Lakes**
- **Oceans**
- **Seas**

Note:-

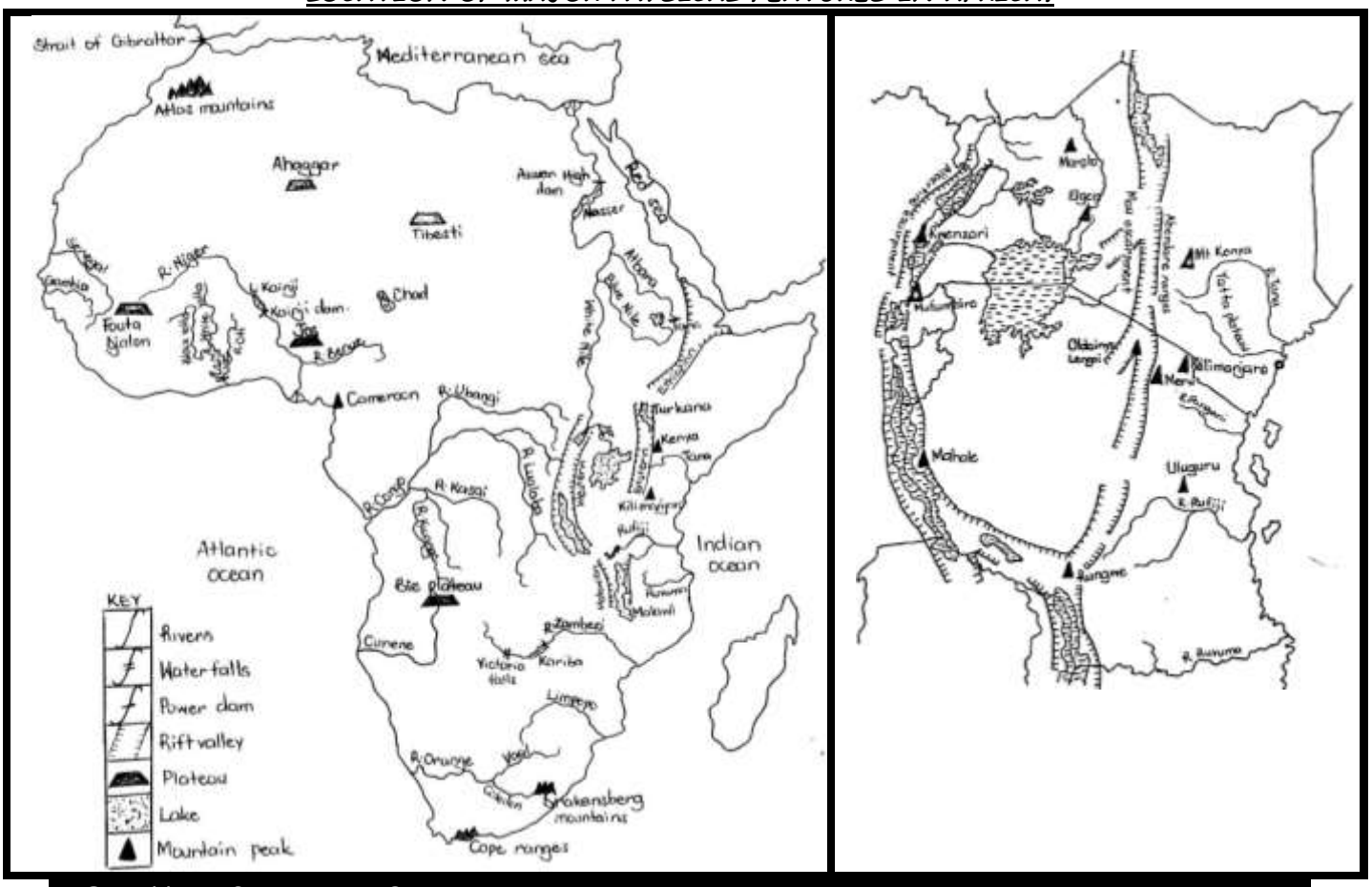
- ✓ *Africa's plateau is tilted to the North. This results into the northward flow of river Nile from lake Victoria towards the Mediterranean sea.*
- ✓ *The flow of river Nile from lake Victoria to lake Kyoga shows that lake Victoria is on a higher altitude than lake Kyoga.*

Importance of physical features

- ❖ **They earn income through attracting tourists.**
- ❖ **They are used when locating places.**
- ❖ **Some of them are mining grounds.**
- ❖ **Some of them are fishing grounds.**
- ❖ **They modify climate by helping in rain formation.**
- ❖ **Some physical features form natural boundaries between countries. This is because, these features are permanently fixed.**

eg,-***River Ruvuma*** *creates a natural boundary between Tanzania and Mozambique.*
-***River Kagera*** *forms a natural boundary between Uganda and Tanzania.*
-***River Semliki, mountain Rwenzori, the Western Rift valley, lake Albert*** *and* ***lake Edward*** *create a natural boundary between Uganda and DRC.*
-***Mountain Elgon*** *creates a natural boundary between Uganda and Kenya.*

LOCATION OF MAJOR PHYSICAL FEATURES IN AFRICA.



MOUNTAINS IN AFRICA.

- A mountain is a large raised piece of land, usually higher than a hill.

Types of mountains in Africa.

- Volcanic mountains
- Block mountains
- Fold mountains

VOLCANIC MOUNTAINS.

- These are mountains formed as a result of ***volcanicity.***
- ***Volcanicity*** is the process by which magma is forced onto the earth's surface through a vent.
- Volcanicity can also be called *volcanic activity* or *volcanic eruption.*
- ***A volcano*** is a mountain with a vent through which magma is forced through the earth crust and onto the earth's surface.
- **Magma** refers to the molten rock in the earth crust.
- ***Lava*** refers to the molten rock on the earth's surface.

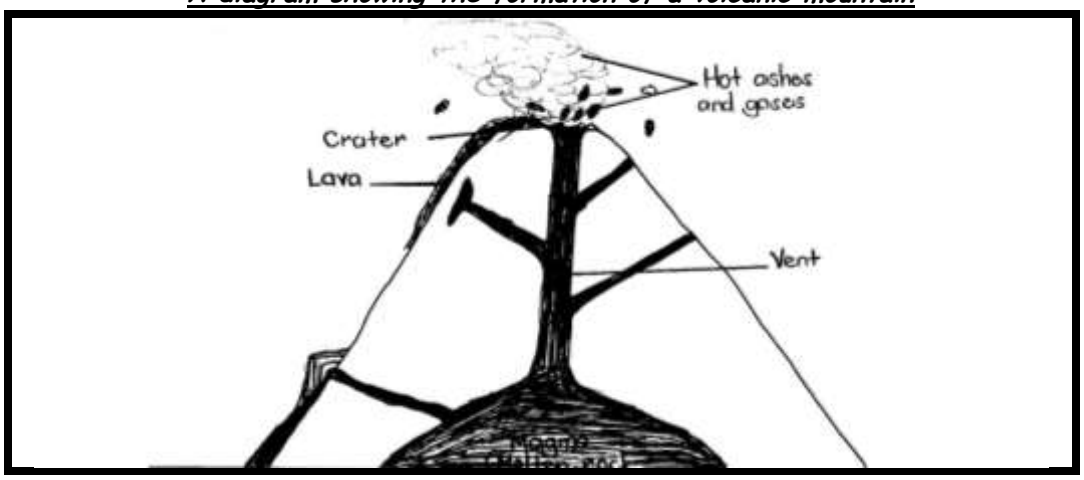
Types of volcanoes

Type of volcano	Description	Example(s)
Active volcanoes	These are mountains which can erupt at any time.	• Nyamulagira in DRC • Nyiragongo in DRC • Mountain Mufumbiro in Uganda. • Ol Doinyo Lengai in Tanzania
Dormant volcanoes.	These are mountains that have not erupted in the recent past but still show signs of erupting.	• Mountain Moroto in Uganda. • Mountain Longonot in Kenya.
Extinct volcanoes	These are mountains that do not show any signs of erupting.	• Mountain Kilimanjaro in Tanzania. • Mountain Kenya • Mountain Elgon in Uganda

Other volcanic mountains in Africa include;

- **Drakensberg mountains in Lesotho and South Africa**
- **Mountain Longonot in Kenya.**
- **Mountain Mufumbiro in Uganda.**

A diagram showing the formation of a volcanic mountain



Importance of volcanicity

- **It leads to formation of fertile volcanic soils which are favourable for crop growing.**
- **Volcanic mountains attract tourists who bring in income.**

Dangers of volcanicity.

- **It leads to death of people and animals.**
- **It leads to destruction of property.**
- **It leads to air pollution.**

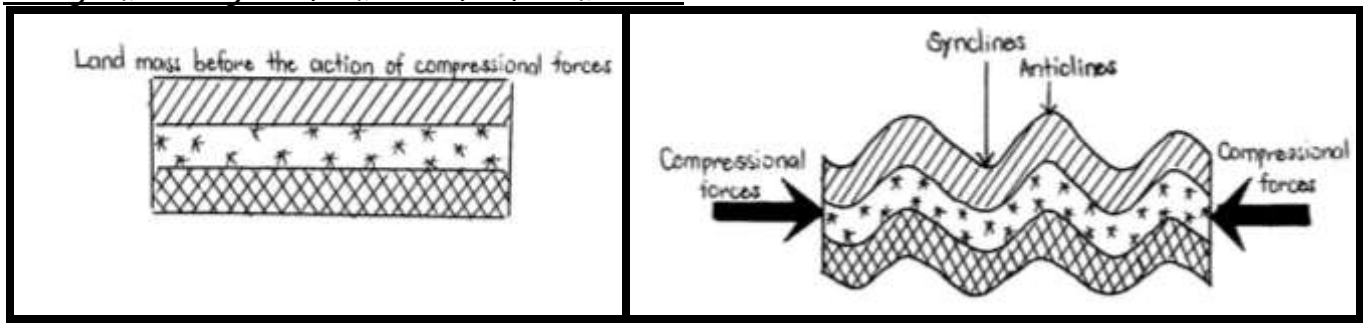
Other features formed as a result of volcanicity.

- **Crater lakes.**
- **Calderas**
- **Inselbergs**
  - ***An inselberg*** *is an isolated hill that stands above the general level of the surrounding land eg.Labwor hill in Karamoja, Musaijamukuru hill in Hoima, Osukuru hill in Tororo.*
  - *These inselbergs attract tourists who bring in income and are also a major source of minerals eg. The Osukuru hills which provide limestone used for making cement.*
- **Lava dammed lakes**
- **Hot springs /geysers eg. Kitagata hotsprings in Bushenyi, Sempaya hotsprings in Bundibugyo**
  - *Hot springs attract tourists and also help in generation of geothermal energy.*

FOLD MOUNTAINS

- **Fold mountain are formed as a result of *folding.***
- ***Folding*** **is the process by which land mass is forced to collide due to compressional forces.**
- **Fold mountains are formed when two land masses are forced to collide by horizontal earth movements causing the rocks to be folded and uplifted.**
- **The raised parts of a fold mountain are called *anticlines.***
- **The sunken parts of a fold mountain are called synclines.**

A diagram showing the formation of a fold mountain



Examples of fold mountains in Africa.

- Cape ranges in South Africa.
- Atlas mountains in North West Africa (Morocco)

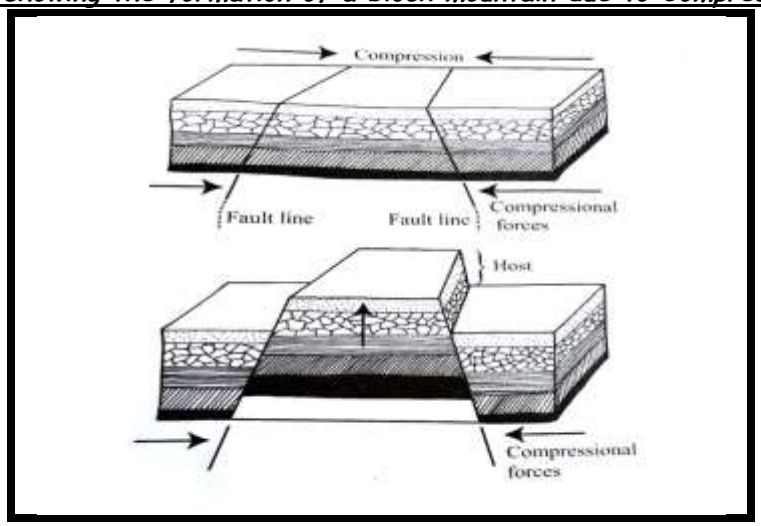
BLOCK MOUNTAINS

- These mountains are also called *horst mountains.*
- Block mountains were formed as a result of ***faulting.***
- ***Faulting*** is the cracking/ breaking of rocks in the earth's crust.
- The central block between the two faults is lifted up by compressional forces forming a block mountain.

Forces that led to the formation of a block mountain

- Compressional forces
- Tensional forces.

A diagram showing the formation of a block mountain due to Compressional forces.



Examples of block mountains in Africa.

- Mountain Rwenzori in Uganda
- Mountain Usambara in Tanzania
- Mountain Uluguru in Tanzania
- Mountain Pare in Tanzania
- Mountain Danakil in Ethiopia

Highest peaks of major mountains in Africa.

Mountain	*Type*	*Formation*	*Highest peak*	*Description*	*Location*
Mountain Kilimanjaro	Volcanic	Volcanicity	Kibo peak	Snowcapped	Tanzania
Mountain Kenya	Volcanic	Volcanicity	Batian peak	Snowcapped	Kenya
Mountain Rwenzori	Block	Faulting	Margherita peak	Snowcapped	Uganda
Mountain Elgon	Volcanic	Volcanicity	Wagagai peak	Dry	Uganda
Mountain Mufumbiro	Volcanic	Volcanicity	Muhavura peak	Dry	Uganda
Mountain Moroto	Volcanic	Volcanicity	Sokdek	Dry	Uganda
Drakensberg mountains	Volcanic	Volcanicity	Thabana-Ntlenyana	Dry	Lesotho
Cape ranges	Fold	Folding	Du Toits	Dry	S.Africa
Atlas mountains	Fold	Folding	Toubkal	Dry	Morocco
Mountain Cameroon	Volcanic	Volcanicity	Fako	Dry	Cameroon

HIGHLANDS IN AFRICA.

A highland is an area of land consisting of hills and mountains.

Examples of highlands in Africa.

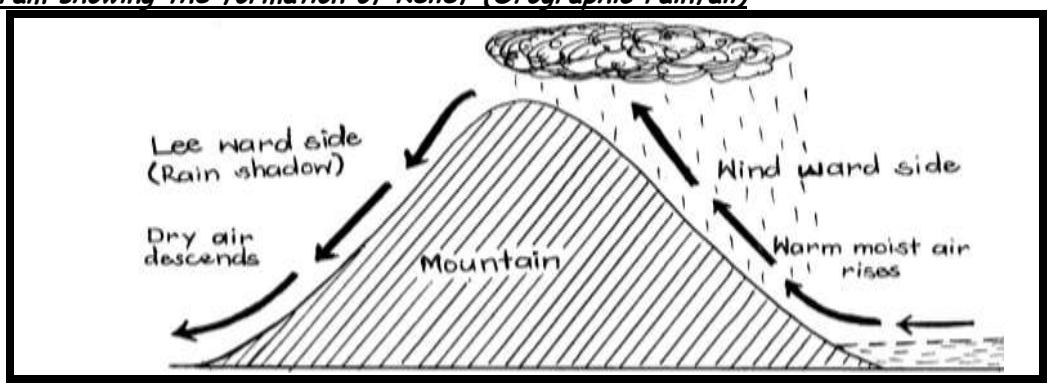
- Kenya highlands
- Ethiopian highlands
- Guinea highlands
- Adamawa highlands

Importance of highlands (hills and mountains)

- ❖ **They help in rain formation.**
- ❖ **They have fertile soils which support crop cultivation.**
- ❖ **They attract tourists who bring in income.**
- ❖ **They have cool temperatures which favour dairy farming.**
- ❖ **They are used by telecommunication companies to place on masts.**
- ❖ **Some mountains form natural boundaries between countries.**

Eg-*Mountain Rwenzori creates a natural boundary between Uganda and DRC.*
-Mountain Elgon creates a natural boundary between Uganda and Kenya.
-Mountain Mufumbiro creates a natural boundary between Uganda and Rwanda.

A diagram showing the formation of Relief (Orographic rainfall)



Disadvantages of mountains.

- ❖ **They hinder agricultural mechanisation.**
- ❖ **They make road and railway construction difficult.**
- ❖ **Some volcanic mountains erupt and destroy property.**
- ❖ **They are greatly affected by landslides and soil erosion.**

Problems faced by people living on slopes of mountains.

- ❖ **Severe soil erosion.**
- ❖ **Landslides.**
- ❖ **Poor ground transport.**
- ❖ **Poor agricultural mechanization.**

Why transport is very poor in highland areas.

It is difficult and expensive to construct roads in mountainous areas.

Note:

- ✓ *People living in highland areas (Kapchorwa) rear donkeys to use them as means of transport.*
- ✓ *Road transport can also be improved in highland areas by constructing winding roads.*
- ✓ *Landslides can be reduced in highland areas through planting trees*

Why agricultural mechanisation is poor in mountainous areas.

The steep slopes make the use of tractors difficult.

PLATEAUS / PLATEAUX

- ***A Plateau*** **is a raised flat topped piece of land.**
- **The plateau covers the largest part of Uganda.**
- **It lies between 200m and 2000m above the sea level.**

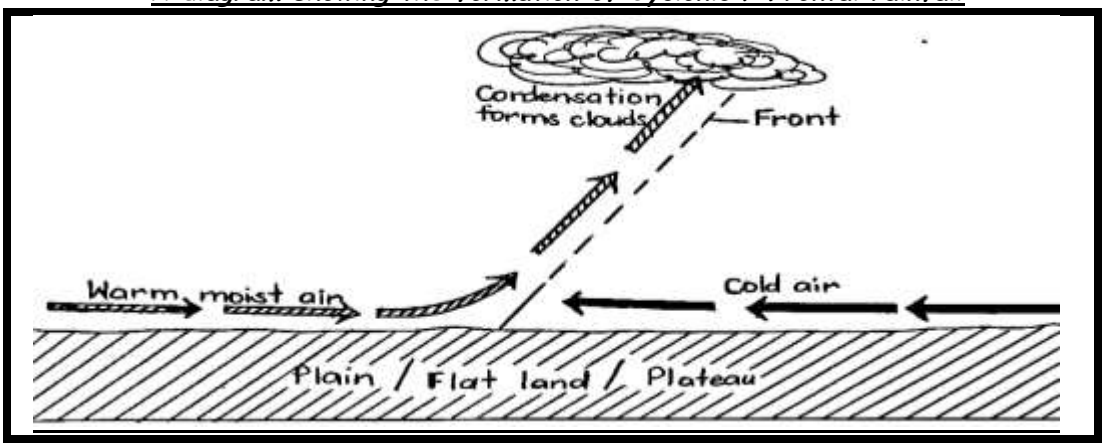
Features found on a plateau

- **Lakes**
- **Rivers**
- **Streams**
- **Hills**
- **Plains**

Economic activities carried out in plateau areas.

- **Crop cultivation**
- **Tourism**
- **Fishing**
- **Mining**
- **Animal rearing**
- **Lumbering**
- **Industrialisation.**

A diagram showing the formation of Cyclonic / Frontal rainfall



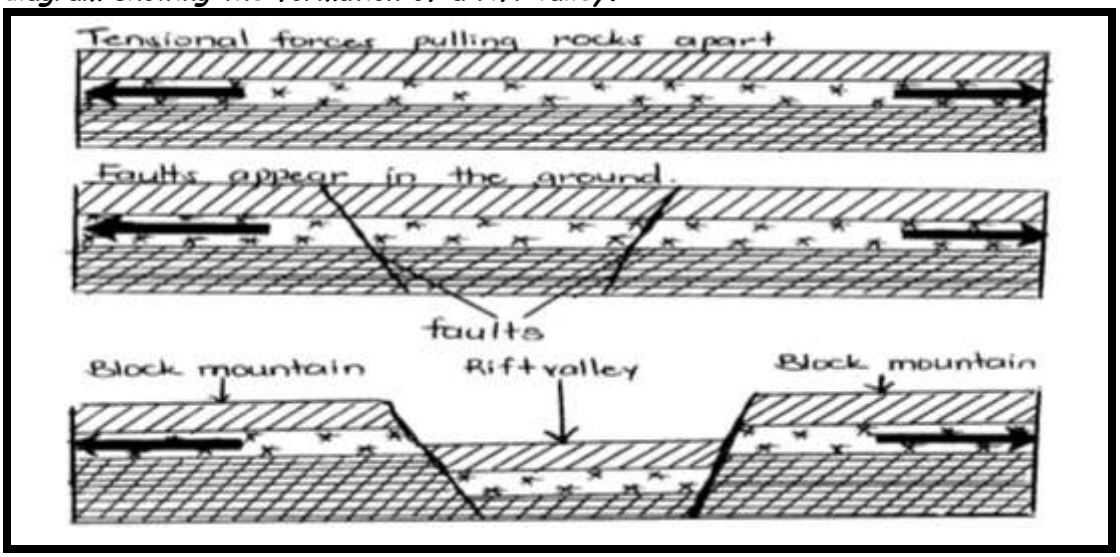
Major plateaus in Africa

- Nyika plateau in Kenya
- Yatta plateau in Kenya
- Jos plateau in Nigeria
- Bie plateau in Angola
- Fouta Djallon in Guinea
- Tibesti in chad
- Ahaggar plateau in Algeria

THE AFRICAN GREAT RIFTVALLEY

- *A rift valley* is a long and wide depression on the earth's surface with steep sides.
- The steep sides of a rift valley are called *escarpments.*
- The rift valley was formed as a result of *faulting.*
- The Great rift valley starts from Syria and runs through Jordan, Red sea, Ethiopia, Kenya, Uganda, Tanzania and ends at Beira in Mozambique.
- The width of the Great rift valley varies from 30 to 100km.

A diagram showing the formation of a rift valley.



Arms/ branches of the African Great riftvalley.

Arm/ branch	*Location*	*Major escarpment*	*Rift valley lakes*
The Ethiopian rift valley	•It enters Africa from Red sea and runs through Danakil depression.	Mega escarpment.	-L .Abaya -L.Ashala -L .Azwai -L.Shamo
The Western rift valley	•It runs through Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi and Tanzania.	Albertine escarpment	-L.Albert -L.Edward -L.Tanganyika

The Eastern rift valley	•It runs through Kenya and Tanzania.	Mau escarpment	-L.Turkana -L.Manyara -L.Magadi -L.Baringo -L.Nakuru -L.Natron -L.Eyasi
The Malawian rift valley	•It runs through Malawi and Mozambique.	Muchinga escarpment	-L.Malawi

Economic activities done in Rift valley areas

- Crop cultivation
- Mining
- Tourism
- Fishing
- Animal rearing

Dangers / disadvantages of the Rift valley.

- ❖ It is affected by soil erosion.
- ❖ It hinders road and railway construction.
- ❖ It experiences very high temperatures due to low altitude.

BASINS

- *A Basin* is a large low lying land between plateaus and highlands.
- Basins are formed as a result of sinking of land masses/ *down warping.*
- When water collects in some basins, lakes are formed.

Examples of basins in Africa.

- The Victoria basin
- The Congo basin
- The Okavango basin
- The Chad basin
- The Nile basin
- The Zambezi basin
- Orange basin
- Senegal basin

COASTAL PLAINS

- A Coastal plain is a narrow strip of land along the coast.
- Coastal plains favour the construction of sea ports and also promote tourism.
- The coastline of Africa is not regular due to the effect of waves.

Features found on the coastal plain

- Coral reefs
- Cliffs
- Beaches
- Lagoons

***Coral reefs** are hard rocks at the bottom of the sea formed by polyps.*

Importance of coral reefs

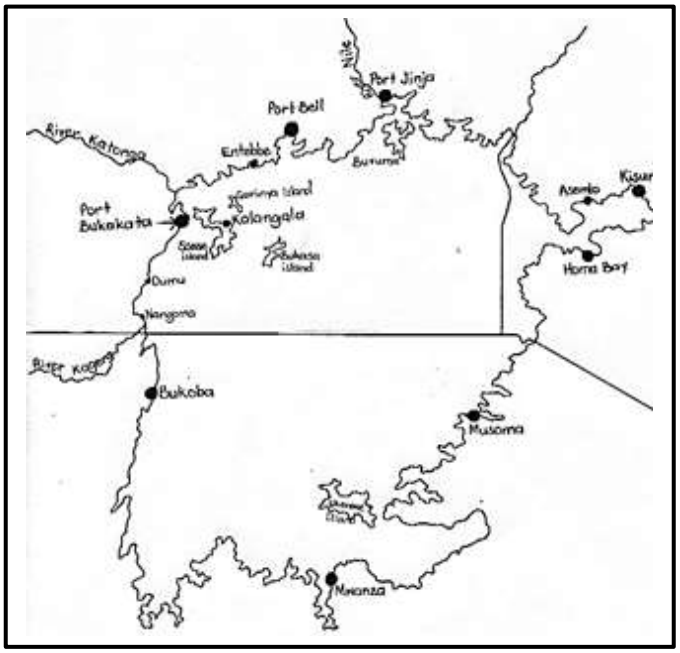
- ❖ *The attract tourists who bring in income.*
- ❖ *They also provide limestone which is used for making cement.*
- ❖ *They are used for making jewellery.*

LAKES IN AFRICA.

A lake is a large depression / hollow on the earth's surface in which water collects.

Major lakes in Africa

- Lake Victoria
- Lake Tanganyika
- Lake Turkana
- Lake Chad
- Lake Tana
- Lake Malawi
- Lake Ngami
- Lake Volta
- Lake Nasser
- Lake Kainji
- Lake Kariba

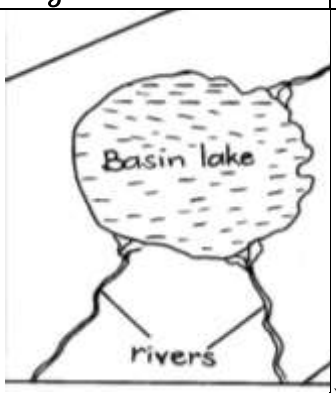


Activity: Locate the major lakes and rivers on the map of Africa in your book

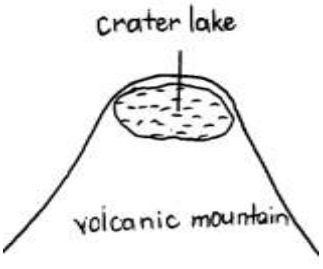
TYPES OF LAKE FORMATIONS

- Basin lakes/ depression lakes/ down warped lakes
- Rift valley lakes
- Ox-bow lakes
- Crater lakes
- Glacial lakes
- Lava dammed lakes
- Manmade lakes
- Lagoon lakes

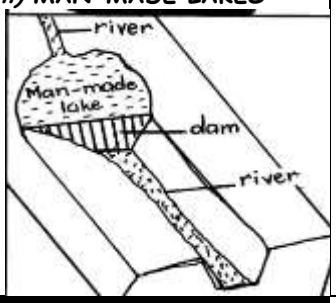
(i) BASIN LAKES

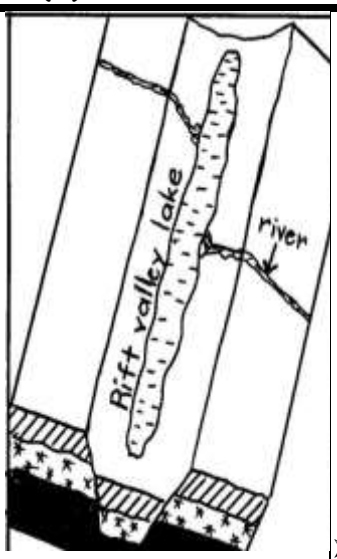
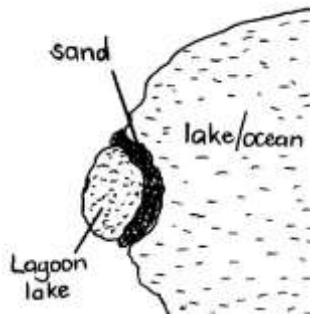
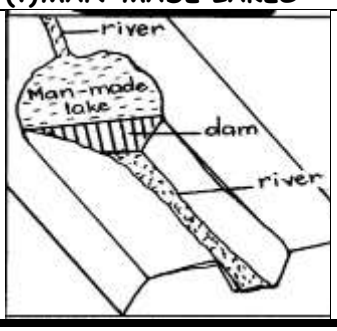
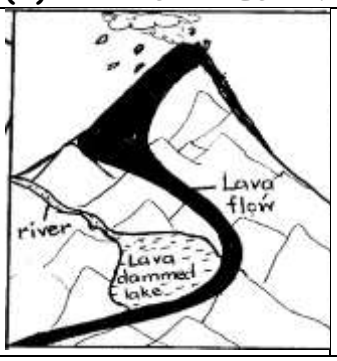
Diagram	*Description*	*Examples*
	➢ These are also called depression lakes/ down warped lakes. ➢ Basin lakes were formed as a result of ***down warping.*** ***Characteristics of basin lakes*** ➢ They are irregular in shape. ➢ They are wide and usually shallow. ➢ They have inlet and outlet rivers. ➢ They have fresh water. **Note:** ➢ *Basin lakes have fresh water because they have outlet rivers.* ➢ *Lake Victoria referred to as an inter-territorial lake because it is shared by three East African countries.* ➢ *Lake Victoria has got inland ports which handle imports and exports of East African countries. This is how it promotes inter-territorial trade in the region.*	• Lake Victoria • Lake Kyoga • Lake Chad • Lake Amboseli • Lake Ngami in Botswana

(ii) CRATER LAKES

	➢ These are formed on top of volcanic mountains. ➢ They are formed as a result of volcanicity.	• L. Katwe in Uganda. • L. Nyamunuka in Uganda • L. Muhavura in Uganda. • L. Panjam in Nigeria

(iii) MAN-MADE LAKES

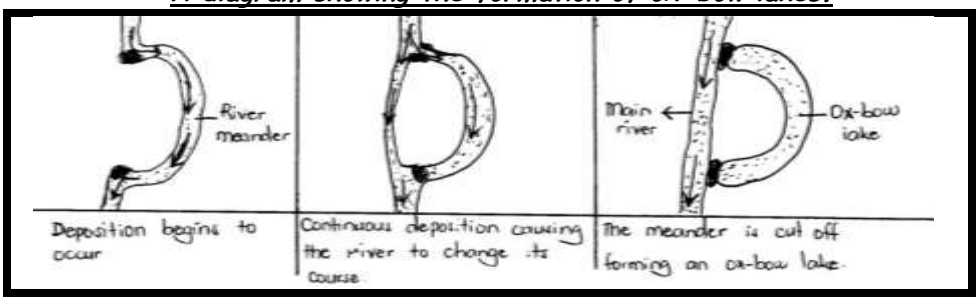
	➢ They are formed as a result of ***dam construction.*** ➢ They can also be formed as a result of digging valley dams in swamps. ➢	• L. Volta in Ghana (the largest) • L. Nasser on R.Nile in Egypt. • L. Kariba in Zambia • L. Kainji on R.Niger in Nigeria

(iv) RIFT VALLEY LAKES		
	These are lakes which lie on the floor of the rift valley and were formed as a result of faulting. ***Characteristics of rift valley lakes*** • They are long and narrow (oblong) • They are deep. • They are salty. • They have steep sided shores. • Most of them have no outlet rivers. ***Why rift valley lakes are salty.*** • They lie on top of salt rocks. (because they experience a lot of evaporation) • They have no outlet rivers. Note:- ➢ *Most rift valley lakes have no major outlet rivers.* ➢ *Lake Magadi provides salt and soda ash used for making glasses.*	-(refer to the African Great rift valley)
(iv) LAGOON LAKES		
	➢ These are formed as a result of ***marine deposition.*** ➢ They are formed when sand or mud separates the sea water. ➢ Most lagoon lakes in Africa are found at the West Africa coast due to an indented coastline. ➢ The East African coast has few lagoon lakes because it is smooth	• L.Nabugabo in Uganda. • L.Koule in Ghana • L.Nokeu in Benin • L.Igela in Gabon
(v)MAN-MADE LAKES		
	➢ They are formed as a result of ***dam construction.*** ➢ They can also be formed as a result of digging valley dams in swamps.	• L. Volta in Ghana (the largest) • L. Nasser on R.Nile in Egypt. • L. Kariba in Zambia • L. Kainji on R.Niger in Nigeria
(vi) LAVA DAMMED LAKES / VOLCANIC LAKES		
	➢ They are formed when lava flows and blocks a flowing river.(as a result of volcanicity) ➢ Then water collects behind to form a river.	• L. Bunyonyi (the deepest in Uganda) • L. Mutanda in Uganda • L. Tana in Ethiopia • L. Kivu in Rwanda and DRC

VII) ***OX-BOW LAKES***

- These are formed as a result of ***river deposition.***
- They are mainly formed on meandering rivers in the lower stage of a river.

A diagram showing the formation of ox-bow lakes.



Examples of Ox-bow lakes

- Lake Utange on river Rufiji
- Lake Gambi on river Tana in Kenya.
- Lake Manzala on the Nile delta in Egypt.

RIVERS IN AFRICA

- ***A river*** is a mass of flowing water on the earth's surface.
- Most rivers in Africa originate from high plateaus and highlands because such areas receive plenty of rainfall which provides water to the rivers.
- Rivers flow from areas of high altitude to areas of low altitude.
- Rivers continuously get their water from rainfall, melting snow or underground water flow.

Examples of major rivers in Africa.

- River Nile
- River Congo
- River Ruvuma
- River Kagera
- River Rufiji
- River Zambezi
- River Volta
- River Senegal
- River Orange
- River Limpopo
- River Gambia
- River Benue
- River Atbara
- River Tana

Examples of seasonal rivers in Africa.

- River Turkwel in Kenya
- River Lagh Bor in Kenya
- River Lagh Bogal in Kenya

Terms related to rivers.

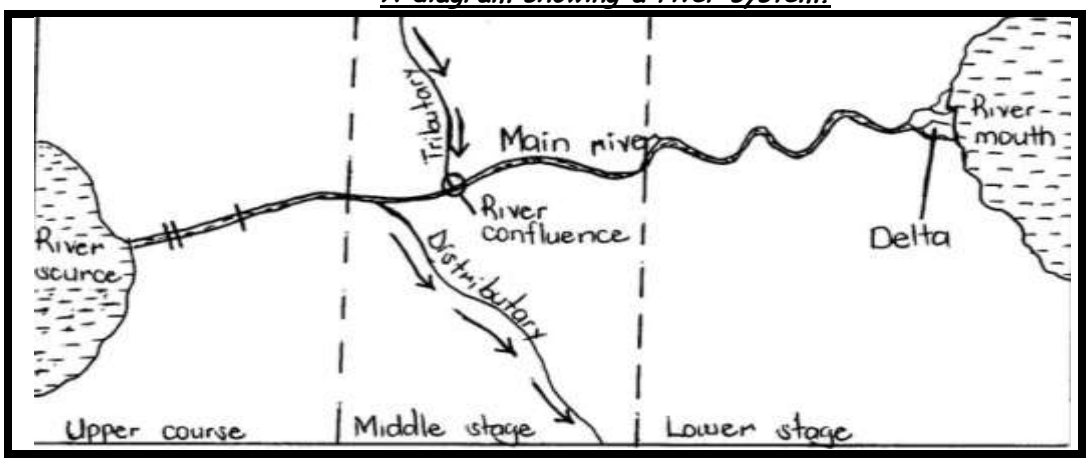
- ***A river source*** is a point where a river begins to flow.
- ***A river mouth*** is a point where a river ends its flow.
- ***A tributary*** is a small river that joins the main river.
- ***A distributary*** is a small river that branches away from the main river.
- ***A river confluence*** is a place where two or more rivers meet.
- ***An estuary*** is a wide part of a river as it ends its flow/enters the sea or a lake.
- ***A drainage basin*** is an area of land drained by a river, its tributaries and distributaries.
- ***A flood plain*** is a flat area near a river that often floods when the water level rises.
- ***A delta*** is the place where a river divides/splits into several streams as it ends its flow.

E.g.-R.Nile, R.Zambezi, R.Okavango and R.Niger form delta at their mouths.

Note:

- ✓ *Deltas are formed at the mouths of rivers, as a result of river deposition.*
- ✓ *Deltas have rich fertile soil for crop growing.*
- ✓ *They also attract tourists who bring in income.*
- ✓ *A waterfall is a steep flow of a river.*
- ✓ *Waterfalls attract tourists who bring in income, and also help in generation of hydro electricity.*
- ✓ *However, waterfalls may cause water accidents and also block water transport.*

A diagram showing a river system.



Stages of River Development

- A river has three main stages/ courses.

These are;

- The Youth stage/Upper course
- The Mature stage/ Middle stage
- The Old stage/ Lower stage (Senile)

Stage	*Characteristics*
The Upper course	• It has waterfalls and rapids • The river flows fast. • It forms a V-shaped valley (gorge). • There is a lot of vertical erosion. NOTE: ➢ *This stage is suitable for generation of hydro electricity because it has many waterfalls.* ➢ *The upper stage is suitable for tourism because it has waterfalls which attract tourists.*
The Middle stage	• The river flows gently. • It forms a U-shaped valley. • There is lateral erosion in this stage. • It begins to form meanders.
The Lower stage	• The river flows slowly. • It forms meanders and ox-bow lakes. • It form a deltas or an estuary. • The river deposits its load forming flood plains.

Features found along river valleys.

- Waterfalls
- Deltas
- Estuaries
- Gorges
- Ox-bow lakes

RIVER NILE

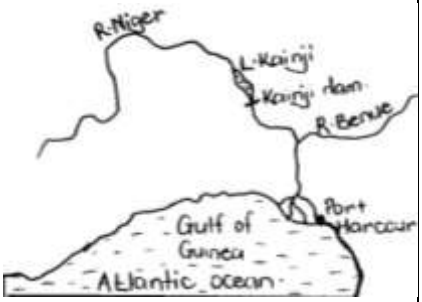
- River Nile is the longest river in the world.
- Its local name is Kiira.
- It flows northwards because the North is on a low altitude.
- John Hanning Speke was the first European explorer to see the source of river Nile.

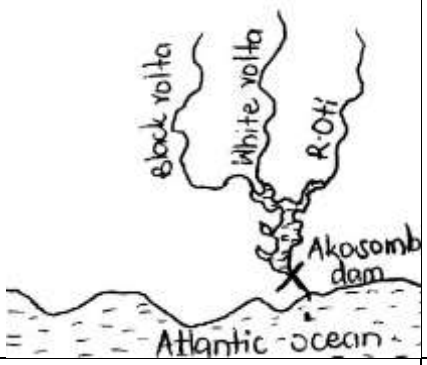
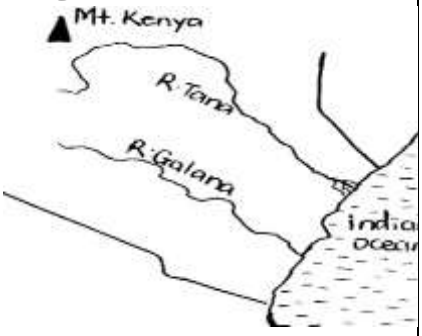
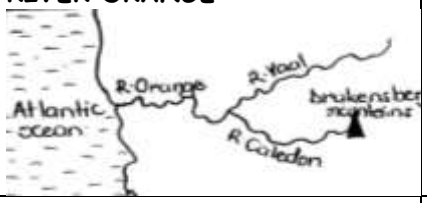
Source	-Lake Victoria
Mouth	-Mediterranean sea
Countries drained	-Uganda -Sudan -Ethiopia -Egypt -South Sudan
Main tributaries	-Blue Nile from lake Tana in Ethiopia -River Atbara -River Achwa in Uganda



Waterfalls	**-Karuma falls** **-Murchison falls** **-Itanda falls**
Hydroelectric power dams	**-Nalubaale power dam** **-Kiira dam in Uganda** **-Bujagali power dam** **-Karuma dam** **-Aswan high dam in Egypt** **-Jebel Aulia dam in Sudan** **-Roseires dam in Sudan** **Note:** *-The construction of Aswan High dam resulted into creation of lake Nasser.* *-The Nile is the life blood of Egypt because the people of Egypt depend on the water of the Nile for irrigation and domestic use.*
Nile valley countries	**-Uganda, -South Sudan,** **-Ethiopia, -Sudan, -Egypt.** ***NB:-The Nile valley** is the area drained by river Nile, its tributaries and distributaries.* *-The Nile valley is densely populated because it receives reliable rainfall, and also has fertile soils which support crop growing.*

Other rivers in Africa

RIVER CONGO  	**❖It is the biggest river in Africa.** **❖It forms an estuary at its mouth.** **❖It forms a natural boundary between DRC and Congo-Brazzaville** ***Power dams on river Congo*** **-Nzilo power dam -Inga power dam** ***Major tributaries of river Congo*** **-River - River Kasai** **❖It carries the largest volume of water to the ocean.** **because;** *-it has many tributaries* *-it originates from equatorial climatic region which receives plenty of rainfall throughout the year.*
RIVER NIGER  	**❖ It flows through Niger and Nigeria, and pours its water into the Atlantic ocean.** **❖ It forms a delta at its mouth. ie.the Niger delta.** **❖ River Benue is the main tributary of river Niger.** **❖ The construction of Kainji dam on river Niger resulted into formation of lake Kainji.** ***Importance of the Niger delta.*** **❖ It has many oil wells.** **❖ It has fertile soils for crop growing.** **❖ It attracts tourists who bring in income.**

RIVER VOLTA 	❖ It flows through Burkina Faso and Ghana, and pours its water into the Atlantic ocean. ❖ The construction of the Akosombo power dam along river Volta resulted into creation of lake Volta. ❖ Lake Volta is the largest manmade lake in Africa. ***Main tributaries of river Volta.*** -Black Volta, -White Volta, -River Oti.
RIVER ZAMBEZI 	❖ It flows through Zambia and Mozambique. ❖ It pours its water into the Indian ocean. ❖ It forms a delta at its mouth. ❖ Lake Kariba was formed after the construction of Kariba dam along river Zambezi. ***Hydro electric power dams along river Zambezi.*** ❖ Kariba dam in Zambia ❖ Cahora Bassa dam in Mozambique ❖ Kafue dam in Zambia NB: *Victoria falls along river Zambezi in Zambia are the highest waterfalls in Africa.*
RIVER TANA 	❖ It originates from the Kenya highlands and flows into the Indian ocean. ❖ River Thiba and River Nyamindi are the main tributaries of river Tana. ❖ *River Thiba* supplies water to *Mwea Tebere irrigation scheme*. (famous for rice growing) ❖ The *Seven Forks scheme* was built on river Tana. ***Power dams built along river Tana.*** -Gitaru dam, -Kindaruma, -Kamburu, -Masinga dam, -Kiambere dam.
RIVER ORANGE 	❖ It originates from the Drakensberg mountains and flows into the Atlantic ocean. ❖ *River Vaal* and *river Caledon* are the main tributaries of river orange. ❖ *Vaal power* dam and *Verwoerd dam* were built along river orange in South Africa.
RIVER LIMPOPO	❖ It flows into the Indian ocean. ❖ It forms a natural boundary between South Africa and Mozambique.

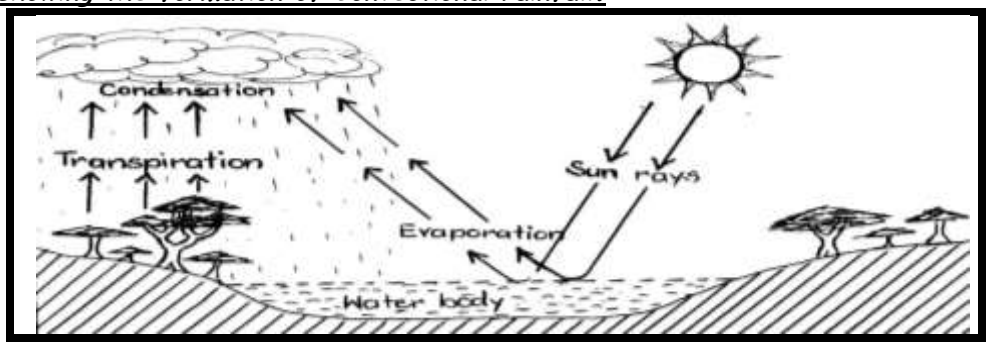
Rivers in Africa and the water bodies they pour their water.

Ocean/ sea/ lake	*Rivers*
Lake Victoria	-River Kagera -River Katonga -River Mara -River Nzoia -River Yala
Indian ocean	-River Ruvuma -River Rufiji -River Pangani -River Tana, -River Galana,
Atlantic ocean	-River Congo, -River Senegal, -River Niger, -River Gambia, -River Volta, -River Orange.
Mediterranean sea	-River Nile

Importance of lakes and rivers

- ❖ They help in rain formation.
- ❖ They act as fishing grounds.
- ❖ Rivers help in generation of hydro electricity.
- ❖ They attract tourists who bring in income.
- ❖ They form natural boundaries between countries.
- ❖ They are used for recreation.
- ❖ They are used as a medium of water transport.
- ❖ They provide water for irrigation, domestic and industrial use.

A diagram showing the formation of Convectional rainfall.



Problems associated with lakes and rivers.

- ❖ Drowning
- ❖ Flooding
- ❖ They harbour disease vectors.
- ❖ Rivers and lakes hinder road and railway construction.

Problems facing lakes and rivers

- ❖ Silting which reduces the depth of water bodies.
- ❖ Overuse of water from lakes and rivers.
- ❖ Drought which lowers the water level.
- ❖ Dumping of wastes into water bodies.
- ❖ Over fishing.

Why most parts of rivers in Africa are not navigable (not used for for transport)

- ❖ Some rivers have waterfalls and rapids.
- ❖ Some parts of rivers are shallow and narrow
- ❖ Some rivers have dangerous aquatic animals.
- ❖ Some rivers have floating vegetation.(suds)

THE INFLUENCE OF PHYSICAL FEATURES.

a) On People

- ❖ Mountainous areas attract human settlement due to the presence of fertile soils for cultivation.
- ❖ Plains favour pastoralism due to the presence of pasture.
- ❖ Ground transport is poor in highland areas due to the presence of steep slopes.
- ❖ Many people settle around lakes and rivers because such areas receive reliable rainfall and have fertile soils which support crop cultivation.

Factors which attract human settlement in;

i) Plateau areas

- ❖ Presence of pasture for animals.
- ❖ Agricultural mechanisation is easy in such areas.
- ❖ Construction of houses, roads, railways and industries is easy.
- ❖ Natural hazards like floods are not common in these areas.

ii) Highland areas

- ❖ Presence of fertile soils.
- ❖ Availability of reliable rainfall.

Common economic activities carried out in highland areas.

- Crop farming
- Dairy farming
- Mining

Reasons why there are very few people living in higher parts of mountains.

- Transport is poor in higher parts of the mountains
- Highland areas experience very low temperatures which do not favour human settlement.

b) On Plants

- Areas around lakes and rivers have many plants due to plenty of rainfall received.
- Slopes of mountains have forests due to presence of fertile soils and reliable rainfall received.
- Mountain tops have few plants due to low temperatures.

c) On Animals.

- Plains have plenty of grass which attracts animals.
- Water bodies favour aquatic animals.
- Pastoralism is common on plateau areas due to the presence of pasture for animals.
- There are many climbing animals eg.mountain gorillas in highland areas due to the presence of many fruit trees.

d) On Climate.

- Mountains receive plenty of relief rainfall.
- The wind ward side of a mountain receives plenty of rainfall because it receives warm moist air.
- The lee ward side of the mountain receives very little rainfall because it receives dry winds.
- Mountainous areas experience very low temperatures because they lie at a higher altitude.
- Rift valleys and low lands experience very high temperature because they are of low altitude.
- Lake shores receive plenty of convectional rainfall.



Testing Exercise.

1. Which physical feature covers the largest part of Uganda?
2. Why does river Nile flow from lake Victoria towards lake Kyoga?
3. Mention any three rivers that flow into lake Victoria.
4. Why are physical features used to create boundaries between places?
5. Mention the three types of mountains in Africa.
6. Compare the following mountains in terms of their formation.
   (i) Mountain Rwenzori and mountain Kilimanjaro
   (ii) Mountain Elgon and Atlas mountains.
   (iii) Drakensberg mountains and the Cape ranges mountains
7. How does volcanicity promote farming activities in an area?
8. Why is it not advisable for people to settle on slopes of volcanic mountains?
9. Mention the forces responsible for the formation of fold mountains.
10. What name is given to the;
    (i) Raised parts of a fold mountain?
    (ii) Sunken parts of a fold mountain?
11. Give the meaning of each of the following;
    (i) Volcanicity
    (ii) Faulting
12. Why is the highest peak of mountain Rwenzori snowcapped throughout the year?
13. Why did Henry Morton Stanley name mountain Rwenzori "the mountains of the moon"?
14. Give any three ways volcanicity affects the natural environment.
15. Mention one factor that favours the growth of arabica coffee on the slopes of mountain Rwenzori.
16. State any three problems facing people living in mountain areas.

17. Complete the table below correctly.

Mountain	*Formation*	*Highest peak*
(i) Mountain Elgon	volcanicity	----------
(ii) ----------	----------	Margherita
(iii) Mountain Kilimanjaro	----------	----------
(iv) Mountain Moroto	----------	----------
(v) Drakensberg mountains	----------	----------

18. How can road transport be made possible in highland areas?
19. How is mountain Rwenzori politically important to Uganda?
20. Mention ant two other mountains in East Africa that were formed through similar process as mountain Rwenzori.
21. Give one way the presence of mountains promotes economic development of an area.
22. State any one way mountains hinder economic development in an area.
23. Why does the lee ward side of a mountain receive very little rainfall?
24. What factor makes the wind ward side of a mountain suitable for crop growing?
25. Give the meaning of a Plateau.
26. Which type of rainfall is mostly received in plateau areas?
27. Name the forces that led to the formation of the rift valley.
28. What name is given to the steep sides of a rift valley?
29. Name the major escarpments of the Western rift valley?
30. Why do rift valley areas experience very high temperatures?
31. Give any two factors that favour dairy farming in the Kenya highlands.
32. How are hills useful to telecommunication companies?
33. State the major cause of landslides in mountainous areas.
34. Give one way landslides can be controlled in hilly areas.
35. State any three characteristics of rift valley lakes.
36. How is the rift valley similar to block mountains in terms of their formation?
37. Name the relief feature that lies along the East African coast.
38. Give any two ways coral reefs are economically important.
39. What name is given to the hard rocks formed by polyps at the bottom of the seas and oceans?
40. Name the largest fresh water lake in Uganda.
41. Why is lake Victoria referred to as an inter-territorial lake?
42. Mention any four physical feature that create a boundary between Uganda and Democratic Republic of Congo.
43. Complete the table below correctly.

Lake	Formation	Any three examples.
(i) Basin lakes	----------	---------- ---------- --------
(ii) Rift valley lakes	----------	---------- ---------- --------
(iii) ----------	----------	Lake Katwe ---------- --------
(iv) ----------	Marine deposition	Lake Nabugabo ---------- --------
(v) ----------	----------	Lake Bunyonyi ---------- -------
(vi) Ox-bow lakes	----------	---------- ---------- --------

44. Why do most rift valley lakes usually have salty water?
45. State any two characteristics of basin lakes.
46. Why is lake Katwe not considered to be a rift valley lake yet it lies on the floor of the rift valley?
47. Compare lake Tanganyika and lake Kyoga in terms of their formation.
48. Which lake in Kenya is referred to as a sanctuary for flamingoes?
49. Name one man-made lake found along each of the following rivers

(i) River Nile
(ii) River Volta
(iii) River Zambezi
(iv) River Niger.

50. Name the deepest lake in Africa.
51. Mention any four inland ports located on lake Victoria.
52. How does lake Victoria promote inter-territorial trade among the East African countries?
53. Mention any four major rivers in Africa that drain into the Indian ocean.
54. Why do most rivers in Africa originate from high mountains?
55. Name the largest river in Africa.
56. Mention any three rivers in Africa that form deltas at their mouths.
57. Give one reason why the Nile delta is densely populated.
58. Give any two ways waters falls along river Nile have promoted economic development in Uganda.
59. Why does river Congo carry the largest volume of water to the sea as compared to other rivers in Africa?
60. Mention any two characteristics of the upper stage of a river.
61. Why is the upper stage of a river suitable for hydro electric power generation?
62. How did the construction of Nalubaale power dam affect the Ripon falls?
63. Mention any three rivers in Africa that pour their water into the Atlantic ocean.
64. Which stage of a river is characterised by ox-bow lakes?
65. Mention the main tributary of river Nile in Uganda.
66. Why is lake Kyoga so swampy?
67. Give any two ways the Niger delta is economically important to Nigeria.
68. What name is given to the part of river Nile between lake Victoria and lake Albert?
69. What natural evidence shows that lake Victoria is on a higher altitude than the Mediterranean sea?
70. How is the mouth of river Congo different from that of river Niger?
71. What factor makes navigation along the Victoria Nile difficult?
72. State the political importance of river Ruvuma to Tanzania.
73. State the major cause of land fragmentation in Kigezi sub-region.
74. How does terracing help to reduce soil erosion in highland areas?
75. Why are there usually very few people living in higher parts of mountains in Africa?

TOPIC 3: **THE CLIMATE OF AFRICA.**

INTRODUCTION TO WEATHER.

- ***Weather*** is the state of the atmosphere of a place at a given time.
- ***Meteorology*** is the scientific study of weather.
- ***A meteorologist*** is a scientist who studies weather.
- Elements of weather are measured and recorded at a *weather station/ meteorological centre.*
- The biggest meteorological centre/ weather station in Uganda is *Entebbe meteorological centre.*
- ***Weather forecasting*** is the telling of the expected future weather conditions of an area.

Importance of weather forecasting.

- It helps farmers to plan well their farm activities. e.g. Planting, harvesting etc.
- It helps travellers to prepare for their journeys.
- It helps pilots and sailors to avoid air and water accidents.

Main aspects of climate.

- Rainfall
- Temperature.

Types and conditions of weather.

Type of weather	*Condition of weather*
Rainy weather	Rainy
Windy weather	Windy
Cloudy weather	Cloudy
Sunny weather	Sunny

Elements of weather / factors of weather

- Rainfall
- Cloud cover
- Wind
- Humidity
- Sunshine
- Air pressure
- Temperature

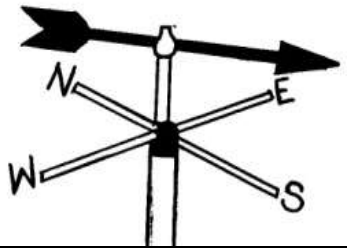
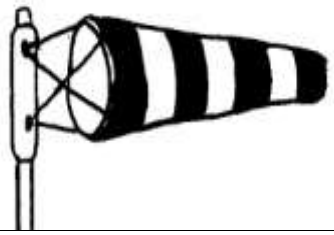
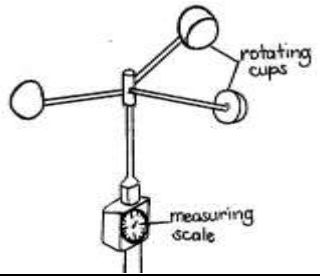
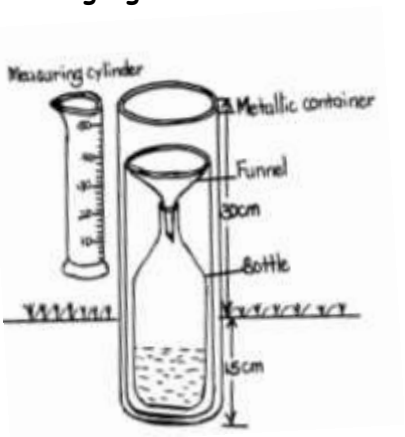
Importance and dangers of various weather elements

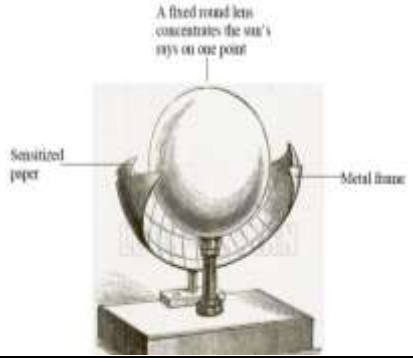
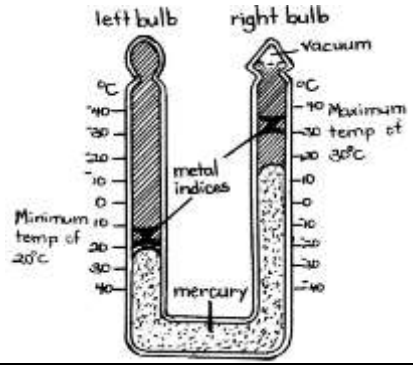
Element	*Importance and dangers*
Wind	❖ ***Wind*** is air in motion. ❖ Wind is caused by the *difference in atmospheric pressure.* ❖ Wind blows from the areas of high atmospheric pressure to areas of low pressure. ***Importance*** ❖ It is used in winnowing. ❖ Wind drives away bad smell. ❖ It dries people's clothes. ❖ It helps in sailing boats on large water bodies. ❖ It helps in pollination. ❖ It helps in flying kites and balloons. ❖ It can be turned into power by wind mills. Wind mills are mainly used in Karamoja to pump water. ***Dangers.*** ❖ Strong wind destroys farmers' crops. ❖ Wind causes soil erosion. ❖ It pollutes the environment by raising dust. ❖ It drives away clouds that would bring rainfall. ❖ Strong wind blows off roofs of houses. ❖ Strong wind makes water vessels capsize on water bodies. ❖ Dry winds cause desert conditions in areas where they blow to.

Clouds	❖ These are solid drops of rain in the atmosphere. ***Importance*** ❖ Clouds protect us from direct sun rays. ❖ Some clouds give us rain eg. Nimbus clouds. ❖ Clouds regulate world temperatures. ❖ Clouds keep the earth warm at night.
Rainfall	❖ ***Rainfall*** is the amount of rain received in a particular area. ❖ Areas that receive plenty of rainfall are usually densely populated while those that receive unreliable rainfall usually have very few people (are sparsely populated) Types of rainfall ❖ Convectional rainfall (mostly received around forests and large water bodies) ❖ Relief/ Orographic rainfall (received mostly in highland areas) ❖ Cyclonic/ frontal rainfall (received mostly in plateau areas/ plains) ***Importance*** ❖ Rain is a natural source of water in the environment. ❖ It helps plants to grow well. ❖ It helps to reduce dust in the environment. ❖ It helps to cool the environment. ❖ It increases the volume of water in water bodies. ❖ Rain water softens the soil for cultivation. ***Dangers*** ❖ Too much rainfall causes floods. ❖ It causes landslides in mountainous areas which lead to displacement of people, death of people and animals, destruction of property etc. ❖ It leads to soil erosion. ❖ Heavy rainfall destroys farmers' crops. ❖ It makes murram roads muddy and slippery.
Sunshine	✚ The sun is the major source of light in the environment. ✚ Africa receives abundant sunshine throughout the year because the sun is overhead Africa throughout the year. ✚ Sunshine is tapped and utilized by many people in Africa in form of solar energy. ***Importance*** ❖ It is used in preserving food. ❖ It is a source of Vitamin D. ❖ It dries farmers' crop harvests. ❖ It is used in generation of solar energy. ❖ It helps in drying clothes. ***Dangers*** ❖ Strong sunshine leads to drought. ❖ Direct sun rays cause skin cancer. ❖ It leads to global warming. ❖ It dries up pasture for animals. ❖ It causes dust in the environment. ❖ It dries crops in the garden before they are ready for harvesting.

WEATHER INSTRUMENTS

- **These are tools used in measuring and recording atmospheric conditions.**

Weather instrument	Importance
Wind vane / a weather cock 	❖ **It shows the *direction of wind.*** ❖ **A wind vane is placed in an open place or on top of buildings to prevent wind obstruction.** **Note:-***An arrow of a wind vane usually points to the direction from which wind is blowing.*
A Windsock 	❖ **It is used to determine the *strength of wind.*** ❖ **It's usually found at the airports, air fields, at chemical plants etc.** **Note:-***A wind sock is* ***not*** *among the instruments of weather found at a weather station.*
An Anemometer 	❖ **It measures the *speed of wind.*** ❖ **It has cups which trap wind and rotate as wind blows into them.** ❖ **The speed of wind is measured in kilometres per hour (km/hr)**
A Rain gauge 	❖ **It is used to *measure the amount of rainfall received* in an area.** ❖ **It is always placed at least *30cm* above the ground to prevent splashes and flowing water on the ground from entering the rain gauge.** ❖ **It should be placed 15cm below the ground to prevent the evaporation of water collected and to make it firm.** ❖ **It is placed in an open flat place to prevent obstruction of rain drops in order to take accurate measurements.** ***Importance of different parts of a rain gauge.*** ❖ ***The funnel****-it directs water into the bottle.* ❖ ***Water bottle****-it collects the amount of rain water received.* ❖ ***Measuring cylinder****-it is used for measuring the amount of water collected in the bottle.* **Note:-***Rainfall is measured in* ***millimetres*** *in order to know the depth of rain water into the soil.*
A ceilometer	❖ **It is used to measure the height and thickness of clouds.**

A Barometer 	❖ It is used to measure *air pressure.* ❖ Air pressure is measured in millibars. ❖ Measuring air pressure enables experts to predict storms.
A Sunshine recorder 	❖ It shows the duration of sunshine in a day.
Hygrometer 	❖ It is used to measure *humidity.* ❖ *<u>Humidity</u> is the amount of water vapour in the atmosphere.*
Six's thermometer 	❖ It measures the highest and lowest temperatures of the day.

<u>A STEVENSON SCREEN.</u>

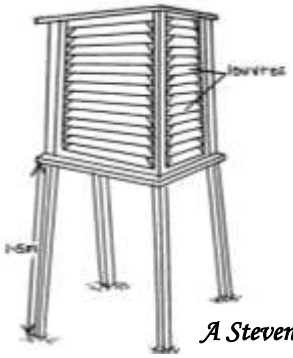
- This is a wooden box with louvres on metallic stands in which delicate weather instruments are kept at a weather station.
- It protects weather instruments from rainfall and direct heat.
- The Stevenson screen is made of louvres to allow free air circulation in the box.
- It is painted white to enable it reflect sunlight.
- It is raised 1.5m above the ground to keep it free from splash water.
- It is made of wood to prevent it from absorbing heat.

Weather instruments kept in a Stevenson screen.

- **Barometer**
- **Hygrometer**
- **Six's thermometer (Maximum and thermometer).**

Note:

- *The above instruments are kept in a Stevenson screen in order to protect them from destruction since they are delicate.*
- ***The Ministry of Water and Environment** is responsible for monitoring weather and climate, and issuing advice to the public on weather conditions in Uganda.*



A Stevenson screen

CLIMATE OF AFRICA.

- **Climate is the average weather condition of a place recorded for a long time.**
- **Climatology is the scientific study of climate.**
- ***A climatologist* is a scientist who studies climate.**

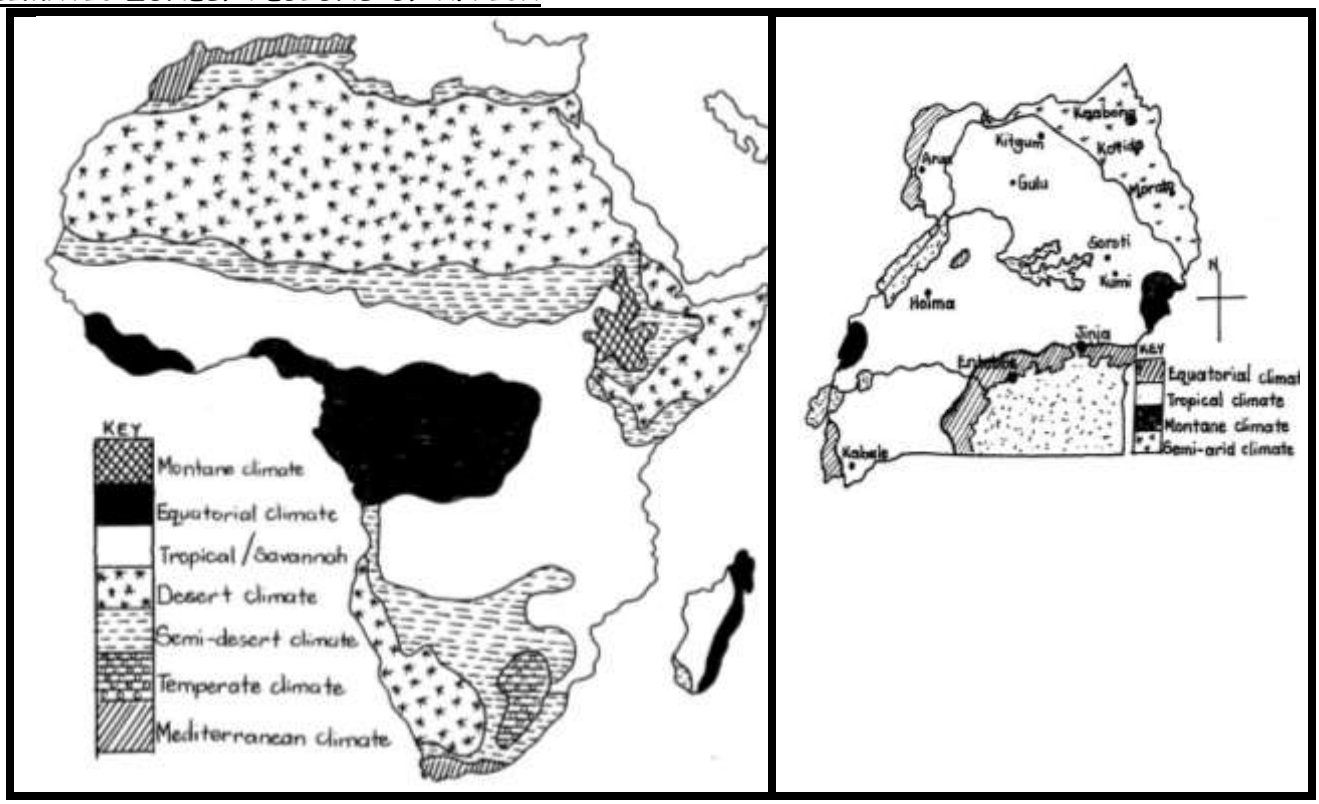
CLIMATIC REGIONS/ ZONES OF AFRICA

- ***A climatic region* is a large area that experiences the same / similar weather patterns.**

The climatic regions of Africa include the following;

- **Equatorial climatic zone.**
- **Tropical (Savannah) climatic zone**
- **Semi-desert/ Semi-arid climatic zone**
- **Desert / Arid climatic zone**
- **Mountain / Montane climatic zone**
- **Mediterranean climatic zone.**
- **Temperate climatic zone.**

CLIMATIC ZONES/ REGIONS OF AFRICA



i) EQUATORIAL CLIMATE

- It is described as hot and wet throughout the year.
- This type of climate is experienced in areas lying between 5°N and 5°S of the equator.
- The high rate of evaporation and transpiration causes heavy rainfall in this region (usually above 1750mm)
- In Uganda, Equatorial climate is mostly experienced on the shores of lake Victoria.

African countries that experience Equatorial climate

- Democratic Republic of Congo
- Gabon
- Central African Republic
- Congo Brazzaville
- Equatorial Guinea
- Uganda-on the shores of lake Victoria

Characteristics of Equatorial climate.

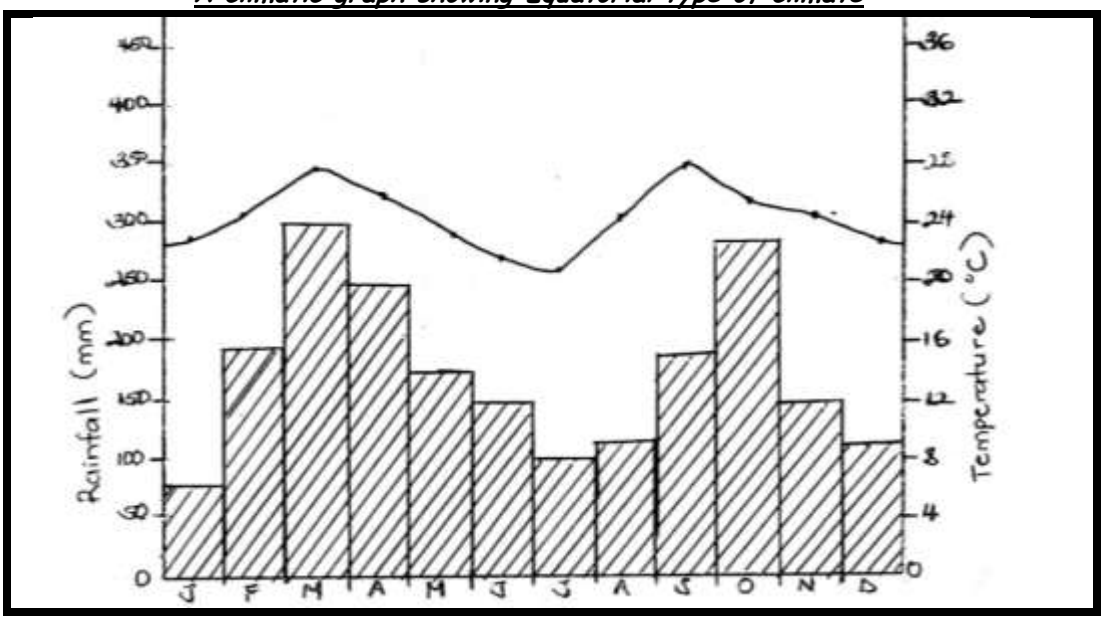
- ❖ It is hot and wet throughout the year.
- ❖ Convectional rainfall is mostly received. (mainly in the afternoon.)
- ❖ It has no dry month.
- ❖ It has two heavy maximum rainfall seasons. (a double rain maxima during the equinoxes)
- ❖ It experiences very high temperatures daily. (of about 25° daily on average.)

Note:- *People living in Equatorial climatic region build houses with slanting roofs to allow easy flow of rain water off the roofs/ to allow easy down flow of rain water from the roofs.*

A climatic table showing Equatorial type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp (°C)	23	25	27	26	24	22	21	25	28	26	25	23
Rainfall(mm)	70	190	300	250	170	150	50	120	180	270	150	120

A climatic graph showing Equatorial type of climate



Note:-*According to the above table and the graph, the increase in temperatures causes increase in the amount of rainfall received in the Equatorial climatic region.*

Economic activities carried out in equatorial climatic region

- Crop growing
- Lumbering
- Tourism

Common crops grown in equatorial climatic region

- Oil palm
- Cocoa
- Rubber
- Coffee
- Bananas

Note:- *The above crops are commonly grown because they require plenty of rainfall for them to grow well.*

ii) TROPICAL CLIMATE / SAVANNAH CLIMATE

- Tropical climate is described as hot and wet.
- Tropical type of climate is experienced in most parts of Africa.
  This is because most parts of Africa lie between the tropics (with in the tropical region).
- This type of climate is experienced between the Tropic of cancer and the Tropic of Capricorn.
- Tropical climatic region lies in areas between 5º to 15ºN and 5º to 15ºS of the equator.

African countries that experience Tropical climate.

- Uganda
- Zambia
- Zimbabwe
- Kenya
- Tanzania
- Rwanda
- Ghana
- Nigeria
- Burundi
- Mali
- Malawi

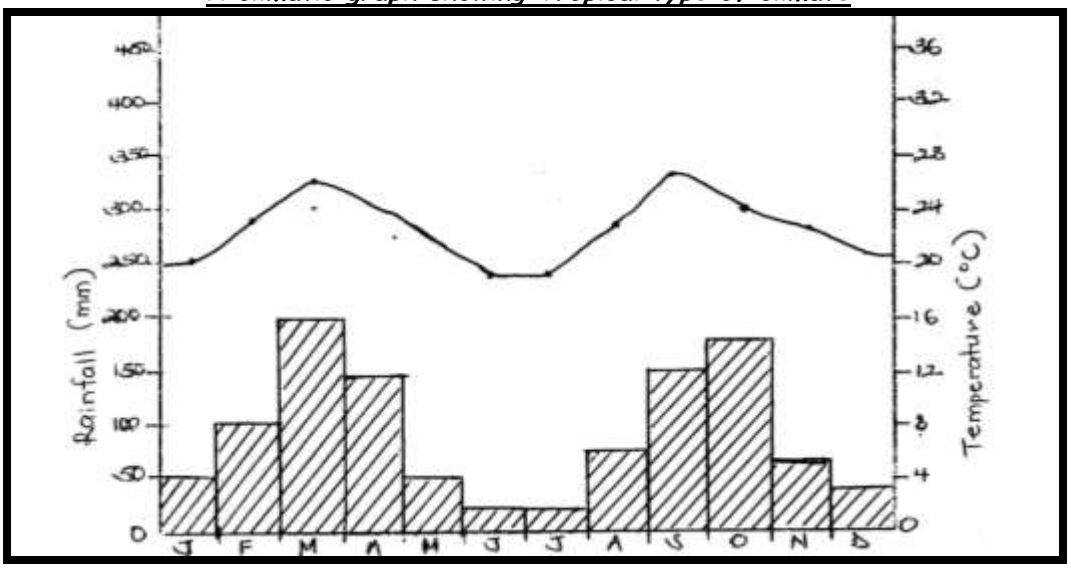
Characteristics of Tropical climate

- ❖ Rainfall is mainly received when the sun is overhead the equator.
- ❖ It has two wet seasons and two dry seasons.
- ❖ Rainfall decreases as one moves far from the equator.
- ❖ Tropical type of climate is hot and wet.

The climatic table showing Tropical type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp. (ºC)	20	23	26	24	22	18	19	23	27	24	23	21
Rainfall (mm)	50	110	200	140	50	25	25	75	150	175	60	40

A climatic graph showing Tropical type of climate



Note:-*According to the above table and the graph, the increase in temperatures causes increase in the amount of rainfall received in the Tropical climatic region.*

Economic activities commonly carried out in Tropical climatic region

- Crop growing
- Tourism
- Bee keeping
- Pastoralism
- Lumbering

Common crops grown in Tropical climatic region

- Maize
- Sorghum
- Beans
- Ground nuts
- Fruits like; jack fruits, oranges, mangoes, guavas,

iii) DESERT CLIMATE / ARID CLIMATE and (iv) SEMI-DESERT CLIMATE /SEMI-ARID CLIMATE

- ***Desert climate*** **is described as hot and dry throughout the year.**
- ***Semi-desert climate*** **is described as hot and dry.**
- **Desert areas receive very little rainfall because they receive dry winds.**
- **Deserts are very hot during day with temperatures ranging between 35°-50°C.**
- **Deserts are very cold at night due to the absence of clouds in the sky.**
- **Desert climate is experienced in areas located between the Tropical and Mediterranean climatic region.**

Major deserts in Africa.

- **Sahara desert (the largest and hottest in the world)**
- **Namib desert**
- **Kalahari desert**

African countries that experience desert climate

- **Libya**
- **Angola**
- **Egypt**
- **Somalia**
- **Western Sahara**
- **Morocco**
- **Namibia**

Note:

- ***Marine deserts*** *are deserts caused by dry winds blowing over large water bodies eg. Namib desert.*
- ***Continental deserts*** *are deserts caused by dry winds blowing over land for example the Sahara desert, Kalahari desert.*
- ***Harmattan winds*** *are responsible for causing desert conditions in the Sahara.*
- *People living in desert areas usually wear light white clothes to reflect sunlight and heat.*
- *The desert dwellers build houses with flat roofs in order to prevent desert storms from blowing off their roofs, and also to regulate indoor temperatures.*
- *Sand dunes and Oases are the major tourist attractions in desert areas.*
- ***Sand dunes*** *are large heaps of sand formed by blowing wind in the desert.*
- ***An oasis*** *is a place where water can be obtained in the desert.*
- *The Desert dwellers wear turbans on their heads to keep their bodies cool by preventing the loss of body moisture through the heads*

Importance of oases.

- **They provide water for irrigation farming and for domestic use.**
- **They attract tourists who bring in income.**

Characteristics of Desert climate.

- **It is hot and dry throughout the year.**
- **There is very low humidity.**
- **It receives very little rainfall.**
- **It has hot days and cold nights.**
- **Skies are clear with less cloud cover.**

Economic activities commonly done in desert areas.

- **Irrigation farming**
- **Pastoralism**
- **Tourism**

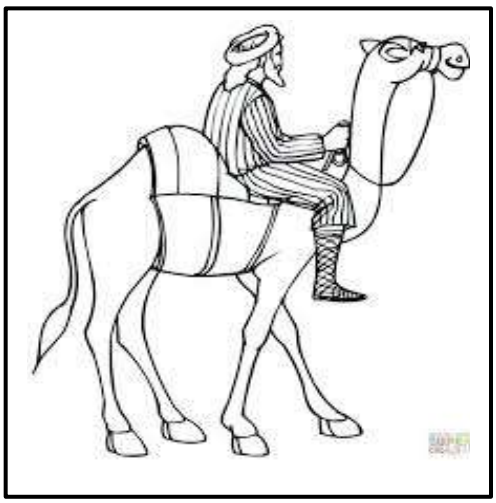
Note:

-Crop farming in desert areas is done around oases through irrigation.

-Barley, dates and olives are commonly grown in desert areas.

-Most crops grown in desert areas take a short time to mature (cereal crops)

-River Nile, lake Chad and oases provide water to dwellers of the Sahara.



Common animals kept in desert areas.

- **Camels (for use as means of transport)**
- **Cattle**

Importance of camels to desert dwellers

- They are used for transport.
- They are a source of income when sold.
- They provide meat.
- They provide milk to them.

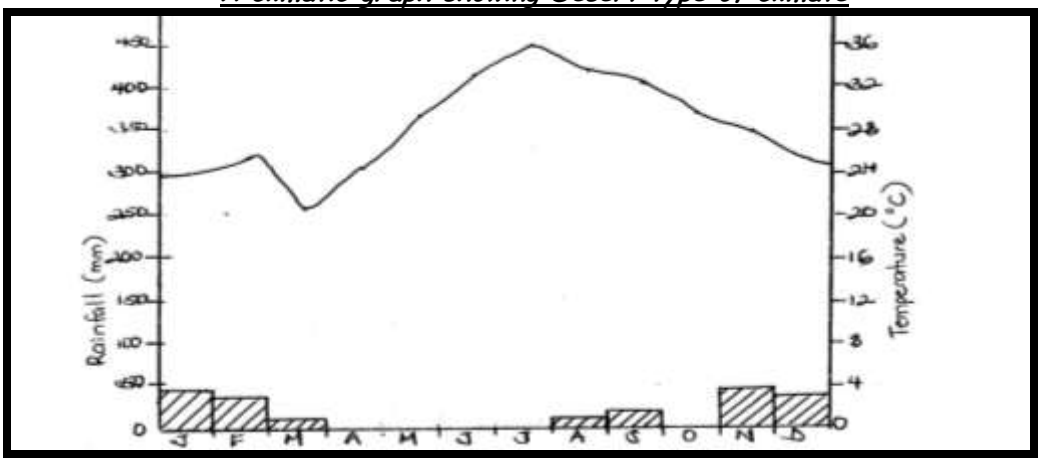
Factors that enable camels to survive in harsh desert conditions.

- They have large humps which store fats for so long.
- They have long eyelashes which protect their eyes from desert sand.
- They have large hooves which enable them to walk on desert sand.
- Their nostrils can close which protect which protect their noses from desert sand.
- Their body temperature changes which prevents water loss from the body through sweating.

A Climatic table showing Desert type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp. (°C)	24	26	21	25	30	34	36	34	33	30	28	26
Rainfall (mm)	40	30	15	==	==	==	==	15	20	==	45	35

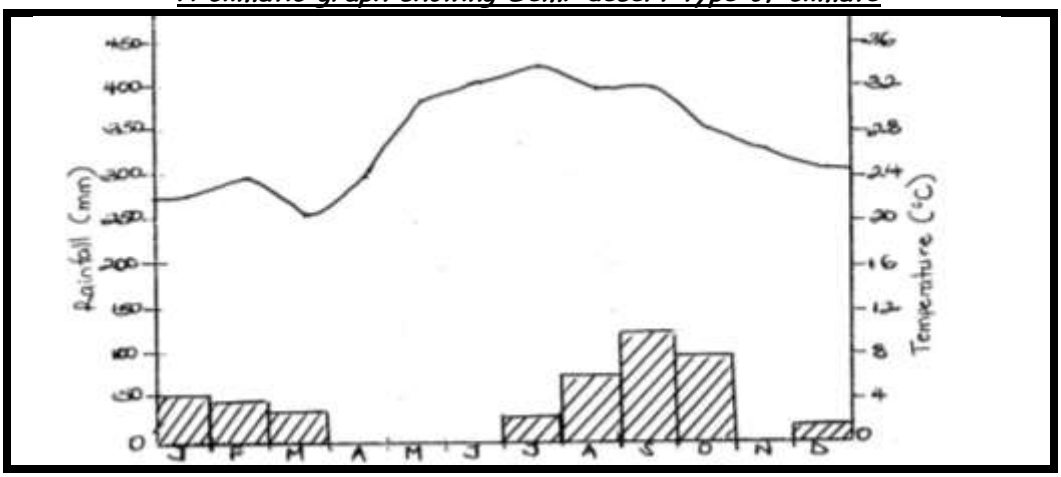
A climatic graph showing Desert type of climate



A Climatic table showing Semi-desert type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp (°C)	23	24	21	24	31	33	34	32	32	29	27	25
Rainfall (mm)	50	40	28	==	==	==	30	75	120	100	==	20

A climatic graph showing Semi-desert type of climate



Note:-*North Eastern Uganda and the Northern part of Kenya experience Semi-desert climate because they lie on the lee ward side of the Ethiopian highlands.*

v) MEDITERRANEAN CLIMATE.

- It is described as warm dry summers and cool wet winters
- It is also called the *Warm Temperate Western margin.*
- It is experienced in areas between 30° and 40° North and South of the Equator.
- It is experienced in areas bordering the Mediterranean sea and the extreme Western corner of South Africa. (Cape region of South Africa)
- When it is winter in the North, it is summer in the South and vice versa.
- The coldest months in North Africa are December and January while June and July are the hottest.
- The coldest months in South Africa are June and July while December and January are the hottest.
- The Westerly winds cause rainfall in the Mediterranean climatic region during winter

African countries that experience Mediterranean climate.

- Morocco
- Algeria
- Tunisia
- Libya

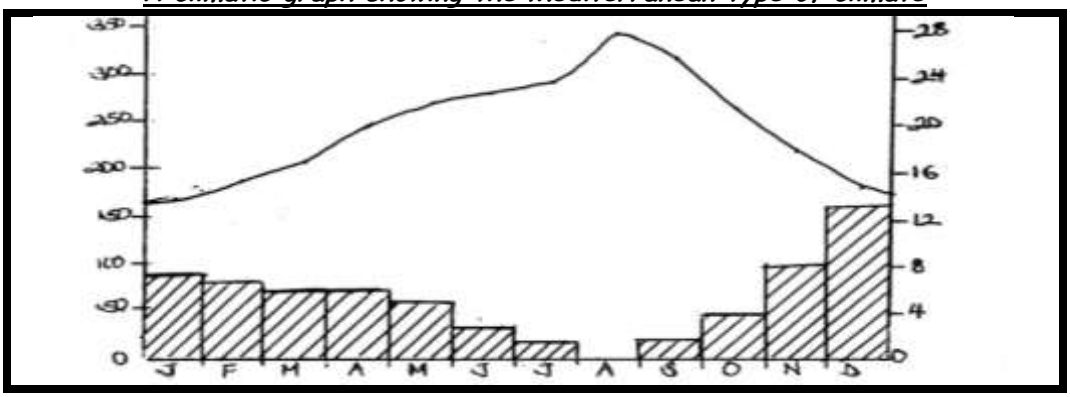
Characteristics of Mediterranean climate.

- ❖ It has cool and wet winters
- ❖ It has hot and dry summers.
- ❖ It receives moderate rainfall especially during winter.
- ❖ It experiences high temperatures during summer.
- ❖ Rainfall decreases with the increase in temperature.

A Climatic table showing Mediterranean type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp(°C)	14	15	17	20	22	23	24	28	26	22	18	15
Rainfall (mm)	90	80	70	70	60	30	18	==	20	50	100	130

A climatic graph showing the Mediterranean type of climate



Note:-*According to the above table and the graph, rainfall decreases with the increase in temperature in the Mediterranean climatic region.*

Common economic activities carried out in Mediterranean climatic region.

- Citrus fruit growing.
- Lumbering
- Animal rearing (pastoralism)
- Tourism
- Wine making

Major crops grown in Mediterranean climatic region.

- Citrus fruits like; oranges, lemons, limes, tangerines, grape vines.

Products obtained from citrus fruits

- Juice
- Wine

vi) *TEMPERATE CLIMATE.*

- Temperate climate is described as warm wet summers and cool dry winters.
- It is experienced in Eastern parts of South Africa.
- It extends to the Drakensberg mountains.
- The areas that experience Temperate climate in South Africa are called the Veld / High Veld.

- The High Veld is warm with temperatures ranging between 10°-19°C.

African countries that experience Temperate climate.

- South Africa
- Eswatini
- Lesotho

States in South Africa that experience Temperate climate.

- Orange free state
- Cape colony
- Transvaal
- Natal province

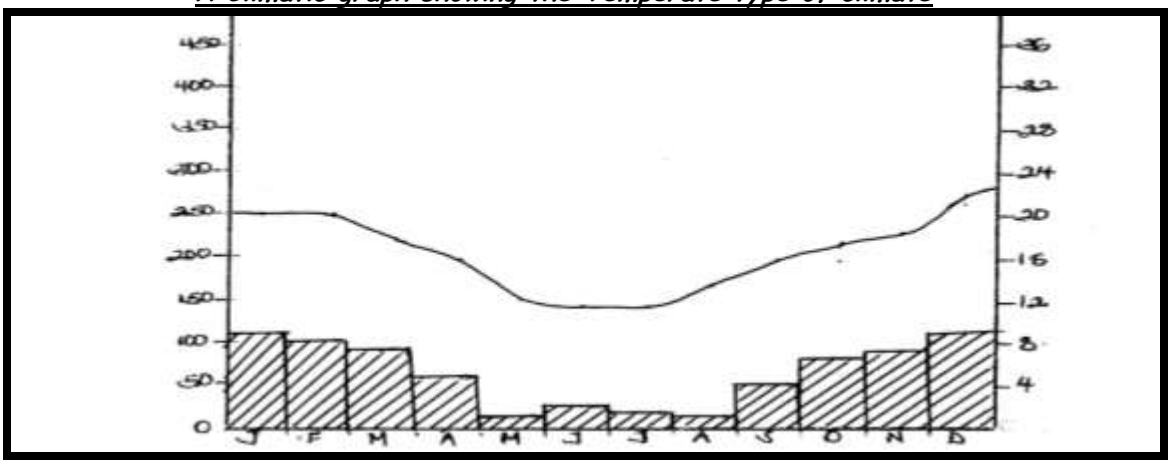
Characteristics of Temperate climate.

- ❖ It receives moderate rainfall during summer.
- ❖ Rainfall increases with the increase in temperature.
- ❖ It has warm and wet summers.
- ❖ It has cool and dry winters.

A Climatic table showing Temperate type of climate.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp (°C)	20	20	18	16	13	12	12	14	16	18	19	22
Rainfall(mm)	115	100	95	60	20	30	20	15	50	80	85	110

A Climatic graph showing the Temperate type of climate



Note:-*According to the above table and the graph, rainfall decreases with the decrease in temperature and viceversa.*

Economic activities commonly done in temperate climatic region

- Sheep rearing
- Ranching
- Crop cultivation
- Dairy farming
- Tourism

Note:

-***Sheep rearing*** *is the main economic activity carried out in Temperate climatic region (the Veld)*

-***Merino sheep*** *is mainly reared in Temperate climatic region. (mainly for wool production and for mutton)*

-***Dairy farming*** *in Temperate region is favoured by the presence of plenty of pasture for animals, and favourable cool climate which favours dairy farming.*

-Crops commonly grown in Temperate climatic region include; maize, sugarcanes, potatoes, wheat, etc.

vii) ***MOUNTAIN CLIMATIC REGION / MONTANE CLIMATIC REGION***

- Montane climate is experienced in highland areas.
- Temperature reduces with the increase in altitude.
- Temperature reduces by 1°C for every 100 metres above the sea level.
- The highest peaks of some mountains in Africa are snowcapped because they rise high above the snow line.
- The wind ward side receives plenty of rainfall because it receives warm moist air.
- The lee ward side receives very little rainfall because it receives dry winds.

Some areas in Africa that experience Montane climate.

- Areas around mountain Rwenzori
- Areas around mountain Kenya
- Areas around mountain Elgon
- Areas around mountain Kilimanjaro
- The Ethiopian highlands

African countries that experience Montane climate

- Ethiopia.
- South Africa
- Kenya
- Uganda

Characteristics of Montane climate.

- ❖ It has cool temperature.
- ❖ Relief rainfall is mostly received.
- ❖ The wind ward side receives more rainfall than the lee ward side.

Economic activities commonly done in Montane climatic region.

- Crop cultivation (Arabica coffee cultivation)
- Tourism
- Lumbering
- Dairy farming

FACTORS THAT INFLUENCE THE CLIMATE OF AFRICA

- Nearness to water bodies (drainage)
- Latitude
- Altitude
- Human activities
- Ocean currents
- Prevailing winds
- Vegetation

The Influence of the above factors on Climate.

1. ***PREVAILING WINDS***

- ***Wind*** is moving air.
- Wind is caused by the difference in atmospheric pressure.
- Wind blows from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure.

Categories of winds.

On shore winds.

- These blow from the sea to land.
- They usually bring rain because they pick moisture from seas and lakes over which they blow.

Off shore winds.

- These are winds which blow from land towards the sea.
- They are usually dry and bring no rain because they pick no moisture from the land over which they blow.

Terms associated with winds.

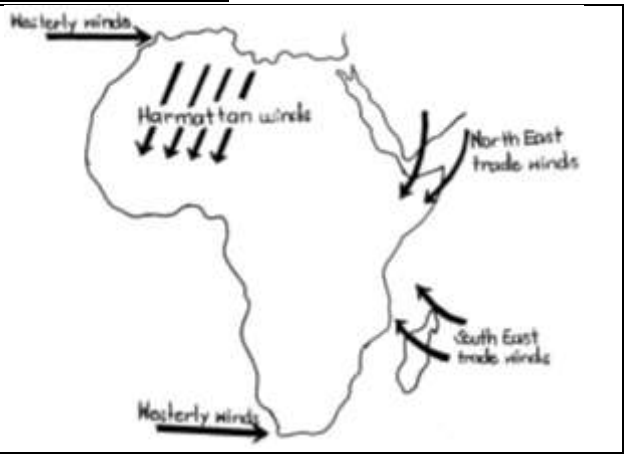
i) ***Trade winds*** are winds that were used by the early traders to move their boats.

ii) ***Monsoon winds*** are winds whose direction is reversed from one season to the next.

iii) ***Westerly winds*** are regular winds that blow from the West towards the East outside the tropics.

Winds that influence the climate of Africa

The North East trade winds	▪ These blow from Arabia towards the Horn of Africa. ▪ They bring no rain because they pick no moisture from the desert over which they blow.
The South East trade winds	▪ These blow over the Indian ocean. ▪ They bring a lot of rainfall to the Eastern part of Africa because they carry a lot of moisture.



The Westerly winds	▪ **These bring rain to the Mediterranean areas and Cape province of South Africa.**	
The Harmattan winds.	▪ **These are hot and dry winds blowing over the Sahara.** ▪ **They bring no rain to West Africa because they pick no moisture.**	

2. *OCEAN CURRENTS.*

- ***Ocean currents*** **are masses of water flowing in a particular direction across the ocean.**
- **Ocean currents are categorised into warm and cold ocean currents.**
- ***Warm ocean currents*** **are currents which flow from warm areas to cold areas.**

For example;

- **Mozambique current**
- **Guinea current**
- **Agulhas current.**

- ***Cold ocean currents*** **are currents which flow from cold areas to warm areas.**

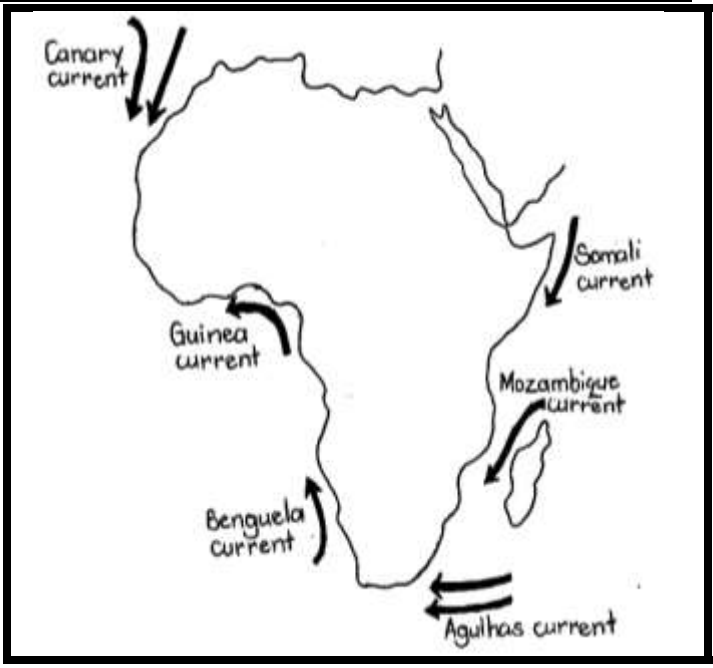
For example

- **Somali ocean current**
- **Benguela current**
- **Canary current.**

Note:- *The winds that blow over warm ocean current pick a lot moisture and bring rainfall to the main land.*

-The winds that blow over cold ocean currents pick no moisture and bring no rainfall to the main land.

Ocean currents that influence the climate of Africa.



The influence of the above ocean currents on climate of Africa.

- ***Somali current****-They cause desert conditions in the Horn of Africa.*
- ***Mozambique current****-They bring rain to the Eastern side of Madagascar and Southern Africa.*
- ***Canary current****-They bring no rain to North West Africa.*
- ***Benguela current****-They cause desert conditions in the Namib and Kalahari desert.*
- ***Guinea current****-They bring rain to West Africa.*
- ***Agulhas current****-They cause rain to South Africa.*

- ***Note:-****The influence of ocean currents on climate is that areas which receive warm ocean currents have a warmer climate than those that receive cold ocean currents.*

Winds which cause different ocean currents.

Winds	*Ocean currents caused*
South East trade winds	• **Mozambique currents**
	• **Agulhas current**
South West monsoon winds	• **Guinea current**

3. ALTITUDE

- ***Altitude*** **is the height above the sea level.**
- **Temperature reduces with the increase in altitude.**
- **The lower parts of a mountain are warmer and have higher temperatures than the higher parts of the mountain.**
- **The higher the altitude, the cooler the temperature, and the lower the altitude, the hotter the temperature.**

Note:- *Mombasa is hotter than Kasese because Mombasa is on a lower altitude than Kasese.*

4. VEGETATION

- **Places with thick vegetation usually receive plenty of rainfall while those that have scanty vegetation usually receive very little rainfall.**
- **Note:-** *Vegetation modifies climate of an area by helping in the formation of convectional rainfall through transpiration.*

5. HUMAN ACTIVITIES

- **Some human activities affect climate positively while others affect climate of an area negatively.**

Human activities that affect climate of an area positively.

- **Afforestation**
- **Reafforestation**
- **Agro-forestry**

Human activities that affect climate of an area negatively.

- **Deforestation**
- **Bush burning**
- **Swamp drainage**
- **Industrialisation**

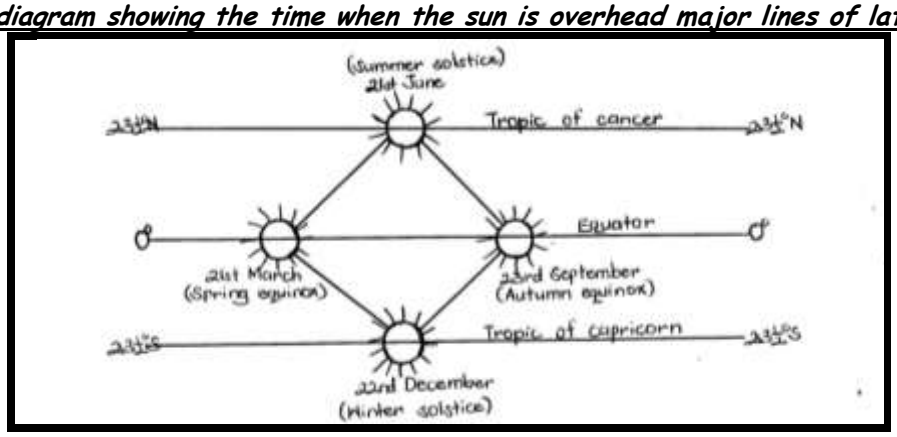
6. LATITUDE

- ***Latitude*** **is the distance in degrees North or South of the equator.**
- **Areas which are near the Equator are hotter than those which are far away from the equator.**
- **Low latitude areas are areas which are near the equator, and are usually very hot.**
- **High latitude areas are areas which are far away from the Equator and are usually cool.**
- **Areas which are far away from the Equator are usually very cool because they receive slanting sun rays.**

Note;

- *Most parts of Africa are always hot because the sun is overhead Africa throughout the year.*
- ***The Revolution of the earth*** *(in 365days) causes changes in seasons. ie. Winter, Summer, Spring and Autumn.*
- ***Tropical region*** *is the area of land lying between the Tropic of cancer and Tropic of Capricorn.*
- ***Equinox*** *is the time of the year when the sun is overhead the equator.*
- *The days and nights are always equal whenever the sun is overhead the equator.*
- *Very high temperatures are experienced around equinoxes.*
- ***Solstice*** *is the time of the year when the sun is overhead the tropics.*
- *Areas which are far away from the equator usually experience very low temperatures because they receive slanting sun rays which travel a very long distance to the earth.*

A diagram showing the time when the sun is overhead major lines of latitude.



7) NEARNESS TO WATER BODIES (DRAINAGE SYSTEM)

- **Areas near large water bodies usually receive more rainfall than those which are far away from large water bodies.**
- **Areas near large water bodies usually receive convectional rainfall.**
- **Winds that blow over large water bodies pick a lot of moisture which rises and condenses to form convectional rainfall.**

Note: - *Water bodies modify climate by helping in the formation of convectional rainfall through evaporation.*

Characteristics of convectional rainfall

- **It is mainly received in the afternoon.**
- **It is usually accompanied by lightning and thunder.**
- **It is mostly received in areas that experience a lot of evaporation and transpiration.**

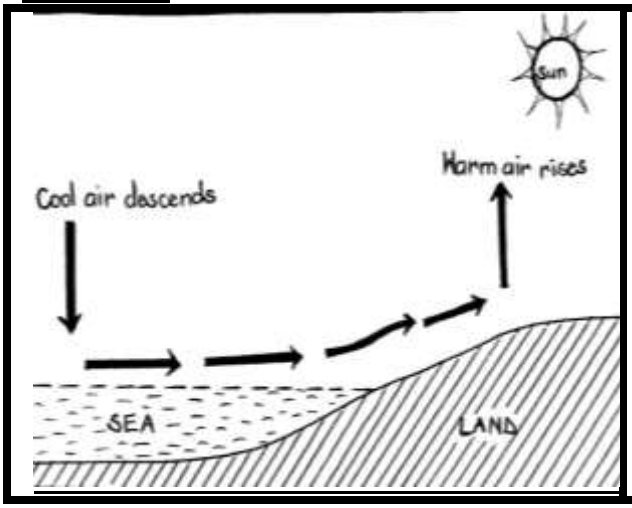
BREEZES.

- ***A breeze* is the movement of air from a cool region to a warm region.**

Types of breezes.

- **Sea breeze**
- **Land breeze**

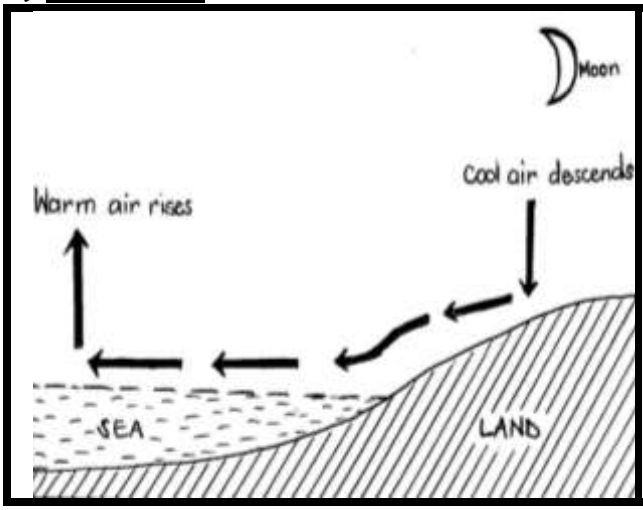
i) Sea breeze



- ***This is the movement of cool air from the sea towards land.***
- **It takes place during the *day.***
- **During the day, the land is heated faster than water bodies.**
- **The warm air on land rises and cold air from the sea moves towards land to replace it.**

NB:- *Sea breezes help in formation of convectional rainfall.*

ii) Land breeze



- **This is the movement of cold air from land towards the sea.**
- **It takes place during the *night.***
- **At night, the land cools faster than the sea.**
- **The warm air from the sea where pressure is low rises and the cooler air blows from land towards the sea to replace it.**

PRESSURE BELTS

- ***Air pressure*** **/ atmospheric pressure is the force exerted by air on the earth's surface.**
- ***Pressure belts*** **are regions of the earth that experience almost the same atmospheric pressure.**
- **Cool areas have high pressure while warm areas have low pressure.**
- **Mountain tops and hill tops (highland areas) have high pressure while valleys, plains/ plateaus (low lands) have low pressure.**

Causes of difference in pressure.

- **Altitude**
- **Latitude**
- **Temperature**

Effect of the difference in pressure.

- **It causes the direction of wind.**

Note:-

- *Wind blows from areas of high pressure to areas of low pressure.*
- ***Isobars*** *are lines drawn on weather maps connecting places with the same atmospheric pressure.*
- ***Isotherms*** *are lines drawn on weather maps joining places with equal temperatures.*
- ***Isohyets*** *are lines drawn on weather maps connecting places that receive the same amount of rainfall.*
- ***Isonephs*** *are lines drawn on weather maps connecting places with the same cloud cover.*
- ***Isohels*** *are lines drawn on weather maps connecting places that receive equal amounts of sunshine.*
- ***Contours*** *are lines drawn on maps joining places of the same altitude (height above the sea level).*

CLIMATE CHANGE

- **Climate change is the long-term, large scale fluctuation in the patterns of weather experienced in an area.**
- **It is the fluctuation of the average weather condition of an area over a long period of time.**
- **It is experienced through changes in precipitation, temperature and wind.**
- **Global warming is the major cause of climate change.**

Global warming

- **This is the constant rise of world temperatures.**
- ***Or:*** **This is the continuous heating of the earth due to emission of greenhouse gases to the atmosphere.**

Examples of greenhouse gases.

- **Carbondioxide**
- **Carbonmonoxide**
- **Nitrous oxide**

Causes of global warming.

- **Deforestation**
- **Bush burning**
- **Industrialisation**
- **Ozone layer depletion**

Note

- ✓ *Global warming occurs when the ozone layer is destroyed by excessive sun heat (rays).*
- ✓ *Ozone layer is a layer of gases that protect the earth from strong sun rays.*
- ✓ *When trees are cut and bushes burnt, it reduces on the vegetation that would have absorbed carbondioxide which destroys the ozone layer.*

Effects / indicators of global warming

- ❖ **Acidic rainfall**
- ❖ **Melting of snow on high mountains.**
- ❖ **Excessive heat during day.**
- ❖ **Incidents of severe and prolonged drought.**
- ❖ **Reduction in the volume of water in water bodies.**

Ways of reducing global warming.

- ❖ **By planting more trees.**
- ❖ **By using renewable sources of energy. eg hydro electricity and solar energy.**
- ❖ **By treating industrial fumes before emissions.**
- ❖ **Banning importation of old vehicles.**

❖ By enforcing laws that protect the environment.

THE INFLUENCE OF CLIMATE ON HUMAN ACTIVITIES

a) Desert and Semi-desert climate

Economic activities commonly carried out in Desert climate.

- Pastoralism.
- Tourism.
- Crop cultivation.

The influence of desert climate on human activities.

❖ People grow crops by irrigation.
❖ People build houses with flat roofs in order to prevent desert storms from blowing off their roofs.
❖ Pastoralism is favoured by the presence of large vacant land.
❖ Animals with large humps and large hooves are reared eg. camels.
❖ Sand dunes and oases encourage tourism.

Problems faced by people living in desert areas.

❖ Sand dust caused by storms.
❖ High temperatures during day time.
❖ Shortage of water.
❖ Poor transport
❖ Shortage of pasture for animals.

Possible solutions to the problems faced by people living in desert areas.

❖ By digging valley dams to store water.
❖ By practising irrigation farming to increase food supply.
❖ By growing drought-resistant crops.
❖ By growing fast maturing crops.
❖ By rearing camels in order to use them as means of transport.
❖ By painting houses with white in order to reflect sunlight.
❖ By dressing in light white clothes to reduce heat during day.

b) Equatorial and Tropical climate.

Economic activities commonly carried out in Equatorial and Tropical climate.

- Tourism.
- Crop growing.
- Lumbering

The influence of Equatorial and Tropical climate on human activities.

❖ Lumbering is done in the tropical rain forests.
❖ Tourism is favoured by the plenty of animals.
❖ Perennial crops are usually grown due to plenty of rainfall received.
❖ People wear thick clothes to provide warmth on rainy and windy weather.
❖ People keep a variety of animals due to presence of pasture for animals.(in Tropical climatic region)
❖ Houses are built with slanting roofs to allow easy flow of rain water off the roofs.

Problems faced by people living in Equatorial and Tropical regions.

❖ Floods
❖ Attacks from wild animals
❖ Poor ground transport.
❖ Presence of many disease vectors like tsetse flies, mosquitoes etc.

Possible solutions to the problems faced by people living equatorial and tropical climatic region

❖ By building houses with slanting roofs.
❖ By wearing rain coats and gum boots to safeguard against rainy weather.
❖ By creating more wildlife conservation areas.

c) Montane climate

Economic activities commonly carried out in Montane climate.

❖ Tourism.
❖ Crop growing.
❖ Lumbering

The influence of the montane climate on people.

- ❖ People build houses with slanting roofs.
- ❖ People rear donkeys for use as means of transport.
- ❖ People wear thick clothes to protect their bodies from much coldness.
- ❖ Thick forests promote lumbering in this climatic region.
- ❖ People grow perennial crops due to plenty of rainfall received.

Problems faced by people living in Montane climatic region.

- ❖ Poor transport network.
- ❖ Landslides.
- ❖ Severe soil erosion
- ❖ Much coldness

Possible solutions to the problems faced by people living in montane climatic region

- ❖ By building winding roads.
- ❖ By keeping donkeys for transport.
- ❖ By wearing thick clothes to overcome much coldness.
- ❖ By planting trees to reduce soil erosion and landslides.

Note:

- ➢ *Plant roots control landslides in highland areas by holding the soil particles firmly.*
  How does climate affect people's way of dressing?
- ➢ *People living in cool areas usually wear thick clothes while those that live in hot areas usually wear light clothes.*
  How does weather affect people's way of dressing?
- ➢ *On cold days, people usually wear thick clothes while on hot days, people usually wear light clothes.*



Testing Exercise.

1. Give the meaning of each of the following.
   (i) Weather.
   (ii) Weather forecasting.
2. Mention any three elements of weather.
3. How is weather forecasting important to farmers?
4. Mention one element of weather that makes people carry umbrellas.
5. What causes wind?
6. Why do desert areas experience very cold nights?
7. Mention any two farmers' activities that are carried out during each of thee seasons.
   (i) Dry season.
   (ii) Wet season
8. Give any two ways wind promotes farming activities in an area.
9. How can tall buildings be protected from being struck by lightning?
10. Why is rainfall measured in millimetres?
11. Complete the table below correctly.

Weather instrument	*Importance*	*Element of weather related*
(i) Rain gauage	----------	Rainfall
(ii) ----------	Measures the speed of wind	----------
(iii) Sunshine recorder	----------	----------
(iv) ----------	----------	Air pressure
(v) ----------	Shows the direction of wind	----------
(vi) Hygrometer	----------	----------
(vii) Ceilometer	----------	----------

12. A P.7 pupil saw an an arrow of a wind vane pointing to the South. From which direction was wind blowing?
13. Why is a rain gauge always placed in an open flat place?
14. Why is a rain gauge always placed 30cm above the ground?
15. Mention any two instruments of weather kept in a Stevenson screen.
16. How is a wind sock useful to pilots?
17. Give the meaning of the term Humidity.
18. Why is a Stevenson screen made of louvres?
19. What causes heavy rainfall in the Equatorial climatic region when the sun is overhead the Equator?
20. State any two characteristics of each of these types of climate.
    (i) Equatorial climate
    (ii) Tropical climate
    (iii) Desert climate
    (iv) Mediterranean climate
    (v) Temperate climate
21. Why do equatorial regions experience very cold nights?
22. Mention any two African countries that experience each of the types of climate below.
    (i) Equatorial climate
    (ii) Mediterranean climate
23. Why do most people living in the equatorial climatic region buil houses with slanting roofs?
24. Complete the table below correctly

Type of climate	*Description*	*Two suitable economic activities*
(i) Equatorial climate	----------	-------- ---------
(ii)Savannah climate	----------	-------- ---------
(iii) ----------	It is hot and dry.	--------- ---------
(iv) ----------	----------	-Irrigation farming -Pastoralism
(v)----------	Warm dry summers and cool wet winters	--------- --------
(vi) Temperate climate	----------	--------- --------

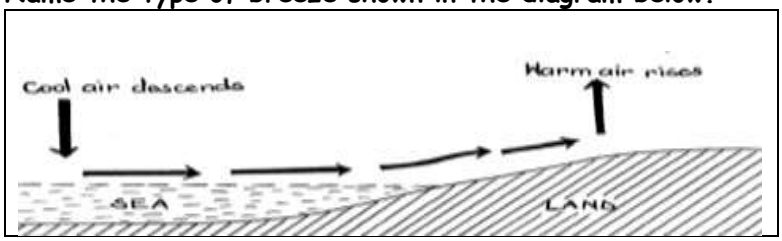
25. Which type of climate is experienced in moist parts of Africa?
26. Why do most parts of Africa experience the type of climate in (25) above?
27. Mention the two months of the year when the sun is overhead the Equator.
28. Name the hottest and largest desert in Africa.
29. Why do desert areas experience very cold nights?
30. How can crop farming be made possible in arid areas of Africa?
31. Mention any two major economic activities that are commonly carried out in desert climatic areas.
32. Why do most desert dwellers build houses with flat roofs?
33. Why do people living in deserts usually wear turbans on their heads?
34. State one way sand dunes are economically important?
35. Give the meaning of each of the following.
    (i) Equinox
    (ii) Sand dunes
    (iii) An oasis
36. Mention any three factors that enable camels to survive in harsh desert conditions.
37. Name the animal that is referred to as the ship of the desert?
38. Why does the North Eastern part of Uganda receive very little rainfall?

39. Apart from irrigation farming, give any two other ways food production can be increased in arid areas.
40. Name the climatic region of Africa which favours the growth of citrus fruits.
41. Mention any four citrus fruits that are commonly grown in the above region.
42. State any two factors that favour dairy farming in the temperate climatic region of South Africa.

Study the climatic graph below and use it to answer the questions 42 to 48.

Months	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Temp (^{O}C)	24	26	29	26	24	22	21	25	30	26	25	23
Rainfall(mm)	70	190	300	250	170	150	50	120	180	270	150	120

43. Name the climatic region in which the above information in which the above information was recorded.
44. Give a reason for your answer in (43) above.
45. Calculate the annual temperature range according to the information in the table above.
46. In which month were the highest temperatures experienced?
47. What is the relation between rainfall and temperature according to the above table?
48. Which month received the least amount of rainfall?
49. Calculate the annual rainfall that was received in the climatic region in which the above table was recorded.
50. Name the ocean currents that is responsible for causing desert conditions in Namib desert.
51. How do the following ocean currents influence the climate of Africa?
    (i) Guinea warm ocean current.
    (ii) Canary current
    (iii) Somali current
52. Apart from prevailing winds, mention any four other factors that influence the climate of Africa.
53. How do the following winds affect the climate of Africa?
    (i) Harmattan winds
    (ii) Westerly winds
    (iii) South East trade winds
54. Which element of climate is influenced by the change in altitude?
55. State the effect of the revolution of the earth.
56. What causes heavy rainfall in the equatorial climatic region when the sun is overhead the equator?
57. Why is Kibo peak snowcapped throughout the year?
58. How does altitude affect climate of an area?
59. Why is Mbale cooler than Mombasa?
60. Why do areas which are far away from the equator usually experience very low temperatures?
61. What is a Breeze?
62. Name the type of breeze shown in the diagram below.



63. Give a reason to support your answer in (62) above.

64. How are sea breezes important to farmers?
65. In which way does deforestation lead to global warming?
66. State any two problems faced by people living in desert climatic region.
67. How are valley dams useful to people living in North Eastern Uganda?
68. Give any two ways people safeguard themselves against rainy weather.
69. How does planting of trees in mountainous areas help to control landslides?
70. Why are there always very few people living on the lee ward sides of mountains?

TOPIC 4: **VEGETATION OF AFRICA**

INTRODUCTION TO VEGETATION.

- *Vegetation* is the plant cover of an area.
- It includes all plants that grow on the surface of the earth.

Types of vegetation

- Natural vegetation
- Planted vegetation

(i) Planted vegetation

- Planted vegetation is the plant life cover of an area that is planted by man.

Examples of planted vegetation.

- Planted forests
- Planted grass eg.paspalum
- Planted flowers
- Crops

(ii) Natural vegetation

- *Natural vegetation* is the plant life cover of an area that grows on its own.
- It includes all plants in the environment that grow without the influence of man.

Examples of natural vegetation.

- Natural forests
- Grasslands
- Shrubs
- Swamp vegetation
- Thickets
- Natural flowers
- Bushes

Importance of vegetation

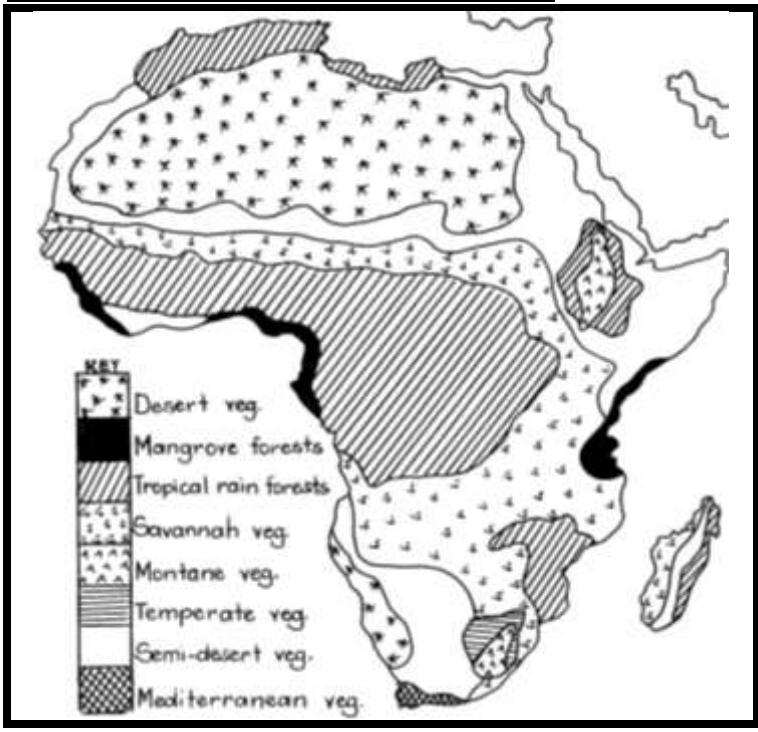
- It helps in formation of convectional rainfall.
- It is a source of wood fuel. i.e. charcoal, firewood,
- It purifies air by absorbing carbon dioxide and releasing oxygen to the atmosphere.
- It provides raw materials for the pulp industry.
- It provides herbal medicine to people.
- It provides raw materials for crafts industry.
- It is a source of income through attracting tourists.
- Wattle trees provide tannin used for softening leather.
- It is a source of food to people and animals.
- It acts as natural habitat for wild animals.

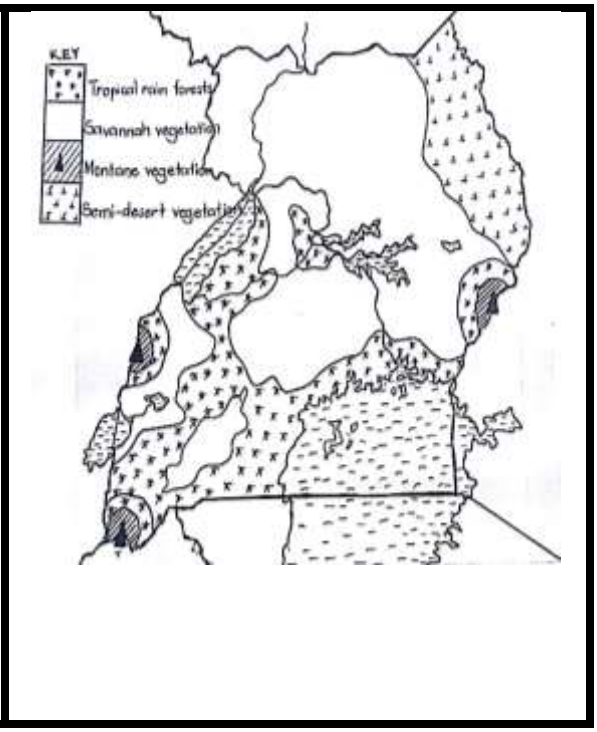
VEGETATION ZONES OF AFRICA.

(TYPES OF NATURAL VEGETATION)

- Savannah vegetation
- Montane/ Mountain vegetation
- Temperate vegetation
- Mangrove vegetation
- Desert vegetation
- Semi-desert vegetation
- Equatorial rain forests / Tropical rain forests

VEGETATION ZONES OF AFRICA





a) <u>EQUATORIAL RAIN FORESTS</u>

- **This vegetation zone is described as ever green.**
- **Equatorial rain forests are also called the <u>Tropical rain forests.</u>**
- **They are called rain forests because they grow in areas that receive plenty of rainfall.**
- **Tropical rain forests mainly grow in areas which experience equatorial climate.**
- **They are found along the coast of West Africa and Central Africa.**
- **In Uganda, tropical rain forests are mainly found around the shores of lake Victoria.**

<u>Examples of Tropical rain forests (Natural forests) in Uganda.</u>

- **Budongo forest in Masindi**
- **Mabira forest in Buikwe**
- **Malabigambo forest in Rakai**
- **Maramagambo forest in Rubirizi and Mitooma.**
- **Bugoma forest in Hoima.**
- **Ssese forest in Kalangala.**
- **Kibale forest in Kibale.**

<u>African countries with Tropical rainforests.</u>

- **Democratic Republic of Congo**
- **Gabon**
- **Congo Brazzaville.**
- **Ghana**
- **Cameroon**

<u>Characteristics of Equatorial rain forests.</u>

- **Trees are ever green. (they don't shed their leaves).**
- **Trees are of different species.**
- **Trees have broad leaves.**
- **Trees grow very tall due to phototropism (to get sunlight).**
- **Trees have buttress roots.**
- **Trees have hard wood.**
- **Trees form a canopy (a layer of branches and leaves that form a cover to the ground).**
- **They have a thick undergrowth which makes them impenetrable.**

Common tree species in Equatorial rain forests/ hard wood trees.

- **Mahogany**
- **African walnut**
- **Ebony**
- **Teak**
- **Green heart**
- **Rose wood**
- **Mvule trees (Iroko)**

Economic activities commonly done in Equatorial rain forests.

- **Lumbering**
- **Herbal medicine collection**
- **Fruit gathering.**
- **Charcoal making**
- **Tourism**

NOTE:

- ***A canopy*** *is an umbrella-like structure formed by trees in tropical rain forests.*
- *Common tree species in planted forests include; Eucalyptus, Cedar, Fir, Spruce, Cypress, Pine etc. These tree species provide soft wood.*
- *Most trees in planted forests provide soft wood timber from which various products such as match boxes, papers, ply wood, toilet papers, wooden rulers, pencils are made.*
- *Most trees in natural forests provide hard wood timber from which various products such as wooden tables, wooden desks, wooden windows, benches, cupboards, wooden chairs are made.*
- ***Deciduous trees*** *are trees that shed their leaves during the dry season.*

Importance of forests.

- **Forests help in formation of convectional rainfall through transpiration.**
- **They are source of income through tourism.**
- **They act as a habitat for wild animals.**
- **They are source of herbal medicine.**
- **They help to reduce soil erosion.**
- **They are source of timber.**
- **Trees act as wind breaks.**

Problems facing forests

- **Deforestation.**
- **Outbreak of bush fires.**
- **Human encroachment on forests.**

DEFORESTATION

- **Deforestation is the massive cutting down of trees without replacement.**
- **Lumbering is the cutting down/felling of mature trees for production of timber.**

Reasons why people cut down trees/ carry out deforestation.

- **To get land for settlement**
- **To get land for crop growing.**
- **To get land for constructing roads.**
- **To get land for building industries.**
- **To get timber.**
- **To get wood fuel.**
- **To get land for constructing flat play grounds.**

Dangers / effects of deforestation.

- **It leads to soil erosion.**
- **It leads to desertification/ drought.**
- **It destroys the natural habitat for animals.**
- **It leads to displacement of wild animals.**
- **It leads to extinction of some valuable tree species.**
- **It reduces the amount of rainfall received in an area.**

FOREST CONSERVATION.

- **Forest conservation is the act of protecting forests from extinction.**

Ways of conserving forests.

- **By practising afforestation.**
- **By practising reafforestation.**
- **By practising agro-forestry**
- **By teaching people on the importance of forests.**
- **By educating people about the dangers of deforestation.**
- **Through rural electrification. (extension of electricity to rural areas)**
  - **Note:**
    - ***Afforestation*** *is the planting of trees on a large scale where they have never been/ existed.*
    - ***Reafforestation*** *is the planting of trees on a large scale where they have ever been/ existed.*
    - ***Agro-forestry*** *is the growing of crops together with useful trees on the same piece of land.*
    - ***Forestry*** *is the practice of planting and caring for forests.*
    - ***National Forestry Authority (NFA)*** *is the body that is responsible for conservation of forests in Uganda.*
    - ***National Environment Management Authority (NEMA)*** *is the body responsible for conservation of the environment in Uganda.*

Roles of NFA.

- **It teaches people about the importance of forests.**
- **It enforces laws against deforestation.**
- **It creates forest reserves.**
- **It evicts people settling in forest reserves.**

b) MANGROVE FORESTS.

- **Mangrove forests / swamps are found in low lying areas along the coast of Africa.**
- **The mangrove forests are also called *mangrove swamps* because they grow in salty sea water.**

African countries with Mangrove forests

- **Tanzania**
- **Nigeria**
- **Ghana**
- **Cote d'Ivoire**
- **Sierra Leone**
- **Mozambique**
- **Cameroon**

Characteristics of Mangrove forests

- **They have hard wood.**
- **Trees have buttress roots above the ground.**
- **They commonly grow in salty water.**
- **They have water proof timber.**

Note: *-Timber from mangrove forests is suitable for ship building because it is water proof.*
-The buttress roots help trees in mangrove forests to stand firmly in salty water.

Importance of Mangrove forests.

- **They provide waterproof timber used for ship building.**

c) MEDITERRANEAN VEGETATION

- **Mediterranean vegetation is found in North West Africa and Southern tip of South Africa (Cape province)**
- **The growth of forests in this region is favoured by too much rainfall received in winter.**

Countries where Mediterranean forests are found.

- **Tunisia**
- **Algeria**
- **South Africa.**
- **Libya**
- **Morocco**

Characteristics of Mediterranean vegetation

- **The trees have thick leaves in order to reduce the rate of transpiration.**
- **Trees have deep and widely spread roots.**

❖ **Trees shed their leaves during the dry season (to reduce the rate of transpiration)**

Common tree species in Mediterranean forests

- **Cypress**
- **Fir**
- **Citrus fruits.**
- **Cedar**
- **Pine**

Economic activities commonly done in Mediterranean vegetation zone.

- **Lumbering**
- **Tourism**

GRASSLANDS

- ***Grasslands*** **are large areas of land covered with grass.**
- **The height of grass depends on the amount of rainfall received and the fertility of the soil.**
- **Savannah grasslands and temperate grasslands are the main examples of Africa's grasslands.**

d) TEMPERATE GRASSLANDS

- **It grows in Temperate climatic region.**
- **Temperate grasslands of Africa are called the High veld / the Veld.**
- **The Veld is called the High veld because it is on a high plateau in South Africa.**

States in South Africa with temperate grasslands

- **Orange Free State**
- **Transvaal**
- **Natal**

Characteristics of temperate grasslands.

❖ **They have few scattered short trees.**
❖ **Its grass is short.**
❖ **Grass is long and narrow with a hairy covering.**

Common economic activities carried out in temperate grasslands.

- **Sheep rearing**
- **Dairy farming.(due to the presence of plenty of pasture for animals, and favourable cool climate)**

e) SAVANNAH VEGETATION

- **Savannah is the name given to the Tropical grasslands of Africa.**
- **Savannah vegetation covers the largest part of Africa.**
- **Savannah vegetation is located in the Tropical region of Africa.**

Parts of Savannah vegetation

- **Savannah grassland / dry savannah vegetation**
  This has short grass and few scattered trees.
- **Savannah woodland / wooded savannah / wet savannah vegetation**
  It has tall grass and many trees.

Note;

✓ *Miombo woodland of Central Tanzania is an example of wooded savannah.*
✓ *Miombo woodland is sparsely populated because the area is highly infested with tsetse flies which spread sleeping sickness to people, and nagana to cattle.*
✓ ***Bee keeping*** *is the main economic activity carried out in Miombo woodland of central Tanzania.*
✓ *Most game parks in Africa are located in savannah grasslands because there is plenty of pasture for animals.*

Characteristics of Savannah vegetation

❖ **It has tall grass.**
❖ **It has scattered trees.**
❖ **Trees have long roots which they use to tap underground water.**
❖ **Grass appears green during the wet season.**
❖ **Trees usually shed their leaves during the dry season. (in order to reduce the rate of transpiration)**

Note: -***Deciduous trees*** *are trees that shed their leaves during the dry seasons.*

African countries with savannah vegetation.

- Uganda
- Kenya
- Malawi
- Tanzania
- Angola
- Zambia
- Zimbabwe

Common tree species in savannah vegetation.

- Acacia
- Baobab
- Palm trees

Economic activities commonly done in savannah vegetation

- Tourism
- Bee keeping
- Pastoralism

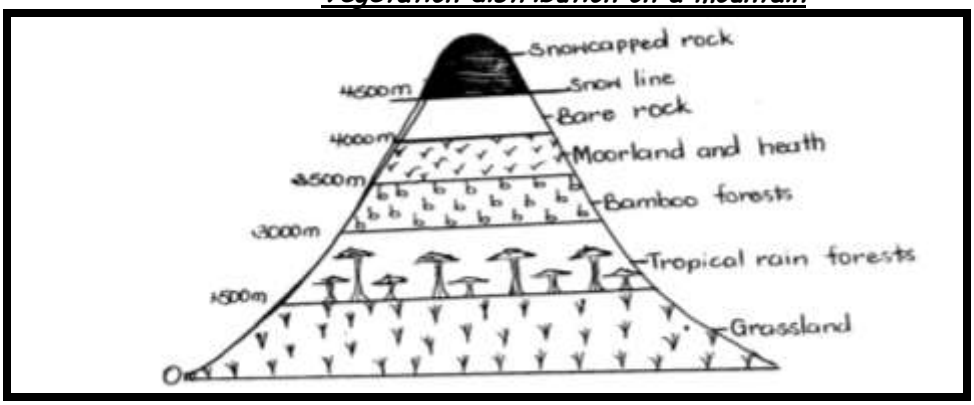
f) MOUNTAIN VEGETATION

- It is also called montane vegetation.
- It is found in mountainous areas.
- Vegetation changes with increase in altitude.
- In East Africa, montane vegetation is mainly found on slopes of mountain Rwenzori, mountain Kenya, mountain Elgon, mountain Kilimanjaro etc.

Factors that cause vegetation variation in mountainous areas.

- Altitude
- Temperature
- Rainfall distribution.

Vegetation distribution on a mountain



Note;-***Heath*** *is the low evergreen rough grass.*

-***Moorland*** *is an area of highland covered with heath.*

Areas where Mountain vegetation is found.

- Mountain Rwenzori in Uganda and DRC.
- Mountain Kilimanjaro in Tanzania.
- Drakensberg mountains in Lesotho.
- Ethiopian highlands in Ethiopia
- Mountain Kenya in Kenya
- Mountain Elgon in Uganda and Kenya.

Characteristics of Mountain vegetation

- ❖ The trees are ever green.
- ❖ Vegetation grows in zones according to altitude.
- ❖ The foothills have savannah grasslands.
- ❖ The trees grow very tall.
- ❖ There are few plants on top of the mountain due to low temperatures.

Economic activities commonly done in Mountain vegetation.

- Lumbering
- Charcoal making.
- Bee keeping.
- Fruit gathering
- Tourism
- Herbal medicine collection.

g) DESERT and SEMI-DESERT VEGETATION.

- ***A Desert*** is a large dry area of land with few plants growing on it.
- Desert vegetation is found in Desert climatic condition.
- Deserts in Africa include; Sahara desert, Namib desert and Kalahari desert.
- The land in deserts is usually covered with sand dunes and bare rocks.
- Crop growing and livestock farming is mostly done around oases.

- Plants that survive in very dry conditions grow in this region.
- Desert vegetation has few trees because it receives very little rainfall.
- Trees in desert vegetation have thick barks and thin leaves to reduce the rate of transpiration.
- *Cactus* is able to survive in desert conditions because it stores water in its stem.

Characteristics of Desert vegetation

- Trees have thick barks.
- Trees are scattered.
- Trees are short and thorny.
- Trees have long roots to tap underground water.
- Trees have thin leaves that reduce the rate of transpiration.
- Vegetation is scanty and resistant to drought.

Common plants in Desert vegetation.

- Cactus
- Baobab
- Poppies
- Acacia

African countries with Desert vegetation

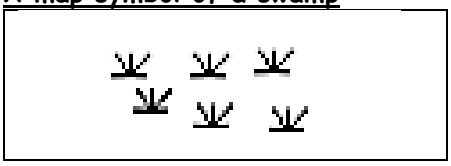
- Algeria
- Libya
- Morocco
- Namibia
- Egypt
- Angola

Note: -***Pastoralism*** *is the major economic activity carried out in Desert vegetation.*

SWAMP VEGETATION.

- A swamp is a water logged area with vegetation.
- Or. A swamp is an area that has vegetation and plenty of water.
- Swamps are sometimes referred to as wetlands.
- Swamps are found along rivers, lakes and valleys.

A map symbol of a swamp



Examples of swamp vegetation

- Papyrus
- Palm trees

Economic activities commonly carried out in swampy areas.

- Crop growing
- Fishing
- Mining
- Tourism
- Pottery
- Brick making .

Swamp resources/ craft raw materials got from swamps.

- ✓ Papyrus reeds-used for making baskets, mats, hats etc
- ✓ Palm leaves-used for making mats etc.
- ✓ Clay-used for making products like cups, plates, pots, flower vessels etc
- ✓ Sand-used for building.

Common crops grown in swamps

- Rice
- Yams
- Vegetables
- Sugarcane.

Importance of swamps.

- They are a source of water.
- They are a source of fish eg. Mud fish.
- They are a source of minerals eg. Sand
- They are habitats for aquatic animals eg. crocodiles, hippopotamuses, frogs etc.

- ❖ They help in formation of convectional rainfall.
- ❖ They help to filter water. (they have spongy-like roots which help to filter water)
- ❖ Swamps help to control floods.
- ❖ They are a source of raw materials for craft work eg. papyrus reeds, palm leaves etc.
- ❖ They attract tourists who bring in income.

Ways people misuse swamps.

- ❖ By dumping industrial wastes in swamps.
- ❖ Through uncontrolled harvesting of papyrus reeds.
- ❖ By burning swamp vegetation.
- ❖ Through swamp drainage.
  - ➢ Note:
    - ✓ ***Swamp drainage*** *is the removal of water from swamps.*
    - ✓ ***Swamp reclamation*** *is the act of changing a swamp from its natural state for other uses.*
    - ✓ *Swamp encroachment is the illegal settlement in swamps.*

How people drain swamps.

- ❖ By adding murram in swamps.
- ❖ By digging channels in swamps.

Reasons why people drain swamps.

- ❖ To get land for crop growing.
- ❖ To get land for constructing industries.
- ❖ To get land for settlement.
- ❖ To construct roads.

Dangers of draining swamps.

- ❖ It leads to drought/ desertification.
- ❖ It leads to death of aquatic animals.
- ❖ It leads to floods.
- ❖ It leads to displacement of aquatic animals.
- ❖ It leads to reduction in craft raw materials.

Problems faced by people living near swamps.

- ❖ Floods during the rainy season.
- ❖ Attacks from aquatic animals.
- ❖ Poor road transport.
- ❖ Attacks from disease vectors that live in swamps.

VEGETATION DISTRIBUTION IN AFRICA.

- ***Vegetation distribution*** is the way plant life is spread in an area.
- Some parts of Africa have thick vegetation while others have scanty/ scattered vegetation.

Factors that influence/ affect vegetation distribution in Africa.

- Altitude
- Human activities
- Drainage system
- Nature of soils
- Rainfall distribution / climate.

How the above factors affect the vegetation of Africa.

Climate / Rainfall distribution

- Areas which receive plenty of rainfall have thick vegetation while those that receive very little rainfall have scanty vegetation.

Drainage system

- **Areas near large water bodies have thick vegetation while those that are far away from large water bodies have scanty vegetation.**

Altitude.

- **Areas of low altitude have thick vegetation while those of high altitude have very little vegetation.**

Nature of soils / Soil fertility.

- **Areas with fertile soils have thick vegetation while those with infertile soils have scanty vegetation.**

Human activities

- **Some human activities promote the growth of vegetation while others destroy vegetation of an area.**

Human activities that destroy vegetation.

- **Deforestation**
- **Overcultivation**
- **Swamp drainage.**
- **Overgrazing**
- **Bush burning**

Note:

- *-Deforestation, bush burning and over grazing cause soil erosion.*
  Qn: *How does deforestation cause soil erosion?*
- *It leaves the land bare exposing it to agents of soil erosion.*

Human activities which promote the growth of vegetation.

- **Afforestation**
- **Reafforestation**
- **Agro-forestry**
- **Rotational grazing**

THE INFLUENCE OF VEGETATION ON ANIMALS.

ANIMAL DISTIBUTION IN DIFFERENT VEGETATION ZONES.

a) EQUATORIAL RAIN FORESTS.

- **There are tall trees that provide shelter to climbing animals.**
- **There are few herbivorous animals due to little grass.**
- **There are many climbing animals which feed on fruits in this zone.**

NB: *The bamboo shoots in some mountainous areas are eaten as food by the mountain gorillas.*

Common animals in Equatorial rain forests.

- **Baboons**
- **Monkeys**
- **Mountain gorillas**
- **Chimpanzees**

***Why climbing animals are common in Tropical rainforests*.**

- **They have many fruits which climbing animals feed on.**
- **There are many trees which provide a conducive habitat for climbing animals.**

b) SAVANNAH VEGETATION

- **Grass eating animals (herbivorous animals) are common in this region.**
- **Flesh eating animals (carnivorous animals) also live in savannah vegetation in order to feed on herbivorous animals.**
- **Animals that feed on both flesh and grass (omnivorous animals) are also common here due to the presence of plenty of food.**

Why most animals live in Savannah vegetation zone.

- **There is plenty of pasture for animals.**
- **Carnivorous animals live in savannah to hunt other animals.**

Common animals in Savannah vegetation.

- **Zebras**
- **Lions**
- **Hyenas**
- **Leopards**
- **Warthogs**
- **Buffaloes**

- Antelopes
- Kobs

c) SWAMP VEGETATION

❖ Animals that live both in water and on land are common in swamp vegetation.

Common animals in swamp vegetation

- Crocodiles
- Frogs
- Tortoises
- Hippopotamuses/Hippopotami
- Snakes

d) DESERT VEGETATION.

❖ There are few animals in desert vegetation due to limited grass and water for animals.
❖ Burrowing animals are common in this zone.
❖ Animals that can survive for so long without taking water are common.

Common animals in Desert vegetation.

- Squirrels
- Camels
- Ostriches
- Newts

e) TEMPERATE GRASSLANDS.

❖ There are many herbivorous animals in this zone due to the presence of pasture.
❖ Carnivorous and omnivorous animals are also common in this zone.

Why there are many animals in Temperate grasslands

❖ There is plenty of pasture for animals.
❖ Presence of many herbivorous animals which carnivorous animals feed on.

Common animal species in Temperate grasslands.

- Antelopes
- Gazelles
- Wolves
- Lions
- Kobs
- Leopards
- Zebras
- Rhinoceros

f) MOUNTAIN VEGETATION

❖ It has many animals with a lot of fur.
❖ It has many climbing animals that feed on fruits.
❖ It has many gorillas that feed on bamboo shoots.

Common animals in montane vegetation.

- Mountain gorillas
- Monkeys
- Chimpanzees
- Baboons

PLACES FOR WILDLIFE CONSERVATION.

- National parks
- Zoos
- Sanctuaries
- Game reserves
- Marine parks

NATIONAL PARKS IN AFRICA.

- *A game park* is a large area of land gazetted by the government for wildlife conservation.
- Wildlife refers to animals, birds, plants and insects that live on their own in the natural habitat.
- Most game parks in Africa are located in savannah grasslands because there is plenty of pasture for animals.

Examples of national parks in Africa (MK Standard SST, Pupil's book 7 pg 52)

- Ruaha national park in Tanzania
- Bwindi national park in Uganda
- Serengeti national park in Tanzania
- Mgahinga national park in Uganda
- Murchison falls national park in Uganda
- Lake Nakuru national park in Kenya
- Lake Mburo national park in Uganda
- Virunga national park in DRC
- Queen Elizabeth national park in Uganda
- Kruger national park in South Africa
- Kidepo valley national park in Uganda
- Garamba national park in DRC

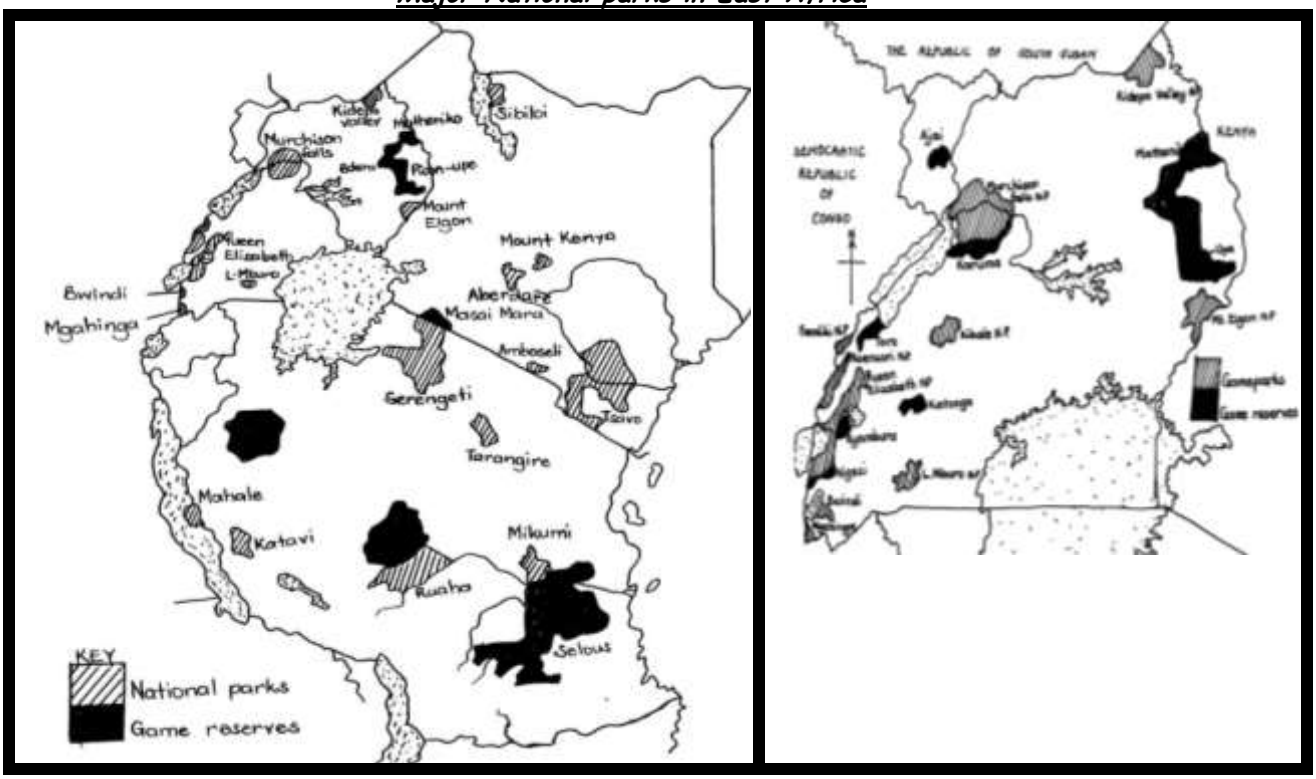
- Tsavo national park in Kenya
- Awash national park in Ethiopia
- Kouf national park in Libya
- Mudumu national park in Namibia
- Gemsbok national park in Botswana
- Karoo national park in south Africa

- A Game reserve is a large area of land gazetted by the government for future expansion of game parks.
- Controlled hunting can be allowed in a game reserve after seeking permission.

Examples of game reserves

- Pian-upe game reserve in Uganda.
- Selous game reserve in Tanzania (the largest in East Africa).
- Bokora game reserve in Uganda.
- Masai mara game reserve in Kenya.
- Ajai game reserve in Uganda.
- Kigezi game reserve in Uganda.
- Matheniko game reserve in Uganda.
- Karuma game reserve in Uganda.
- Katonga game reserve in Uganda.

Major National parks in East Africa

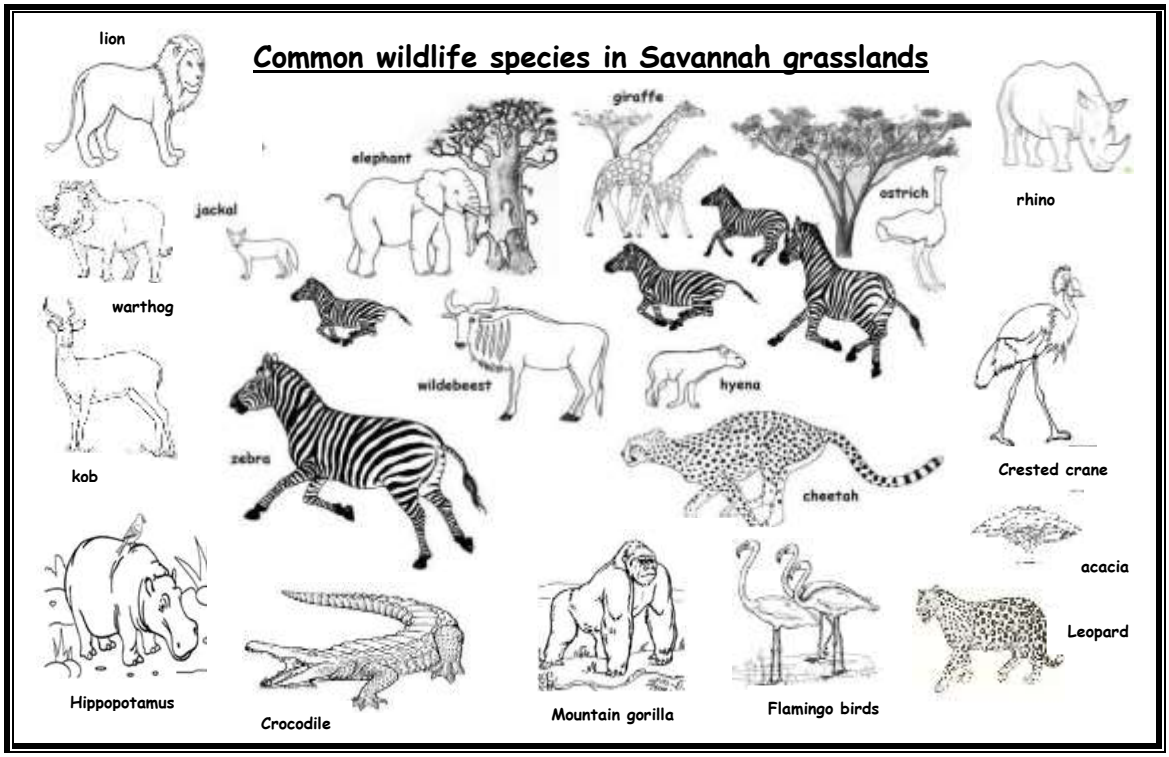


Note:

- ✓ ***Murchison falls national park*** *is the largest national park in Uganda*
- ✓ ***Ruaha national park*** *is the largest national park in East Africa.*
- ✓ ***Tsavo national park*** *is the largest national park in Kenya.*

Major tourist attractions in selected Africa's national parks.

National park	*Major tourist attraction*
Murchison falls national park	Crocodiles / Murchison falls
Kidepo valley national park	Ostriches
Queen Elizabeth national park	Hippopotamuses
Lake Mburo national park	Zebras
Lake Nakuru national park	Flamingo birds.
Bwindi and Mgahinga national park	Mountain gorillas
Tsavo national park	Lions
Serengeti national park	Wildebeests



Importance of national parks.

- ❖ They create job opportunities to people.eg.The game rangers
- ❖ They earn income through attracting tourists.
- ❖ They promote the development of infrastructure e.g. Hotels, roads.
- ❖ They are used for education and scientific research.
- ❖ They help to preserve wildlife for the future generation to see.
- ❖ They promote international relationships.

Activities that commonly take place in Africa's national parks.

- Animal tracking
- Game drives
- Nature walks
- Mountain climbing
- Boat rides
- Bird watching

Prohibited/ unauthorised activities in national parks.

- Animal grazing
- Hunting
- Crop cultivation
- Human settlement.

Problems facing national parks in Africa.

a) Poaching

- ❖ Poaching is the illegal hunting of animals in national parks.
- ❖ It leads to extinction of animal species in national parks.
- ❖ Poaching reduces the number of animals in national parks.

Why people carry out poaching.

- To get meat.
- To get horns and ivory from them.
- To get hides and skins.

b) Prolonged drought

- ❖ It dries pasture on which animals feed.
- ❖ It also destroys the natural habitat for animals.

c) Bush fires.

- ❖ They destroy habitats for animals.
- ❖ They destroy pasture for animals.
- ❖ They lead to death of animals.
- ❖ They lead to displacement of wild animals.

d) Outbreak of animal diseases.

- ❖ Diseases lead to death of animals in national parks.

e) Human encroachment on national parks.

- ❖ It leads to displacement of wild animals.

f) Political instability in some parts of Africa.

- ❖ It leads to death of animals in national parks.
- ❖ It leads to displacement of wild animals.
- ❖ It leads to destruction of the natural habitat for animals.

Possible solutions to the problems facing national parks in Africa.

- ❖ By enforcing laws against poaching.
- ❖ By sensitising people about the importance of wild animals
- ❖ By improving on security in areas near national parks.
- ❖ By extending veterinary services in national parks.
- ❖ By enforcing laws against human encroachment on national parks.

Ways of caring for animals.

- ❖ By protecting them.
- ❖ By feeding them on nutritious feeds.
- ❖ By treating sick animals.
- ❖ By treating sick animals.

Note:- *Game wardens protect wildlife in national parks, and also control fire from destroying plants and animals.*

Importance of caring for animals.

- ❖ It promotes tourism.
- ❖ It reduces death of animals.
- ❖ It promotes education and research.

TOURISM INDUSTRY IN AFRICA.

- ***Tourism*** is the movement of people to places of interest for pleasure, enjoyment or study purpose.
- ***A tourist*** is a person who travels to places of interest for pleasure, enjoyment and study purposes.

Tourism is called an industry because;

- It generates income.
- It creates job opportunities to people.
- Tourism is called ***an invisible trade*** because it generates income without exchanging physical goods.
- Tourism is called ***an invisible export*** because it generates foreign exchange without exporting physical goods.

Types of tourists.

- Local tourists
- International tourists.
- Local tourists move from one part of the country to another for tourism while international tourists move from one country to another for tourism.

Tourist attractions in Africa.

- Wildlife
- Historical sites
- Physical features
- Beautiful beaches
- Climate
- Culture

Importance of the Tourism industry.

- ❖ It creates job opportunities to people.
- ❖ It promotes the development of infrastructure like roads, lodges, hotels.
- ❖ It promotes international relationship.
- ❖ It creates market for locally manufactured goods.



Hotels provide accommodation to tourists.

- ❖ It is a source of revenue to the government.
- ❖ It promotes conservation of wildlife.

Problems facing the Tourism industry in Africa.

- ❖ Political instability in some parts of Africa.
- ❖ Poor transport and communication network.
- ❖ Poor accommodation facilities.
- ❖ Shortage of funds to promote the industry.
- ❖ Limited tourist attractions in some parts of Africa.
- ❖ Limited advertisement of tourist attractions on international media.

Possible solutions to the problems facing Africa's Tourism industry.

- ❖ By improving on security in Africa.
- ❖ By enforcing laws against poaching.
- ❖ By constructing better roads in all parts of Africa.
- ❖ By advertising Africa's tourist attractions on international media.
- ❖ By importing new species of wildlife in Africa.
- ❖ By training more game wardens.
- ❖ By building better accommodation facilities in Africa.
- ❖ By gazetting more wildlife conservation areas.



Modern roads promote tourism

Dangers of Tourism.

- ❖ Some tourists come as spies.
- ❖ Tourism can bring about spread of diseases in the country.
- ❖ Tourism can bring about change of culture.
- ❖ Some tourists teach people anti-social behaviours.

THE INFLUENCE OF VEGETATION ON POPULATION

- ***Population*** is the number of people living in an area at a given time.
- ***Population distribution*** is the way people are spread in an area.
- Some vegetation zones have sparse population while others have dense population.

Population distribution per zone.

Vegetation zone	*Population distribution*	*Reason for population distribution*
• Equatorial rain forests	• They are sparsely populated.	❖Presence of disease vectors. ❖Poor transport ❖Presence of many thick forests. ❖Presence of many wild animals. ❖Presence of soggy soils due to heavy rainfall.
• Desert areas	• They are sparsely populated.	❖They are hot and dry throughout the year. ❖They receive very little rainfall. ❖They have poor transport network.
• Savannah vegetation zone	• It is densely populated.	❖The areas receives reliable rainfall. ❖Presence of fertile soils which support cultivation. ❖It is not greatly affected by disease vectors.
• Mediterranean regions	• They are densely populated.	❖Presence of fertile soils which support cultivation.

		❖Presence of favourable cool climate for settlement.
• Mountain vegetation	• Slopes of mountains are densely populated.	❖Presence of fertile soils. ❖They receive reliable rainfall which favours crop growing.
	• The tops of mountains have very few people.	❖They experience very cold climate. ❖Some have rocks and snow.
• Swamp vegetation	• It is sparsely populated.	❖Presence of dangerous aquatic animals in swamps. ❖Swamps are greatly affected by floods. ❖There are many disease vectors in swampy areas.

Dangers of vegetation.

- ❖ It harbours dangerous animals to people.
- ❖ It harbours disease vectors.
- ❖ Thick vegetation hinders road and railway construction.
- ❖ Some vegetation is poisonous to people and animals.
- ❖ It creates hiding places for wrong doers.

Effects of population / people on vegetation.

- ❖ People clear vegetation to get land for settlement.
- ❖ People cut down trees in order to get wood fuel.
- ❖ People clear vegetation to construct industries.
- ❖ People clear vegetation to construct roads.

VEGETATION CONSERVATION

- This is the protection of plant life from being destroyed.
- It is the act caring for and protecting plants in the environment.

Human activities which destroy vegetation in an area.

- ❖ Deforestation
- ❖ Bush burning
- ❖ Swamp drainage.
- ❖ Over cultivation.
- ❖ Brick making
- ❖ Over grazing

Ways how man destroys vegetation in an area.

- ❖ Through bush burning
- ❖ Through deforestation.
- ❖ Through swamp drainage.
- ❖ Through uncontrolled wetland harvesting.
- ❖ Through overgrazing.
- ❖ Through overcultivation.

Ways of conserving vegetation.

- ❖ By afforestation.
- ❖ By reafforestation.
- ❖ Through agro-forestry.
- ❖ By establishing game parks and game reserves.
- ❖ By establishing forest reserves.
- ❖ Through rural electrification.
- ❖ By using energy saving cooking stoves.
- ❖ By enforcing laws against deforestation.
- ❖ By teaching people about the importance of vegetation.
- ❖ Through rotational grazing.
- ❖ Through controlled harvesting of plants in the environment.

Ways of caring for vegetation in the environment.

- By watering plants during the dry season.
- By adding manure to the soil.
- By weeding the crops.
- By thinning vegetation.
- By pruning plants.
- Through rotational grazing.

Ways of caring for vegetation.

- Through afforestation.
- Through reafforestation.
- By watering plants in the environment.
- By manuring plants.
- By pruning plants.
- Through rotational grazing.
- Through practising agro-forestry.

Note:

- ***National Environment Management Authority*** *(NEMA) is the body responsible for conservation of the environment in Uganda.*
- ***National Forestry Authority*** *(NFA) is the body responsible for conservation of forests in Uganda.*
- *NEMA is under the* ***Ministry of Water and Environment.***

How NEMA conserves the environment.

- It teaches people about the importance of forests and swamps.
- It evicts people settling in forest reserves.
- It creates forest reserves.
- It enforces laws against wetland degradation.

Importance of conserving vegetation.

- It controls global warming.
- It controls soil erosion.
- It controls drought.
- It promotes tourism.
- It conserves the natural habitat for animals.
- It ensures constant supply of wood fuel, crafts raw materials, herbal medicine.
- It conserves the natural beauty of the environment.



Testing Exercise.

1. Give the meaning of the term Vegetation.
2. Mention any two examples of each of the following types of vegetation
   (i) Natural vegetation
   (ii) Planted vegetation
3. State any two characteristics of planted forests.
4. Mention any three tree species that are common in planted forests.
5. Which type of wood is mostly obtained from planted forests?
6. Give one reason why people plant flowers in their compounds.
7. How does vegetation help to purify air in the environment?
8. Mention the four vegetation zones of Africa.
9. Why are tropical rain forests called the rain forests?
10. Name the largest natural forest in Uganda.
11. Which natural forest is found along Kampala-Jinja highway?
12. Why is Bwindi forest referred to as an impenetrable forest?
13. State any three characteristics of natural forests.
14. Why do most trees in planted forests grow very tall?
15. Mention any three tree species that commonly grow in natural forests.
16. What are Deciduous trees?

17. Mention any two economic activities that are commonly done in each of the following vegetation zones.
    (i) Equatorial rain forests.
    (ii) Montane vegetation
    (iii) Temperate vegetation.
    (iv) Desert vegetation.
18. Why do some trees in the tropical region shed their leaves during the dry season?
19. How do herbalists benefit from the natural forests in their locality?
20. Give any two ways forests are useful to wild animals.
21. State any two problems facing forests.
22. State any two ways the activity of deforestation is affects the natural environment.
23. Give any two reasons why people carry out deforestation.
24. Name one East African country where the mangrove forests are commonly found.
25. How have the mangrove forests promote the development of the fishing industry in East Africa?
26. Why is timber obtained from the mangrove forests suitable for ship building?
27. Write the following in full.
    (i) NFA
    (ii) NEMA
    (iii) UWA
28. Give any two ways NFA conserves forests in Uganda.
29. State any two characteristics of each of the following types of natural vegetation.
    (i) Desert vegetation.
    (ii) Savannah vegetation.
    (iii) Montane vegetation.
30. Name any two districts in Uganda that have Semi-desert vegetation.
31. Which type of natural vegetation covers the largest part of Uganda?
32. Why are most game parks in Uganda located in Savannah grasslands?
33. What are Deciduous trees?
34. Why is Miombo woodland of Central Tanzania sparsely populated?
35. State the major economic activity carried out in Miombo woodland.
36. Give any two ways oases are useful to the desert dwellers.
37. How do swamps promote the development of the crafts making industry in an area.
38. Give any two reasons why people drain swamps.
39. Which type of natural vegetation covers the North Western part of Africa and the extreme Southern tip of South Africa?
40. State any two problems that are commonly faced by people living in swampy areas.
41. State any one way swamp drainage is dangerous to the environment.
42. How does climate affect the distribution of vegetation in an area.
43. In which way does overgrazing cause soil erosion in an area?
44. Give one reason why there are many mountain gorillas in Mgahinga national park.
45. Mention any four factors that influence vegetation distribution in Africa.
46. What is a Game park?
47. Name the largest game park in East Africa.
48. Which game park in Uganda would you advise a foreign tourist who wants to see mountain gorillas to visit?
49. Name the game park in Uganda which is famous for crocodiles.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

50. Name the largest game reserve in East Africa.
51. Mention the commonest animal species at Serengeti national park in Tanzania.
52. Give any three ways game parks promote the development of a country.
53. Which problem did the Uganda railway builders face at Tsavo national park?
54. Mention any two man's activities that are prohibited in national parks.
55. State any three problems facing game parks in Uganda.
56. Why is tourism called an;
    (i) industry?
    (ii) Invisible trade?
57. Mention any three major tourist attractions in Africa.
58. Mention the government ministry that is responsible for conservation of the environment in Uganda.
59. Apart from tourism, mention any one other example of Uganda's invisible export.
60. State any three problems facing the tourism industry in Africa.
61. Name the major tourist attraction found in Queen Elizabeth national park.
62. How do good hotels promote tourism in a country?
63. Name the body that is responsible for conservation of the environment in Uganda.
64. How is poaching a threat to the tourism industry?
65. Which game park in Kenya is famous for flamingo birds?
66. Mention any two human activities that destroy vegetation in an area.
67. How does deforestation lead to soil erosion?
68. Give any two reasons why the tropical rain forests are always densely populated.
69. State any one reason why there are always no people living on slopes of most mountains in Africa.
70. Give any three ways the tourism industry in Uganda can be improved.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 7

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers

Excel Publishers
"Excellence in every page"

For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies in Victoria Mutundwe Primary School and Makindye Junior school with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorized act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

Author: Kimbugwe Apollo

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Seven has been developed basing on the revised Primary Seven Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organized, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Seven in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the candidates.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts:

TEL: +256 771 623617  and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Topic 1: Location of Africa on the Map of the World.

- Introduction to The World.....6
- Continents of The World.....6
- Uniqueness of Africa 7
- Locating Africa using Lines of Longitude and Lines of Latitude 7
- Using The Prime Meridian to tell the International time.....9
- The Shape and Size of Africa.....11
- African Countries 12
- Political Regions of Africa 14
- Land Locked Countries in Africa.....15

Topic 2: Physical Features of Africa.

- Introduction to Physical Features 22
- Location of Major Physical Features in Africa.....23
- Mountains 23
- Plateaus 26
- The Great Rift Valley and Basins.....27
- Coastal Plains 28
- Lakes 28
- Rivers 31
- The Influence of Physical Features 35

Topic 3: The Climate of Africa.

- Weather 39
- Climatic Zones of Africa 43
- Factors that Influence the Climate of Africa 50
- Breezes and Pressure Belts.....53
- Climate Change.....54
- The Influence of Climate on Human Activities.....55

Topic 4: Vegetation of Africa.

- Introduction to Vegetation 60
- Vegetation Zones of Africa 60
- Vegetation Distribution in Africa 67
- The Influence of Vegetation on Animals 68
- National Parks in Africa 69
- Tourism industry in Africa 72
- The Influence of Vegetation on Population 73
- Vegetation Conservation 74

Topic 5:The People of Africa, Ethnic Groups and Settlement patterns.

- Origin of the People of Africa 78
- Major Ethnic Groups in Africa 81
- Migrations today 86
- Political, Social and Economic Organisation among The People of Africa.....90
- Trans-Saharan trade 97

Topic 6. Foreign Influence in Africa.

- Foreign Traders in Africa.....100
- Trans-Atlantic trade.....102
- Christian Missionaries in Africa.....103
- European Explorers in Africa.....107
- The Portuguese Explorers in Africa.....112
- Colonialists in Africa.....114
- Scramble for and Partition of Africa.....115
- Establishment of Colonial Rule in Africa.....117
- Colonial Administrative systems in Africa.....119
- The Great Trek 121
- Apartheid Policy in South Africa.....122
- Reactions to Colonial Rule in Africa.....124
- Effects of Colonial rule.....126

Topic 7. Nationalism and The Road to Independence in Africa.

- Pan Africanism.....131
- The Rise of African Nationalism.....133
- The Struggle for Independence in Africa.....136
- Decolonisation of Africa.....137
- Systems of Government.....139
- Elections.....141

Topic 8. Post Independence Africa.

- Formation of The OAU.....146
- Formation of The AU.....148
- Regional Economic Groupings in Africa.....150
- EAC as a Common Market.....152

Topic 9. Economic Developments in Africa.

- Economic Resources and Developments in Africa.....156
- Industrial Development in Africa.....157
- Energy Resources in Africa.....159
- Multipurpose River Projects in Africa.....159
- Agricultural Development in Africa.....161
- Mining Industry in Africa.....163
- Tourism Industry in Africa.....164
- The Fishing Industry in Africa.....165
- Case Studies of Economic Developments.....167
- Challenges affecting Economic Developments in Africa.....185

Topic 10. Major World Organisations.

- Formation of The League of Nations.....193
- The United Nations Organisation (UNO).....193
- The Universal Declaration of Human rights.....197
- The Commonwealth of Nations.....199
- Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC).....202

TOPIC 5: THE PEOPLE OF AFRICA, ETHNIC GROUPS AND SETTLEMENT PATTERNS.

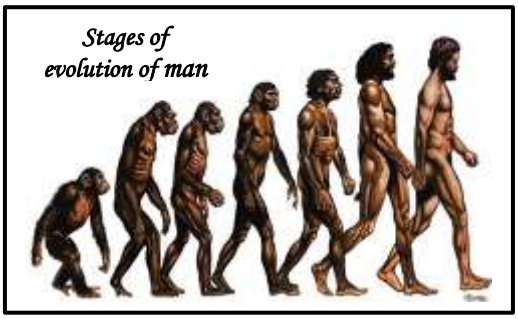
ORIGIN OF THE PEOPLE OF AFRICA

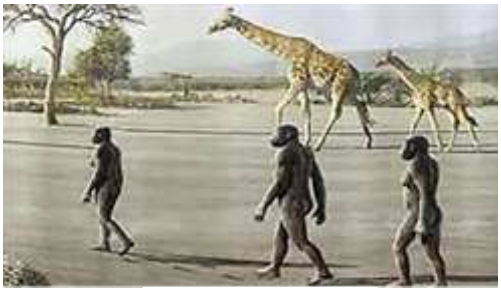
STONE AGE

- Stone age is the time when early man used tools made out of stones.

Stages of stone age

- The Old stone age/ Early stone age/ Palaeolithic
- The Middle stone age/ Mesolithic
- The New/Late stone age/Neolithic.





Old stone age man

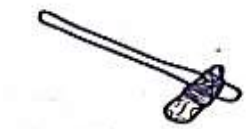
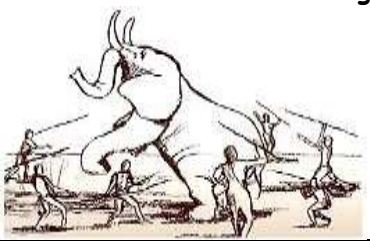
THE OLD STONE AGE

- It was the first stage of stone age.
- It is also called the Early stone age.

Characteristics of Old stone age

- Early man had a hairy body.
- Man used to eat raw meat.
- Man lived a wild and unsettled way of life.
- Man had no permanent homes.
- Man used simple tools made out of stones.
- Man slept under big trees and stones.

Tools used by early man in the Old stage age.

Name of the tool	*Drawing*	*Use of the tool to early man*
Bolas		❖ It was used to trap fast running animals during hunting
Hand axe		❖ It was used for skinning animals.
Hand spears		❖ It was used for hunting 
Bone needle		❖ It was used for stitching animal skins and hides to make clothes
Cleaver		❖ It was used for chopping meat

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Wooden club		❖ It was used for killing trapped animals
Bow and arrow		❖ It was used for hunting and fishing.

Examples of early man's food.

- ❖ Raw meat
- ❖ Wild honey
- ❖ Fruit
- ❖ Insects
- ❖ Plant roots
- ❖ Barks of trees
- ❖ Fish

Ways early man obtained food.

- ❖ By hunting.
- ❖ By gathering wild berries (fruit).
- ❖ By fishing.
- ❖ Collecting wild honey.

Places where early man used to live.

- ❖ Caves
- ❖ Under big trees.
- ❖ Along river banks
- ❖ On lake shores

➢ Note:- ***The discovery of fire*** *marked the end of Old stone age and marked the beginning of Middle age.*

MIDDLE STONE AGE

- This was the second stone age of early man's development.
- It is also called the Mesolithic period.
- The discovery of fire marked the beginning of the Middle stone age.

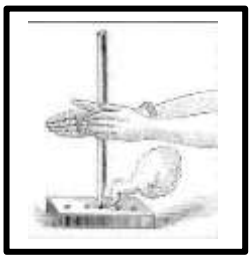
Characteristics of man in the Middle stone age.

- ❖ Man started living in caves.
- ❖ Man started eating roasted meat.
- ❖ Man started hunting using traps.
- ❖ Man started using animal skins as blankets.
- ❖ Man tamed the first animal (a dog).
- ❖ Man had less hairy body than in old stone age.



How early man discovered fire.

- He rubbed a dry stick into a hole in a dry piece of wood.
- As a result of friction, fire was produced.



How fire was important to early man.

- ❖ It was used for roasting meat.
- ❖ It was used to boil poison.
- ❖ It was used for hardening his tools. eg.pots
- ❖ It provided light in caves.
- ❖ It provided warmth to early man in caves.
- ❖ It was for protection (scaring away wild animals).

Ways how fire helped man to live in caves.

- ❖ It provided light in caves.
- ❖ It provided warmth in caves.
- ❖ It scared away wild animals.

Importance of a dog to early man.

- ❖ It helped early man during hunting.
- ❖ It protected early man from wild animals.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- Note: ***The discovery of farming*** *marked the end of Middle stone age and marked the beginning of New stone age period.*

THE NEW STONE AGE.

- **This stone age is also referred to as the Late stone age/ Neolithic.**
- **Man started it with the discovery of farming.**

Characteristics of man in the New stone age.

- **Man started to live in small organised communities.**
- **Man started growing crops (this made man to start living a settled life).**
- **Man tamed many domestic animals.**
- **Man started living in simple huts.**
  - Note: ***The discovery of Iron smelting*** *marked the end of Stone age and the beginning of Iron age.*

Ways farming helped early man to live a settled life.

- **Man had enough food for eating.**
- **Man needed to settle and take care of his crops and animals.**

IRON AGE.

- **This is a period when early man started using tools made of iron.**
- **Black smithing is the act of making iron tools.**
- **A black smith is a person who shapes and repairs iron tools.**
- **Iron smelting was started by the Cushites/ Hamites at Meroe in Ethiopia and was introduced in Uganda by the Bachwezi.**

Examples of iron tools that were made and used by early man.

- **Panga**
- **Saucepans**
- **Arrows**
- **Hoe**
- **Spear**
- **Knife**

How the discovery of iron smelting improved early man's life.

- **Man was able to make better tools for farming.**
- **Man was able to make better tools for hunting.**
- **Man made strong weapons for protection.**
- **Man has made better means of transport.**
- **Man made better fishing tools.**

THE PEOPLE OF AFRICA

- **Africans are people whose origin is in Africa.**
- **Africa is believed to be the cradle of mankind.This is because the oldest skull of man was discovered in Africa by Dr.Louis Leakey,at Olduvai Gorge in Tanzania.**
- **The oldest skull is believed to have been for a man called "Zinjanthropus" which means Black man.**
- **We can get information about the past through the study of history.**
- **History is the study of the past events.**
  Sources of historical information include the following;
  -archaeology, -written history, -oral tradition, -anthropology, -linguistics, etc.

The indigenous people of Africa include;

- **The Berbers in North Africa.**
- **The Tuaregs of the Sahara.**
- **The Oromo,Afar,Beja and Somali of the Horn of Africa.**
- **The Yoruba, Fulani and Igbo of West Africa.**
- **The Pygmies (also Bambuti) of Central Africa.**
- **The Khoikhoi (also called the Hottentots) of Southern Africa.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- The Bushmen of East Africa.

Characteristics that make Africans different from other people.

- They have a dark skin.
- They have short hair.

MAJOR ETHNIC GROUPS IN AFRICA.

An ethnic group is a large group of people with the same origin, same traditional occupation and speak related languages.

A tribe is a large group of people with the same origin, same traditional occupation and speak the same language.

Characteristics of an ethnic group.

- People have the same traditional occupation.
- People speak related languages.
- People share the same origin.
- People have the same ancestor.

Major ethnic groups in Africa.

- The Bantu
- Nilotics
- Cushites
- The Khoisans.
- Semites
- Nilo-Hamites

Origins of major ethnic groups in Uganda.

Ethnic group	*Origin*	*Traditional occupation*
Bantu	Cameroon highlands	Crop growing/ cultivation
Nilotics/River-Lake Nilotes	Bahr-el-Ghazal	Pastoralism/ animal rearing
Hamites/Cushites	Ethiopia	Pastoralism
Plain Nilotes/Nilo-Hamites	Ethiopian Highlands	Pastoralism
Highland Nilotes	Ethiopian Highlands	pastoralism

Factors that affected settlement patterns of ethnic groups into East Africa..

- Climate
- Nature of the Soil
- Availability of land.
- Vegetation
- Water bodies
- Occupation

How the above factors influenced the settlement patterns of Ethnic groups in East Africa.

- Climate:
  Most people settled in areas with favourable climate for their traditional; occupation. Areas that receive much rainfall attracted the cultivators while areas that receive low rainfall attracted cattle keepers.
- Nature of the soils:
  The Bantu who were cultivators settled in the interlacustrine region which had fertile soils for crop growing.
- Land:
  Most ethnic groups migrated into East Africa to acquire enough land for growing crops and rearing animals.
- Vegetation:
  Most pastoral tribes settled in areas with savannah vegetation to get pasture for their animals.
- Water bodies:

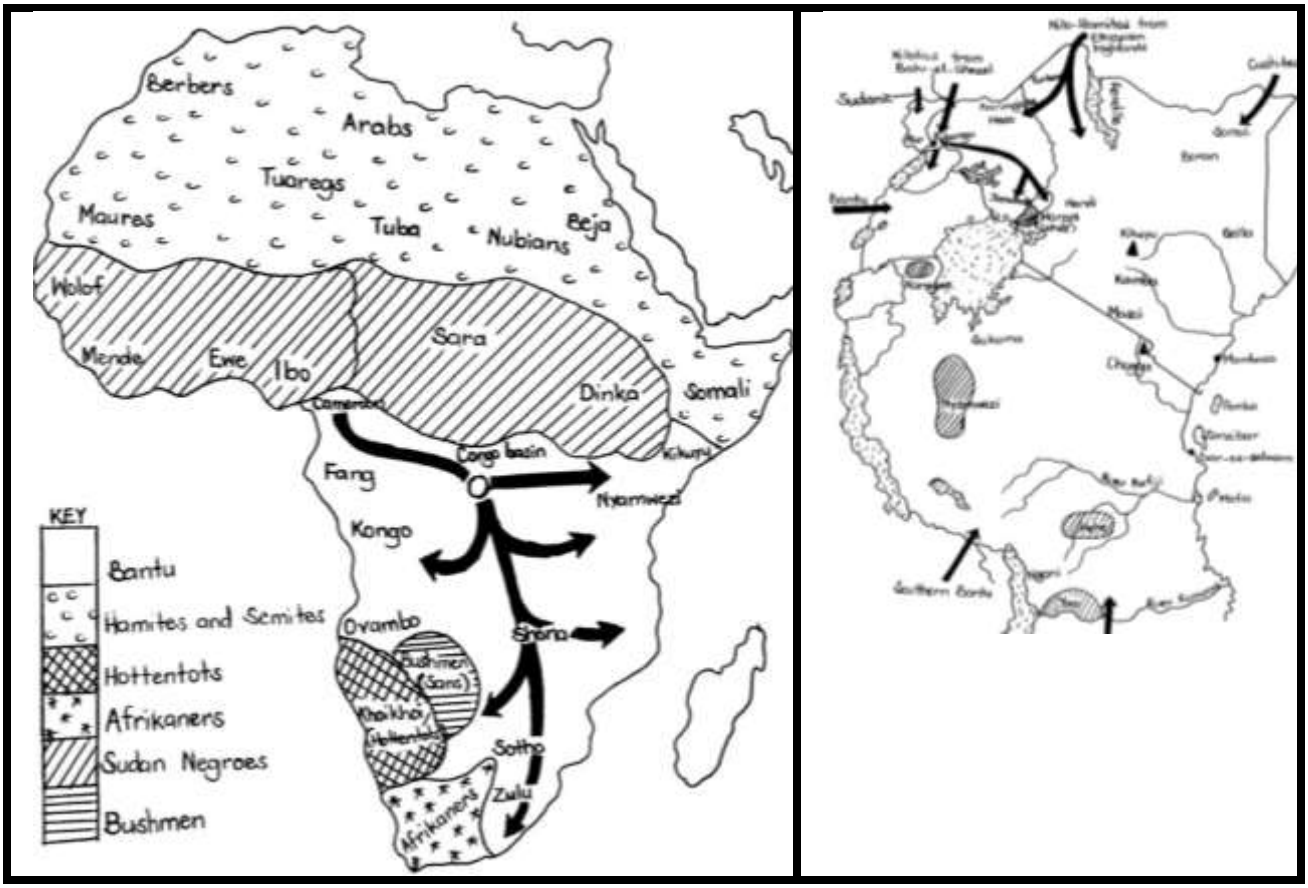
apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Most tribal groups settled around water bodies in order to get water for home use, for their animals and to carryout fishing.

- ❖ Occupation :

Most ethnic groups in East Africa settled in areas that were suitable for their traditional occupation eg.the Bantu settled in areas that had fertile soils and received reliable rainfall which support crop growing, the Nilotics were pastoralists which made them settle in areas that had plenty of pasture for their animals.

MAJOR ETHNIC GROUPS IN AFRICA.



THE BANTU

- The Bantu is the largest ethnic group in Africa.
- The main occupation of the bantu is *cultivation*.
- The Bantu are believed to have originated from Cameroon highlands and settled in the Congo basin in Central Africa, before spreading to other parts of Africa.
- The Bantu are so called because they speak related languages with a common suffix "ntu" when referring to people or things.
- The Bantu who came to East Africa mainly settled in the Interlacustrine region.
- Interlacustrine region is the land between the great lakes of East Africa.
- These lakes include; lake Victoria, lake Albert, lake Edward, lake Tanganyika and lake Kivu.

Why the Bantu settled in the Interlacustrine region.

- ❖ The area receives plenty of rainfall.
- ❖ The area has fertile soils which support crop cultivation.

Note.

- ✓ ***A tribe*** *is a large group of people who have the same origin and speak the same language.*
- ✓ *The interlacustrine region was originally inhabited by the* ***Bushmen.***
- ✓ *The migration of the Bantu into East Africa led to the displacement of the Bushmen.*
- ✓ *The Bushmen moved southwards and finally settled in the Kalahari desert in Southern Africa.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Bantu tribes in East Africa

Country	*Bantu tribes.*
Uganda	-Baganda –Basoga –Bagishu –Batooro –Bakiga –Bakonzo–Banyankore –Banyoro.
Kenya	-Abaluhya –Akamba –Kikuyu –Meru –Mijikenda -Maragoli -Embu -Pokomo
Tanzania	-Nyamwezi –Ngoni –Yao –Sukuma –Hehe –Chagga
Rwanda	-Hutu
Burundi	-Hutu

Note:

- ***The Ngoni*** *were the last Bantu group to move and settle in East Africa.*
- *They migrated from South Africa.*
- *They were escaping from the civil wars of Shaka Zulu.*

Migration groups of the Bantu.

Migration group	*Bantu tribes*
Central Africa Bantu	-Bakongo –Chewa –Bemba
Eastern Africa Bantu	-Baganda –Basoga –Bagishu –Bakonzo Nyamwezi –Ngoni –Yao –Hehe –Chagga
Southern Africa Bantu	-Zulu –Xhosa –Herero –Avambo –Shona –Venda –Tswana -Sotho

Some Bantu tribes that settled on slopes of mountains.

Mountain	*Bantu tribe*
Mountain Rwenzori	Bakonzo
Mountain Mufumbiro	Bafumbira , Bakiga
Mountain Elgon	Bagishu
Mountain Kilimanjaro	Chagga
Mountain Kenya	Kikuyu

Causes of the Bantu migrations.

- Outbreak of epidemic diseases in their cradleland.
- Internal and external conflicts.
- The need for fertile land for cultivation.
- Outbreak of famine.
- Shortage of land.
- Over population in their cradle land.
- Prolonged drought.

Reasons for the migrations of the Bantu into east Africa.

- They were looking for water and pasture for their animals.
- They were escaping from external attacks.
- They were escaping from epidemic diseases which attacked them.
- To look for areas that received reliable rainfall. .
- To look for enough land to carry out cultivation.
- To look for fertile soils for crop cultivation.

Countries in Africa where the Bantu mainly settled.

- Uganda
- Kenya
- Tanzania
- South Africa
- DRC
- Congo Brazzaville
- Zimbabwe
- Botswana.

Effects of the migration and settlement of the Bantu.

a) Positive effects.

- The Bantu introduced new crops where they settled.
- They formed kingdoms and chiefdoms where they settled.
- They introduced new languages.
- They introduced new farming systems.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

NB:- The *Bantu tribes were able to form kingdoms because they lived a settled life.*

b) Negative effects.

- **It led to displacement of people from areas where they settled. (the Bushmen were displaced from the Interlacustrine region. They moved southwards and settled in the Kalahari desert)**
- **They caused wars and conflicts where they settled.**
- **They led to loss of culture through intermarriages.**
- **They led to increased population where they settled which caused shortage of land.**

THE NILOTES

- **The Nilotes are called so because they had their origin along the Nile valley.**
- **The Nile valley countries include; Uganda, Ethiopia, South Sudan ,Sudan and Egypt**
- **The main occupation of the Nilotes is pastoralism.**

The sub-groups of the Nilotes include the;

- **River-lake Nilotes /Nilotics / Luo speakers.**
- **Plain Nilotes/ Nilo-Hamites**
- **Highland Nilotes**

Tribes under different sub-groups of the Nilotes.

Sub-group	*Origin*	*Country*	*Tribes under the Nilotes*
River-lake Nilotes	*Bahr-el-Ghazal*	Uganda	-Acholi -Alur -Jopadhola
		Kenya	-Jaluo
		South Sudan	-Dinka -Nuer -Azande
Highland Nilotes.	*Ethiopian highlands*	Uganda	-Sabiny
		Kenya	-Nandi -Sabiny -Marakwet -Tugen -Kipsigis -Keijo
		Tanzania	-Dadong
Plain Nilotes	*Ethiopian highlands*	Uganda	-Iteso -Karimojong -Langi -Kumam
		Kenya	-Masai -Turkana -Samburu
		Tanzania	-Masai -Barabaig

Note;

- ✓ *The Nilotics first settled at **Pubungu** (presently known as Pakwach) when they entered in East Africa.*
- ✓ *The Legend of the Spear and the Bead explains the separation of the Nilotics while at Pubungu.*
- ✓ ***The Alur** tribe came into existence as a result of intermarriages between the Nilotics and the Lendu.*
- ✓ *The **Sabiny** are found in both Uganda and Kenya.*
- ✓ *The **Masai** are found in both Kenya and Tanzania.*
- ✓ *Some tribes under the Nilotes in Africa changed from pastoralism to mixed farming.*

Reasons why some tribes under the Nilotes in Africa changed from pastoralism to mixed farming.

- **They settled in areas with fertile soils.**
- **They settled in areas that receive reliable rainfall.**

Cause of the migrations of the Nilotes into East Africa.

- **Shortage of pasture for animals.**
- **Internal and external attacks.**
- **Outbreak of epidemic diseases.**
- **High population which led to shortage of land.**
- **Prolonged drought in their cradle land.**
- **Outbreak of famine in their cradle land.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Effects of the migration of the Nilotes.

a) **Positive effects.**

- ❖ They introduced Luo language where they settled.
- ❖ The number of domestic animals increased in East Africa.
- ❖ They formed chiefdoms where they settled.
- ❖ They introduced new crops such as millet, sorghum, and sweet potatoes in East Africa.
- ❖ They founded the Luo-Biito dynasty.
- ❖ They introduced new culture like pet names and luo languages.

b) **Negative effects.**

- ❖ They displaced people where they settled.
- ❖ The Luo invasion led to collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara empire.
- ❖ Population increased where they settled which resulted into shortage of land.

THE CUSHITES

- They are also called the **Hamites**.
- They are believed to have moved from Asia and settled in the Horn of Africa.
- Their main occupation is pastoralism / cattle keeping.

Tribes under the Cushites in Africa.

Country	Tribes under the Cushites.
Uganda	-Bahima -Basita -Bahinda
Rwanda	-Tutsi
Burundi	-Tutsi
Kenya	-Rendille -Boran -Galla -Somali
Tanzania	-Mbugu -Iragu
Ethiopia	-Afar -Ogaden -Oromo
Somalia	-Somali -Hawiyah.

Note:- *The **Tuaregs** of North Africa also belong to the Cushites.*

THE SUDANIC.

- The Sudanic people are believed to have migrated from Juba in South Sudan.
- They settled in the West-Nile sub-region of Uganda.
- They carried out mixed farming.

Tribes under the Sudanic in East Africa.

- Lugbara
- Okebu
- Madi
- Lendu

THE KHOISAN PEOPLE

- This group is made up of the *Khoikhoi* and the *Sans.*
- The Khoikhoi are the earliest inhabitants of Southern Africa.
- The Khoikhoi were formerly called the *Hottentots* while the Sans were formerly known as the *Bushmen.*
- The Khoisans are mainly hunters and pastoralists.
- The Bantu and the Europeans led to displacement of the Khoisans from their fertile areas.
- They moved and settled in Kalahari desert, Namibia and Botswana.

THE PYGMIES.

- They are believed to be the earliest inhabitants of Central Africa.
- They are also known as Bambuti.
- They get their food by hunting and gathering fruits.
- The pygmies have reduced in number due to intermarriages.

Countries where the pygmies are mainly found.

- Democratic Republic of Congo
- Congo Brazzaville
- Gabon
- Central African Republic.

THE COLOUREDS

- These were groups of people formed as a result of intermarriages between the whites, blacks and Asians.

THE SEMITES

- The Semites have a mixture of African, Arabic and Jewish blood.
- Arabs from Arabia and the Jews from Middle East settled in the Horn of Africa.
- They intermarried with the African people and formed the Semites.
- The Semites were basically pastoralists.

Tribes under the Semites.

- The Nubians of Uganda, Kenya and Sudan.
- Eritreans of Eritrea.
- The Amhara and Tigre of Ethiopia.

THE NEGROES.

- These are the Africans who were victims to slave trade taken to America.

THE AFRIKANERS.

- These were the descendants of the Dutch farmers who migrated and settled in South Africa.
- The Dutch farmers were also known as the *Boers*, which means *farmers.*
- *Afrikaans* is the language spoken by the Afrikaners.
- The Afrikaners is the largest European descendants group in Africa.
- The Boers fought the Khoisans in order to take over their land.

Points to note:

- ✓ *The **Pygmies** are the shortest people in the world.*
- ✓ *The **Fulani** of West Africa (Nigeria) is the world's largest pastoral tribe.*
- ✓ *The Fulani of Nigeria practice **Transhumance**.(seasonal movement of people with animals.)*
- ✓ *The **Tuaregs** are the oldest inhabitants of the Sahara.*
- ✓ *Baganda, Kikuyu and the Sukuma are the largest tribes in Uganda, Kenya and Tanzania respectively.*
- ✓ *The **Zulu** is the largest tribe in South Africa.*

Problems faced by Ethnic groups during their migrations.

- ❖ Attacks from hostile people.
- ❖ Attacks from tropical diseases.
- ❖ Attacks from wild animals.
- ❖ Difficulty in crossing some physical features e.g. rivers.
- ❖ Shortage of food and water.
- ❖ Walking long and tiresome journeys.

MIGRATIONS TODAY

Migration is the movement of people with their property from one place to another for settlement.

Types of migration

- Internal migration
- External migration.

(i) EXTERNAL MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one country to another for settlement.

Forms of external migration

- Immigration
- Emigration

Emigration is the process by which a person leaves his/her country and goes to live permanently in another country.

Such a person is called an ***emigrant.***

Immigration is the process by which a person comes to live permanently in a country that is not his/hers.

Such a person is called an ***immigrant***.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Causes of immigration and emigration.

- Civil wars/ internal conflicts.
- Shortage of land.
- Need for better social services.
- Marriage bondage.
- Unemployment.
- To invest their excess capital.
- Job transfers.

Effects of immigration and emigration.

- It leads to population increase in areas of settlement.
- It leads to introduction of new languages.
- It leads to intermarriages among people.
- It leads to land shortage in areas of settlement.
- It leads to loss of culture through intermarriages.
- It leads to large labour force in new areas of settlement.

Reasons why people leave their own countries to settle in others permanently.

- To look for better paying jobs.
- To look for areas that are free from wars.
- To look for enough land.
- To look for better social services.
- To look for trade opportunities.

(ii) INTERNAL MIGRATION.

- Internal migration is the movement of people with their property from one part of a country to another for better settlement.
- The migrant remains within his own country.

Forms of internal migration.

- Rural-urban migration.
- Urban-rural migration.
- Rural-rural migration.
- Urban-urban migration.

RURAL-URBAN MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from villages to towns looking for better settlement.

Causes of Rural-Urban migration.

- Unemployment in villages.
- Poor health services.
- Poor transport systems in villages.
- Poor education services in villages
- Job transfers from villages to towns.
- Internal conflicts.
- Insecurity in villages.

Reasons why people move from villages to towns.

- To look for better paying jobs.
- To look for better education services.
- To look for a large market for their goods.
- To get access to/enjoy social amenities like electricity and piped water.
- To look for better health services.
- To look for wider market for their goods.
- To run away from dangerous cultural practices like Female Genital Mutilation.

Effects of Rural-Urban migration.

- It leads to depopulation in rural areas which reduces market for goods in rural areas.
- It leads to shortage of labour in villages.
- It leads to low food production.
- It leads to high crime rate in towns.
- It leads to a high rate of unemployment in urban areas.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Ways in which the government can reduce rural-urban migration.

- By setting up industries in rural areas to create jobs for people.
- By extending electricity to villages (rural electrification).
- By improving the social service delivery in villages.
- By encouraging people in villages to start up small- scale industries.

Note:-***Rural electrification*** *is the extension of electricity to rural areas.*

Problems faced by people living in urban centres/ towns.

- High crime rate.
- Congestion/traffic jam.
- Easy spread of communicable diseases.
- Poor housing facilities e.g.slums.
- High rate of unemployment.
- High cost of living.
- Poor sanitation.

Reasons why urban centres/ towns are densely populated.

- They have better paying jobs.
- They have better education services.
- They have better social amenities.
- They have better health services.
- They have better business opportunities.

URBAN -RURAL MIGRATION

- Urban-rural migration is the movement of people with their property from towns to villages for better settlement.

Causes of Urban-Rural migration.

- Insecurity in towns.
- High costs of living in towns.
- Retirement from jobs in towns.
- Outbreak of epidemic diseases in towns.
- Job transfers from towns to villages.
- Need for large vacant land for crop growing.
- Unemployment in towns.

Reasons why people move from towns to villages.

- To look for land for farming.
- To extend their businesses to villages.
- To get market for their goods.
- To look for areas which are free from natural disasters.
- To look for areas with low costs of living.

Effects of Urban-Rural migration.

- It leads to shortage of labour in towns.
- It leads to shortage of market for goods in towns.
- It leads to land shortage in villages.
- It leads to population increase in villages.

Ways the government can encourage Urban-Rural migration.

- By extending electricity to rural areas (Rural electrification)
- By encouraging the setting up of small scale industries in villages.
- By building better hospitals in villages.
- By constructing better schools in villages.
- By providing better security in villages.

URBAN-URBAN MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one town to another looking for better settlement.

Causes of Urban-Urban migration.

- Job transfers from one town to another.
- Low market for goods.
- Insecurity in some towns.
- High costs of living in some towns.
- Poor sanitation in some towns.
- Natural disasters in some towns eg.floods.

Reasons why people move from one town to another.

- To look for better jobs.
- To look for a large market for their goods.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- To look for better security services.
- To invest their capital in other towns.
- To look for towns which are free from natural disasters.

Effects of Urban-Urban migration.

- It leads to population increase in new towns where people settle.
- It leads to shortage of market where they leave.
- It leads to shortage of labour where they leave.
- It leads to shortage of land in the new areas of settlement.

RURAL-RURAL MIGRATION.

- This is the movement of people with their property from one village to another looking for better settlement.

Causes of Rural-Rural migration.

- Social conflicts.
- Soil infertility in some villages.
- Insecurity in some villages.
- Shortage of water and pasture.
- Shortage of land.
- Outbreak of epidemic diseases.

Reasons why people move from one village to another.

- To look for fertile soils for crop growing.
- To look for water and pasture for animals.
- To run away from social conflicts.
- To look for areas with better security.
- To look for areas which are free from epidemic diseases.
- To look for areas which are free from natural disasters.

Effects of Rural-Rural migration.

- It leads to conflicts with the inhabitants of the places they migrate to.
- It leads to intermarriages.
- It leads to introduction of new cultures.
- It leads to low population in places where people migrate from.
- It leads to introduction of new languages where people settle.

How do people in Urban areas benefit from those living in Rural areas.

- People in urban areas get food from villages.
- People in villages provide market for goods produced in towns.
- Industries in towns get raw materials from villages.

Problems faced by people living in urban areas/ towns.

- Congestion of people in towns.
- High crime rate.
- Sound pollution.
- Development of slums.
- High cost of living.
- Traffic jam.
- Unemployment among people.

Possible solutions to the above problems.

- Deploying more security officers to improve security.
- By building storeyed houses.
- By constructing wider roads in towns.
- By building flyovers and foot paths.
- By teaching people the dangers of poor sanitation.
- By installing/putting security cameras on houses and along the roads.

Ways people in Rural areas benefit from people in Urban areas.

- People in towns provide market for food from villages.
- They provide rural areas with goods produced in towns.
- People in towns provide farm inputs to farmers in villages eg.insecticides, fertilizers

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Problems faced by people in rural areas.

- Poor health services.
- Poor transport system.
- Low electric power supply.
- Shortage of safe water.
- Poor education services.
- Poor housing facilities.

Possible solution to the problems faced by people in rural areas.

- By constructing better roads in rural areas.
- By starting up small scale industries.
- By extending electricity to rural areas/ by promoting rural electrification.
- By setting up better health centres in villages.
- By building better schools in rural areas.

Note:-*Brain drain* *is the movement of highly trained/ qualified people from one country to another for settlement.*

***Causes of brain drain*.**

- *Underpayment.*
- *Political instability as a result of civil wars.*
- *Seeking for higher education.*
- *Search for employment opportunities.*

Reasons why people migrate today.

- To search for better jobs.
- To search for areas with fertile soils.
- To get enough land for crop growing.
- To get access to better social services.
- To search for areas which are free from disasters.

Effects of migrations today.

a) Positive effects

- It creates a large market for goods in towns.
- It leads to introduction of new languages.
- It leads to high revenue collection in towns.
- It leads to cheap labour force in towns.
- It creates job opportunities to people.

***b) Negative effects*.**

- It has led to land fragmentation in towns.
- It leads to limited labour force in villages.
- It leads to brain drain.
- It promotes the spreading of communicable diseases.
- It leads to loss of culture through intermarriages.
- It has led to increased crime rate in urban areas.
- It leads to over exploitation of resources in densely populated areas.
- It leads to limited market for goods in villages.

POLITICAL ORGANISATION AMONG PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL AFRICA.

- *Political organisation* refers to the way people govern themselves.

The people of Africa were politically organized;

- Through kingdoms.
- Through chiefdoms.
- Through empires.
- Through clan systems.

- *An empire* is a large territory under one ruler.
- *A kingdom* is a territory ruled by a king or a queen.

Ancient political units in Africa.

Political unit	*Examples*
Empires	❖ Zenj empire (along the East African coast.) ❖ Ethiopian empire. ❖ Moroccan empire.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

	❖ Bunyoro-Kitara empire. ❖ Nyamwezi empire in Tanzania		
Kingdoms	*Kingdom*	*Tribe*	*King's title.*
	Buganda kingdom in Uganda.	Baganda	Kabaka
	Bunyoro kingdom in Uganda	Banyoro	Omukama
	Tooro kingdom in Uganda	Batooro	Omukama
	Ankole kingdom in Uganda	Banyankole	Omugabe
	Wanga kingdom in Kenya	Luhya	Nabongo
	Ashanti in Ghana	Ashanti/Asante	Asantehene
	Zulu kingdom in South Africa.	Zulu	
	Kingdom of eSwatini	Swazi	
Chiefdoms	❖ Nyamwezi chiefdom in Tanzania ❖ Chagga chiefdom in Tanzania ❖ Busoga chiefdom in Ugamda ❖ Hehe chiefdom in Tanzania ❖ Kilindi chiefdom in Tanzania ❖ Acholi chiefdom in Uganda		

BUNYORO-KITARA EMPIRE.

- This was the earliest empire to be formed in East Africa.
- It was founded by the Batembuzi.
- The Batembuzi formed a ruling dynasty called the ***Tembuzi dynasty.***
- The Tembuzi dynasty was founded by Ruhanga and his brother Nkya.
- The Batembuzi were believed to be demi-gods because they could perform miraculous signs.

Note;

- ✓ ***A dynasty*** *is a series of rulers who belong to the same family.*
- ✓ *The Tembuzi dynasty came to an end after the locking of king Isaza in the underground world by king Nyamiyonga.*
- ✓ ***King Isaza*** *was the last king of the Batembuzi.*
- ✓ *The* ***Batembuzi*** *were succeeded by the Bachwezi.*

The Chwezi Dynasty.

- It was formed by the Bachwezi.
- The Bachwezi came from Ethiopia.
- The Bachwezi had their headquarters at Bigobyamugenyi, in present day district Sembabule.
- King Ndahura was the first king of the Bachwezi while King Wamala was the last.

How the knowledge of iron smelting strengthened the Chwezi empire.

- ❖ The Bachwezi made strong tools for cultivation.
- ❖ The Bachwezi were able to make strong weapons for defense.

Contributions of the Bachwezi in East Africa.

(a) Economic contributions

- ❖ They introduced the knowledge of iron smelting.
- ❖ They introduced long horned cattle.
- ❖ They started salt mining at Lake Katwe.
- ❖ They introduced the knowledge of bark cloth making.
- ❖ They started coffee cultivation in East Africa.

(b) Social contributions.

- ❖ They introduced local chess (Mweso game)
- ❖ They introduced the knowledge of building grass-thatched houses.
- ❖ They introduced sandal wearing in East Africa.
- ❖ They introduced the idea of digging ditches for protection against their enemies.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

(c) Political contributions

- ❖ They introduced a centralised monarchy system.
- ❖ They introduced royal regalia.
- ❖ They introduced the idea of building reed palaces.

Reasons for the collapse of the Chwezi empire.

- ❖ The empire was too large to be controlled by one ruler.
- ❖ Death of the beloved cow Bihogo.
- ❖ Outbreak of drought and famine in the empire.
- ❖ Disunity among the people in the empire.
- ❖ Rebellions by distant princes.
- ❖ The Luo invasion/ The coming of the Luo speakers (this led to final collapse of the empire)

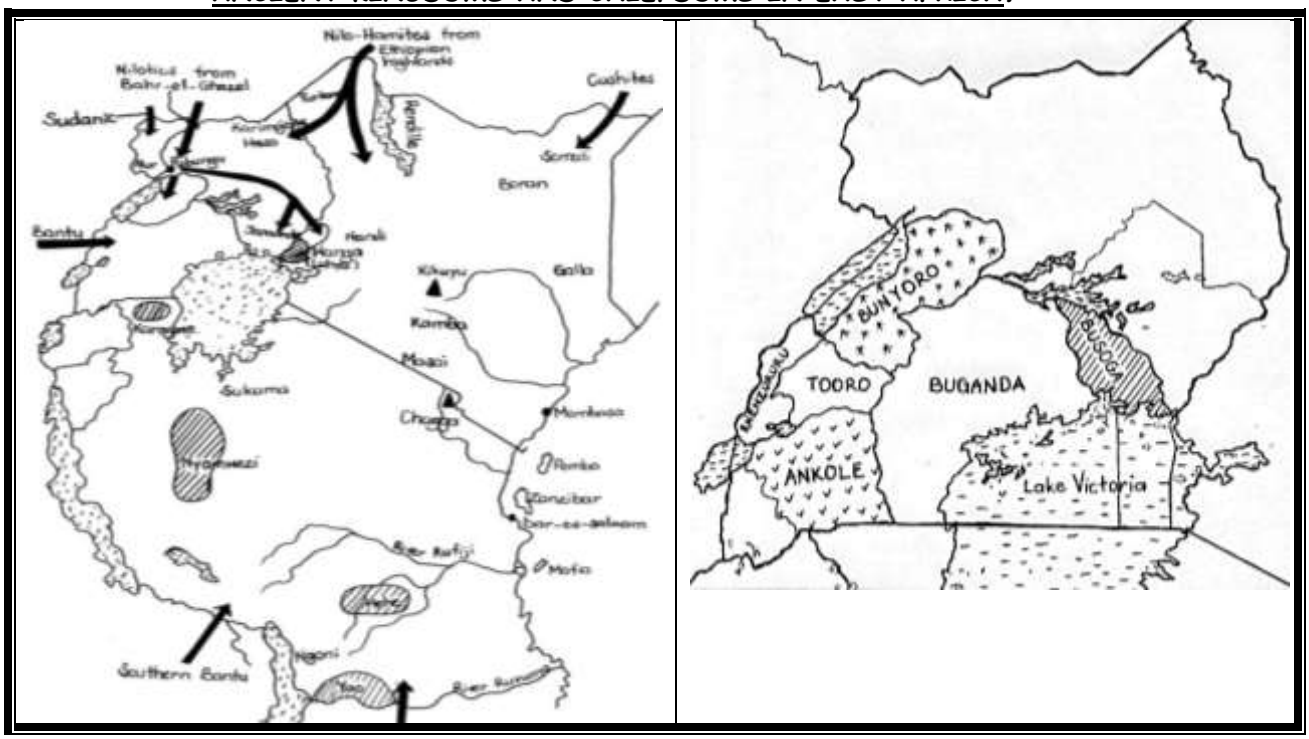
Note:

- ➢ ***The Luo-Biito*** *dynasty replaced the Chwezi dynasty.*
- ➢ *The Luo-Biito dynasty was founded by* ***Isingoma Mpuga Rukidi.***
- ➢ *Mpuga Rukidi is believed to be the first Omukama of Bunyoro kingdom, and his brother* ***Kato Kimera*** *founded Buganda kingdom.*
- ➢ *Bunyoro kingdom replaced the Chwezi dynasty.*
- ➢ *Kingdoms such as Buganda, Tooro, Ankole, Wanga, Karagwe etc were formed after the collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara empire.*

Characteristics of kingdoms.

- ❖ They have hereditary rulers.
- ❖ They have royal regalia as instruments of authority.eg. The royal spear, royal drum, royal crown, royal stool.
- ❖ They have a single supreme king at a time.
- ❖ They have social and cultural institutions.

ANCIENT KINGDOMS AND CHIEFDOMS IN EAST AFRICA.



Advantages/importance of kingdoms.

- ❖ They promote unity among people.
- ❖ They promote culture in the society.
- ❖ They help to mobilise people for national tasks e.g. elections, immunisation.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- They promote morals among the people.
- They promote development through the provision of social services.
- They offer scholarships to students.

Disadvantages of kingdoms.

- They promote dictatorship.
- There is unequal distribution of wealth among the people.
- They promote tribalism.
- They promote the interests of the minority over the majority.
- They promote regional rather than national development.
- They promote dictatorship since the king is not elected.

SOCIAL ORGANISATION AMONG THE PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL AFRICA.

- *Social organization* refers to the way how people relate with one another.
- The people of pre-colonial Africa were socially organized under the following;
  - They formed clan units.
  - They had families.
  - They had age groups.
  - They had rules and regulations.
  - They offered traditional education/ informal education.
  - They carried out social activities.
  - They had traditional ways of worship. They were believers in the African Traditional Religion (ATR)
  - They performed traditional practices.
  - They had taboos. (beliefs that forbade people from certain acts)
  - Culture was highly respected by all people in the society.

Note:

- ***A family*** *is a group of people related by blood, marriage or adoption.*
- *A clan is an organised group of people under one ancestor.*
- *Clans are formed by families related to each other.*
- ***A Lineage*** *is a small group of people in a clan under one ancestor.*
- *Clan leaders were responsible for organising clan ceremonies that brought together different clan members.*

Each clan is headed by a clan leader who performs the following roles;

- ***Keeping clan records.***
- ***Presiding over clan ceremonies.***
- ***Chairing clan meetings.***
- ***Settling disputes among clan members.***
- ***Distributing land among clan members.***

Clan symbols of identification include:

- Drumming.
- Totem
- Clan name

Culture of the people of pre-colonial Africa.

- ***Culture*** is the way of life of the people in a given society.
- It refers to the behaviours, beliefs, norms, values and practices that are passed on from one generation to another.

Types of culture.

- Material culture eg. weapons, tools, clothes, food, royal regalia, crafts etc.
- Non-material culture eg. taboos, customs, greeting, dancing, language, religion etc

Elements of culture:

- Religion
- Food
- Dressing style.
- Dancing style.
- Greeting style.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Importance of culture.

- ❖ **Culture promotes unity among people.**
- ❖ **It promotes morals among people.**
- ❖ **It promotes identity.**
- ❖ **It promotes respect in the society.**
- ❖ **Cultural institutions promote development of areas**

Ways of preserving/ promoting culture.

- **By protecting historical sites.**
- **By organising music festivals.**
- **By organising traditional games.**
- **By telling stories and legends.**
- **By wearing cultural clothes.**
- **By teaching culture in schools.**
- **By organising cultural games**

Dangers of some cultural practices.

- ❖ **Some are painful.**
- ❖ **Some cause psychological torture to people.**
- ❖ **Some of them lead to body deformity.**
- ❖ **Some lead to violation of human rights.**
- ❖ **Some cultural practices lead to spreading of diseases.**

N.B:-***Female Genital Mutilation*** *was commonly practised by the Sabiny in Eastern Uganda.*
*-**Circumcision** is commonly practised by the Bakonzo and the Bagishu in Uganda.*

SOCIAL ACTIVITIES AMONG THE PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL AFRICA.

Social activities **are activities which bring many people together in the community.**

Examples of Social activities among pre-colonial societies.

- **Wedding ceremonies.**
- **Circumcision ceremonies**
- **Burial ceremonies.**
- **Children naming ceremonies.**
- **Initiation of the heirs ceremonies.**

NB: *-Graduation ceremonies are also examples of social activities celebrated in our society today.*

Importance of Social activities.

- ❖ **Social activities promote unity among people.**
- ❖ **They promote identity.**
- ❖ **They strengthen clan norms.**
- ❖ **They promote culture in the society.**
- ❖ **They promote moral values among people.**
- ❖ **They promote love among people.**

ECONOMIC ORGANISATION AMONG THE PEOPLE OF PRE-COLONIAL AFRICA.

- **African societies economically organised themselves under trade communities.**
- **Different communities exchanged goods to get what each society didn't produce.**
- **Economic organisation involves the various economic activities done by the people of Africa.**

Ways the people of pre-colonial East Africa were economically organised.

- **Through practising their traditional occupation.e.g. cultivation, pastoralism, fishing etc.**
- **Through iron smelting.**
- **Through carrying out trade. The main system of trade was barter trade because there was no medium of exchange during that time.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Economic activities done by the people of Pre-colonial Africa.

- **Cultivation**
- **Weaving**
- **Pottery**
- **Trading**
- **Iron working.**
- **Pastoralism**
- **Hunting.**

Trade in pre-colonial Africa.

- ***Trade*** **is the buying or selling of goods and services.**
- **The system of trade used was barter because there was no money/ medium of exchange by then.**

Systems of trade.

- **Barter trade.**
- **Monetary trade**

- ***Barter trade*** **is the exchange of goods for goods or services.**

Factors that promoted barter trade long ago.

- **Absence of currency.**
- **Unity among the people.**
- **Production of different kinds of goods by different communities.**

Advantages of barter trade.

- **It promotes unity among people.**
- **It favours the illiterates.**
- **It favours people without money.**

Disadvantages of barter trade.

- **It is very difficult to transport some bulky goods over long distances.**
- **There is double coincidence of wants.**
- **There is no standard measure for the value of goods.**
- **It does not favour people without physical goods to exchange.**

NB:

- *-Barter trade system was replaced by* ***monetary trade.***
- *Monetary trade is the system of trade that involves the use of money as a medium of exchange.*
- *-Cowrie shells was the first form of currency to be introduced in Uganda. It was introduced by the early Arab traders.*
- *Rupees was the second form of currency to be used in Uganda. It was introduced by the Indian traders.*

Effects of barter trade on the people of pre-colonial Africa.

- **It promoted peace and unity.**
- **It enabled people get new items of trade.**
- **It promoted friendship among people.**
- **It led to development of trade routes.**

LONG DISTANCE TRADE (Revision of P.6 work).

- **This was the trade carried out between the people at the coast and those in the interior of East Africa.**
- **It was called long distance trade because the traders moved very long distances carrying goods on foot.**
- **It was mainly between the coastal traders (Arabs) and the Africans in the interior of East Africa.**
- **Kilwa, Mombasa, Zanzibar, Bagamoyo, Tanga and Pangani were the main trading centres during Long distance trade.**
- **Traders moved in caravans for protection against hostile people and dangerous animals.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- Slaves were needed to carry goods to and from the coast of East Africa during long distance trade.

A map showing the trade routes of the Arabs during Long distance trade in East Africa.



Active participants in Long distance trade.

- Baganda.
- Hehe
- Chagga
- Nyamwezi
- Yao.
- Akamba.
- Kikuyu

Foreigners who took part in the Long distance trade.

- Arabs.
- Indians.
- Persians.

Trading centres/towns during Long distance trade.

- Zanzibar.
- Sofala
- Tabora.
- Kilwa.
- Bagamoyo.

Ivory was an important trade item during the Long distance trade.



Trade items from different tribes.

Baganda	*Nyamwezi*	*Kamba*	*Yao*
ivory,slaves,hides, skins ,cattle	hoes, ivory, salt, iron ore, grains, wax	ivory, hides and skin, honey and wax.	ivory, slaves.

Goods that were brought to East Africa during the Long distance trade.

- Guns
- Mirrors
- Swords
- Beads
- Carpets
- Glasses
- Clothes
- Ornaments

Effects of Long distance trade.

a) **Positive effects.**

- Kings and chiefs became richer.
- It led to introduction of new items in East Africa.
- It led to introduction of Arabic language.
- Long distance routes later developed into major roads.
- It led to development of coastal towns.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- It led to expansion of kingdoms.
- It led to development of Swahili culture in East Africa.
- It led to introduction of new dressing styles.
- It led to the spread of Islam in East Africa.

b) Negative effects.

- It led to introduction of slave trade.
- It led to over exploitation of East Africa's resources.
- It led to loss of African culture.
- It lead to death of people as a result of slave trade.
- It led to wars and conflicts among societies.

TRANS-SAHARAN TRADE.

- This was the trade carried out between the people of North Africa and those of West Africa across the Sahara desert.
- Traders moved in caravans for protection against hostile people and dangerous animals.
- Camels were used as means of transport during the Trans-Saharan trade because they are able to resist the harsh desert conditions.

Qn: *Why are camels able to resist the harsh desert conditions?, give any three reasons.*

Active participants in Trans-Saharan trade.

Foreigners	-Arabs -Romans -Jews -Greeks
Africans	-Berbers -Hausa -Tuaregs -Ashanti -Mandingo -Soninke

Trade items during Trans-Saharan trade.

Goods brought to West Africa	-mirrors -guns -beads -carpets -glasses -swords -clothes -ornaments
Goods obtained from West Africa	-gold -slaves -hides and skins -bee wax -ivory -wheat

Effects of Trans-Saharan trade/ Long distance trade.

a) Positive effects.

- It led to expansion of kingdoms e.g. Mali, Ghana etc.
- It led to development of towns.
- It led to introduction of Islam in West Africa.
- New trade items were introduced in west Africa.
- Trade routes later developed into permanent roads.

b) *Negative effects.*

- It led to introduction of slave trade.
- Africa's valuable resources were taken away.
- It led to loss of culture due to intermarriages between the local people and the foreigners.
- Families broke up due to slave trade.

Reasons for the decline of Trans-Saharan trade

- European colonisation of West Africa.
- Shortage of some trade items like gold.
- The rise of Trans-Atlantic trade.



Testing Exercise.

1. Mention any four sources of history.
2. State any one advantage oral tradition has over written history as a source of history.
3. Why is Dr. Louis Leakey remembered in the history of East Africa?

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

4. Name the place in East Africa where the oldest skull of man was discovered.
5. Why is East Africa referred to as the cradle of mankind?
6. Name the stone age site in Uganda which is famous for rock paintings.
7. How is Bigobyamugenyi historically related to the Bachwezi?
8. State any two characteristics of the old stone age man.
9. Which important discoveries marked the end of each of the following stone ages;
   (i) Old stone age.
   (ii) Middle stone age.
   (iii) New stone age.
10. Give any two ways the discovery of fire helped early man to live in caves.
11. How was a dog useful to early man.
12. In which way did the discovery of farming help man to live a settled life?
13. Give any three ways early man obtained his food.
14. How was a bolas useful to early man?
15. Give one way the discovery of iron smelting improved early man's life.
16. Complete the table below correctly.

Ethnic group	*Origin*	*One tribe in each country*		
		Uganda	*Kenya*	*Tanzania*
(i) Bantu	----------	----------	--------	---------
(ii) ----------	----------	Sabiny	--------	---------
(iii) ----------	----------	----------	Masai	---------
(iv) Cushites	Ethiopia	----------	--------	---------

17. What is an Ethnic group?
18. State any two characteristics of an ethnic group.
19. Mention the largest ethnic group in Africa.
20. In which way did the traditional occupation of the Nilo-Hamites influence their areas of settlement?
21. Give any two reasons why the Bantu settled in the Interlacustrine region.
22. Give any three causes for the migration of the Bantu.
23. How did the migration of the Bantu into East Africa affect the Bushmen?
24. Mention any three Bantu tribes that settled on slopes of mountains in East Africa.
25. Stte any three positive effects of the migration of the Bantu in East Africa.
26. How is Pubungu important in the history of the Nilotics?
27. Which tribe under the Highland Nilotes is found in both Uganda and Kenya?
28. State any one reason why some tribes under the plain Nilotes changed from practising pastoralism to mixed farming.
29. How did Alur tribe come into existence in East Africa?
30. Which tribe under the Plain Nilotes is found in both Kenya and Tanzania?
31. How did the evolution of Uganda's boundaries affect the Sabiny?
32. State one way the immigration of the Nilotics into East Africa affected Bunyoro-Kitara empire.
33. Name the ethnic group which occupies the largest part of the West Nile region.
34. Mention any two tribes that belong to the above ethnic group.
35. Which groups of people in Africa were formerly called the following names?
   (i) Hottentots
   (ii) Bushmen
36. Mention one tribe in Africa that belongs to the Semites.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

37. Mention the largest Bantu tribe in Southern Africa.
38. Name the largest Bantu tribe to migrate into East Africa.
39. State the main reason for the migration of the tribe in (38) above.
40. State any three problems that were faced by the ethnic groups to different parts of Africa.
41. Give any two reasons why many people migrate from villages to towns.
42. State any two ways rural-urban migration affects the development of rural areas.
43. Give any three ways the government can encourage the migration of people from towns to villages.
44. Give the meaning of the term Rural electrification.
45. State any three problems facing people in most urban areas of East Africa.
46. Give the meaning of Urban-Rural migration.
47. Mention any three causes of Urban-rural migration.
48. Give any two ways people living in rural areas benefit from those who live in towns.
49. Give any two ways people living in urban areas benefit from those who live in villages.
50. State any two ways the government can improve the lives of the people living in rural areas.
51. Give one reason why the government is encouraging the construction of storeyed houses in towns.
52. Name the earliest empire to be formed in East Africa.
53. Mention any two political contributions of the Bachwezi in East Africa.
54. Give any three ways the Bachwezi contributed to the economic development of Uganda.
55. State any three factors for the collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara empire.
56. How did the big size lead to the collapse of Bunyoro-Kitara?
57. Give any two ways kingdoms are important to a country.
58. Give any two ways the people of pre-colonial Africa organised themselves socially.
59. Mention any two symbols of a clan.
60. Give any three ways clan leaders are important in our society today.
61. Mention the two types of culture.
62. Give any two ways culture is important in the community.
63. State any two ways of promoting culture in our society today.
64. Which bad cultural practice was common amongst the Sabiny?
65. What are Social activities?
66. Mention any three cultural activities that are common in our society today.
67. State any two ways social activities are important in the community.
68. Why was Barter system of trade used among pre-colonial societies in Africa?
69. What was Long distance trade?
70. Why did the Long distance traders always move in caravans?
71. Give any three ways long distance trade affected the people of East Africa.
72. What was Trans-Saharan trade?
73. Mention any two factors that led to the decline of Trans-Saharan trade.
74. Mention any three trade items that were obtained from the interior of East Africa during Long distance trade.
75. How did Long distance trade affect the population of elephants in East Africa?

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

TOPIC 6: FOREIGN INFLUENCE IN AFRICA.

- **A foreigner** is a person who comes to an area from another part of the world.
- *Influence* is the power to change or control something.
- **Foreign influence in Africa** refers to the changes that were brought about by different groups of people who came to Africa.

Groups of foreigners in Africa include;

- The traders
- Missionaries
- White settlers
- Explorers
- Colonialists

These groups originated from:

- Asia
- Europe
- America

FOREIGN TRADERS IN AFRICA.

These mainly came to carry out trade.

Groups of foreign traders in Africa.

- Arab traders from Arabia
- Indian traders from India.
- Persian traders from Persia.
- European traders from Europe.

Note:

- *Foreign traders introduced monetary system of trade in Africa.*
- *Barter trade was replaced by monetary trade.*
- *Monetary trade is the system of trade that involves the use of money as a medium of exchange.*

Foreign currencies introduced by traders in Africa.

- Cowrie shells by the Arab traders.
- Yen by the Persian traders
- Rupees by the Indian traders.

ARAB TRADERS

- This was the first group of foreigners to come to Africa.
- The Arab traders came from Arabia.
- The Arabs came to the East African coast in special boats called dhows.
- The monsoon winds helped to sail the dhows of the Arab traders across the Indian ocean.
- They settled along the coast of East Africa and formed the Zenj empire.
- The coast of East Africa was called "Land of zenj" meaning "the land of black people".
- Ahmed bin Ibrahim was the first Arab trader to come to Uganda.
- Kabaka Ssuuna II welcomed the first Arab traders to Uganda in 1844.

Reasons for the coming of the Arab traders to Africa.

- To carryout trade.
- To spread the Islamic faith.
- Some were running away from religious wars and persecution in their home country.

Examples of trade items the Arabs brought to Africa by the early Arab traders.

-guns - mirrors - gun powder -ornaments - beads -glasses - jewellery - carpets.

Examples of trade items the Arabs got from Africa by the early Arab traders.

-ostrich feathers - ivory - gold - local salt - slaves - hides -wax -iron ore - copper. etc.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Trading centres that were developed by the Arab traders in Africa.

- **Zanzibar**
- **Mombasa**
- **Kilwa**
- **Mogadishu**
- **Sofala**
- **Malindi**
- **Tanga**
- **Dar-es-salaam**

Effects of the coming of the Arab traders to Africa.

a) Positive effects

- ❖ **They introduced the Arab styles of dressing and building houses.**
- ❖ **They built coastal towns eg.Kilwa, Mombasa etc.**
- ❖ **They introduced new trade items eg. guns, clothes etc.**
- ❖ **They introduced zebu cattle.**
- ❖ **They introduced Islamic faith.**
- ❖ **They introduced new crops e.g. Cloves at Zanzibar.**
- ❖ **They introduced cowrie shells as a form of currency.**

b) Negative effects.

- ❖ **They exploited Africa's resources.**
- ❖ **It led to introduction of slave trade which caused death of people.**
- ❖ **It led to loss of culture through intermarriages e.g. Swahili culture emerged as a result of intermarriages between the Arabs and the coastal bantu people.**
- **They undermined African culture.**

Reasons why the Arabs took long to enter the interior of East Africa.

- **They feared hostile tribes like Masai.**
- **There were no proper routes to the interior of East Africa.**
- **They feared attacks from dangerous wild animals.**

Reasons why the Arabs took long to spread Islam in Africa.

- ❖ **The Arabs were more interested in trade than spreading Islam.**
- ❖ **There were very few muslim preachers in Africa.**
- ❖ **The Africans hated the Arabs for being slave traders.**
- ❖ **Arabic language was too difficult to be understood by the people of Africa.**
- ❖ **The Africans feared some Islamic practices such as circumcision, fasting etc.**

Points to note about the Foreign traders in Africa

- *The Banyans were Indians who were money lenders. They lent money to the local traders in East Africa.*
- *The Indian coolies were Indians who were brought to build the Kenya-Uganda railway.*
- ***Allidina Visram** opened up the first shop in Kampala.*

THE INDIAN TRADERS.

- **These came from India.**
- **They came into groups i.e.Banyans and Indian coolies.**
- **The Banyans was the major group of Indian traders.**
- **The Banyans used to lend money to the local traders.**
- **The Indian coolies were brought to build the Kenya-Uganda railway.**

Contributions of the Indians to the economic development of East Africa.

- **They opened up shops in East Africa e.g.Allidina Visram who started up the first shop in Kampala.**
- **The Indian coolies built the Kenya–Uganda railway.**
- **They introduced rupees as a new form of currency.**
- **The Banyans lent money to local traders.**

- They introduced Rupees as a form of currency.
- They built industries in East Africa e.g. Kakira sugar factory by Madhivan and Lugazi sugar factory by Mehta.

✓ *Note:-**The Rupees** was the second form of currency replacing the Cowrie shells.*

EUROPEAN TRADING COMPANIES IN AFRICA.

- ❖ Imperial British East Africa Company (IBEACo) led by Sir William Mackinnon.
- ❖ German East Africa Company (GEACo) led by Dr. Carl Peters.
- ❖ British South Africa Company led by Ceal Rhodes
- ❖ Royal Niger Company led by Sir George Goldie

Reasons for the formation of trading companies.

- ❖ To carry out trade.
- ❖ To set up commercial empires in Africa.
- ❖ To control African territories on behalf of their home governments.
- ❖ To protect the missionaries.

Major activities done by European trading companies.

- Trading.
- Building of transport and communication lines.
- Administration of colonial territories.

Note:

- ***Capt. Frederick Lugard** was the representative of IBEACo in Uganda.*
- *Trading companies built transport and communication lines in East Africa.*

Reasons why IBEACO ran bankrupt.

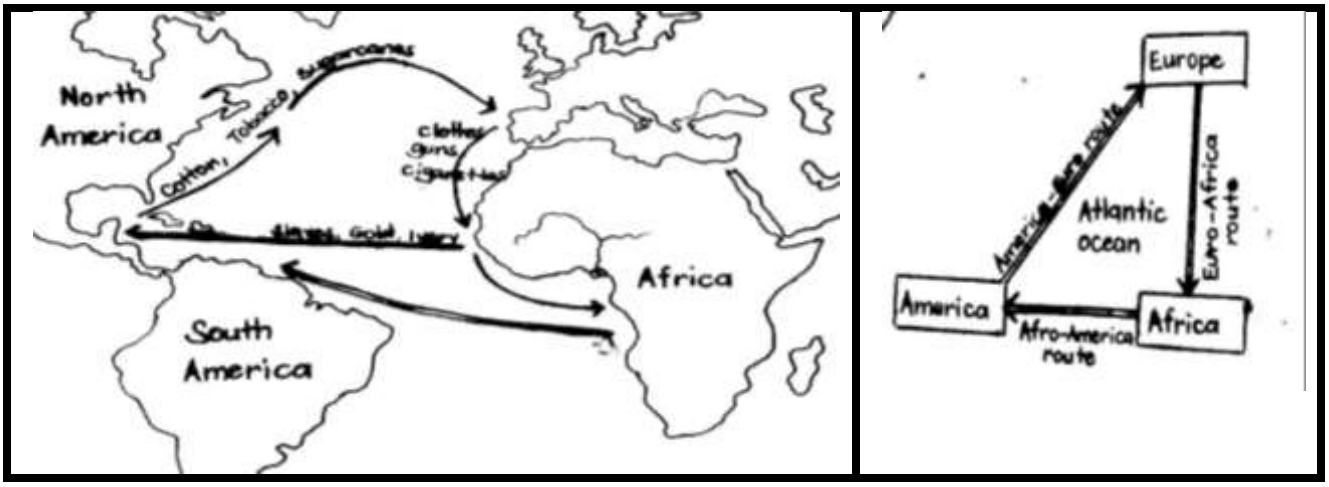
- ❖ It lacked a reliable source of income.
- ❖ It employed many personnel who needed big pay.
- ❖ It got involved in political administration which was costly.
- ❖ It controlled a too large territory.

TRANS-ATLANTIC TRADE.

- ❖ Trans-Atlantic trade was the trade carried out among the people of Africa, America and Europe across the Atlantic ocean.
- ❖ It is sometimes referred to as ***Triangular trade*** because it followed a triangular route.

Main trade routes of Triangular trade.

- Euro-Africa route.
- Afro-America route.
- America-Euro route.



Goods obtained from Africa during Triangular trade.

- Slaves.
- Gold
- Bee wax.
- Ivory
- Oil palm

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Goods obtained from America during Triangular trade.

- **Tobacco**
- **Sugarcane**
- **Cotton**
- **Silver**

Goods brought to Africa during Triangular trade.

- **Guns**
- **Glasses**
- **Clothes**
- **Cigarettes**

Factors that promoted Triangular trade.

- ❖ **Increased European participation.**
- ❖ **The industrial revolution in Europe.**
- ❖ **The presence of winds and ocean currents.**
- ❖ **Profitability of the trade to traders.**

Note:

- *Slaves were mainly taken to work on plantations of tea, sugarcane, cotton, tobacco, coffee and in mines.*
- ***Goree island*** *was the largest slave market in West Africa during Trans-Atlantic trade.*

Countries where the slaves from Africa were taken.

- **Mexico**
- **Brazil**
- **Cuba**
- **Venezuela**
- **Portugal**
- **Britain**
- **Germany**
- **Chile**
- **France**

Why the slaves were needed.

- ❖ **To serve as domestic workers in Europe.**
- ❖ **There was need for labour on plantations and in mines.**

Effects of Trans-Atlantic trade.

a) Positive effects.

- ❖ **It led to introduction of new trade items in Africa.**
- ❖ **It led to introduction of new crops like cocoa.**
- ❖ **The volume of trade increased in West Africa.**

b) Negative effects.

- ❖ **It led to exploitation of Africa's resources.**
- ❖ **It led to destruction of property through slave raids.**
- ❖ **It led to reduction of manpower in West Africa.**
- ❖ **It led to depopulation in Africa.**

CHRISTIAN MISSIONARIES IN AFRICA.

- ❖ *A missionary* **is a person who spreads his /her religion in a foreign land.**
- ❖ *A Christian missionary* **is a person who spreads Christianity in a foreign land/ country.**
- ❖ *A missionary society* **is an organisation of people with the interest of teaching a religion in a foreign country.**
- ❖ *A mission station* **is a place where people are taught about a certain religion.**

Note:

- ✓ *The Christian missionaries who came to Uganda were invited by Kabaka Muteesa I of Buganda.*
- ✓ ***Henry Morton Stanley*** *wrote a letter on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I inviting Christian missionaries to Uganda.*

Reasons why kabaka Muteesa I invited Christian missionaries.

- ***He wanted them to protect him against his enemies.***
- ***He wanted them to bring him guns to fight against his enemies.***

- ***He wanted them to promote literacy in Buganda.***
- ***He wanted them to spread Christianity in Buganda.***

Reasons for the coming of the Christian missionaries to Africa.

- ❖ To spread Christianity (main reason)
- ❖ To spread European culture.
- ❖ To spread Western civilisation.
- ❖ To suppress the spreading of Islam.
- ❖ To introduce legitimate trade/ to fight against slave trade.
- ❖ To teach people how to read and write.

Main groups of Christian missionaries that came to Africa.

- Protestant missionaries
- Catholic missionaries.

Missionary societies that worked in Africa.

Missionary society	*Origin*	*Region of Africa*	*Leader(s)*
❖ Church Missionary Society	• England	East Africa	• Johann L. Krapf • Johannes Rebmann • Jakob Erhardt
❖ Holy Ghost fathers	• France	West Africa	• Father Brachet
❖ The Society for the Propagation of the Gospel in Foreign parts.	• England		• Rev.Thomas Thompson.
❖ Church Missionary Society (CMS)	• England	West Africa (Sierra Leone)	• Rev. Renner • Peter Hartwing
❖ The Methodist Episcopal church	• America	West Africa (Liberia)	• Rev. Cox
❖ The Wesleyan Methodist Missionary Society	• England	West Africa	• Rev. Freeman
❖ The Bremen Society	• Germany	West Africa	
❖ Church of Scotland Mission	• Scotland	West Africa	
❖ The Universities Mission to Central Africa	• England	Central Africa	• Dr. David Livingstone.
❖ London Missionary Society	• England	Central Africa	• Roger Price
❖ The Paris Evangelical Missionary Society	• France	Central Africa	
❖ The Church of Scotland Mission	• Scotland	Central Africa	
❖ The White Fathers		Central Africa	• Father Van Cost
❖ The Paris Evangelical Missionary Society	• France	Southern Africa	• Gosselin
❖ London Missionary Society	• England	Southern Africa	• John Smith

Note:

- *The above missionary societies sponsored / funded the journeys of Christian missionaries to Africa.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Notable Christian missionaries in Africa with their contributions.

Missionary	Contribution(s)
Alexander Mackay 	• He was the leader of the church missionary society in Uganda. • He was a carpenter, builder, and teacher. • He introduced the first printing press in Uganda. • The printing press was used to print reading materials and prayer books. • He taught practical and vocational skills like carpentry and joinery.
Dr. Albert Cook	• He built Mengo hospital.(the first hospital in Uganda) • He treated people suffering from sleeping sickness on the shores of lake Victoria.
Kenneth Borup	• He introduced the fast growing cotton seeds in Uganda. This cotton was called the American upland cotton.
Robert Ashe	• He introduced the first bicycle in Uganda.
Bishop Alfred Tucker	• He mobilized funds from Europe to support the activities of IBEACo, when it had run bankrupt.
Johann Ludwig Krapf 	• He was the first missionary to come to East Africa in 1844. • He was later joined by Johannes Rebmann in 1846. • Krapf built the first mission station in East Africa at Rabai Mpya near Mombasa in Kenya. • Rabai Mpya acted as a base for missionary activities like;Bible reading, Bible translation, music rehersals, training of catechists(clergymen) etc. • Krapf wrote the first Swahili dictionary. • Krapf translated the New testament Bible into Kiswahili language. He wanted to ease Bible reading, communication and hymn book reading. Note:-*Krapf became the first European to see mountain Kenya and river Tana.*
Johannes Rebmann	• He greatly influenced the lives of the Chagga. • He became the first European to see mountain Kilimanjaro.
Jakob Erhardt	• He attempted to draw the first map of East Africa.
Dr Steer	• He built homes for the freed slaves in Zanzibar. • He built a cathedral at Zanzibar.
Dr. David Livingstone. 	• He strongly opposed slave trade in East Africa and Central Africa. • He helped in ending slave trade in Africa through writing negative reports to his home government about the evils of slave trade. • He died of malaria in 1873 at Chitambo's village near lake Bangweulu in Zambia. • Susi and Chuma were his two faithful servants who carried his body to the East African coast. • He was buried at Westminster Abbey, a burial place for prominent people in England.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Problems faced by the Christian missionaries in Africa.

- **Attacks from dangerous wild animals.**
- **Attacks from hostile people.**
- **Shortage of supplies like food, medicine.**
- **Difficulty in communication with the local people.**
- **Opposition from the Arabs.**
- **They walked long and tiresome distances due to poor transport.**
- **Difficulty in crossing some physical features like lakes and rivers.**

Effects of missionary work in Africa.

a) Positive effects.

- **Missionaries introduced new crops e.g. cotton.**
- **They spread Christianity in Africa.**
- **They introduced formal education.**
- **They introduced modern drugs.**
- **They built schools eg. Namilyango College in 1902, Gayaza High school by the CMS in 1904, Mengo High School by the CMS in 1898, King's College Budo by the CMS in 1906, St.Mary's College Kisubi by the White fathers in 1906 etc.**
- **They built hospitals eg. Mengo hospital, Nsambya hospital, Rubaga hospital, Lacor hospital etc.**
- **They taught people practical skills eg carpentry, building, agriculture.**
- **They helped in ending slave trade in Africa.**
- **They discouraged bad cultural beliefs e.g. The Igbo in Nigeria considered twins as evil.**

b) Negative effects.

- **Missionaries paved way for colonisation of Africa.**
- **They preached against African cultures.**
- **It led to division among people through religion.**
- **It led to religious wars.**

Note:

- *Reading ,Writing, Arithmetic and Religious education were the subjects taught in early missionary schools.*
- *Formal education is the type of education which replaced informal education.*
- *Namilyango college was the first boarding school to be built by the Christian missionaries in Uganda.(by the Mill Hill fathers in 1902)*

Activities done by missionaries in Africa.

- **Evangelism**
- **Building of educational institutions.**
- **Building of churches and hospitals.**
- **Opening up of mission stations.**
- **Practical skills development such as carpentry, building.**

How missionary work led to colonisation of Africa.

- **Missionary teachings caused divisions among people which weakened the African societies.**
- **Missionary teachings softened the hearts of the Africans which made them warmly welcome the colonialists.**
- **Missionaries called their home governments for protection in case of attacks.**
- **They acted as interpreters for the Africans and the colonialists.**
- **They signed treaties which were used by the colonialists to take over colonies.**

EUROPEAN EXPLORERS IN AFRICA

- *An explorer* is a person who travels to foreign places in order to find out more about them.
- Most Explorers who came to Uganda came from Europe.
- Most European explorers who came to Uganda wanted to find the source of River Nile
- Most European explorers who came to Uganda were sponsored by by the Royal Geographical Society (RGS).

Reasons for the coming of European explorers to Africa.

- To study the geography of Africa.
- To find out the shortest sea route to the far East.
- To find trade opportunities in Africa.
- To open up way for the coming of the colonialists.

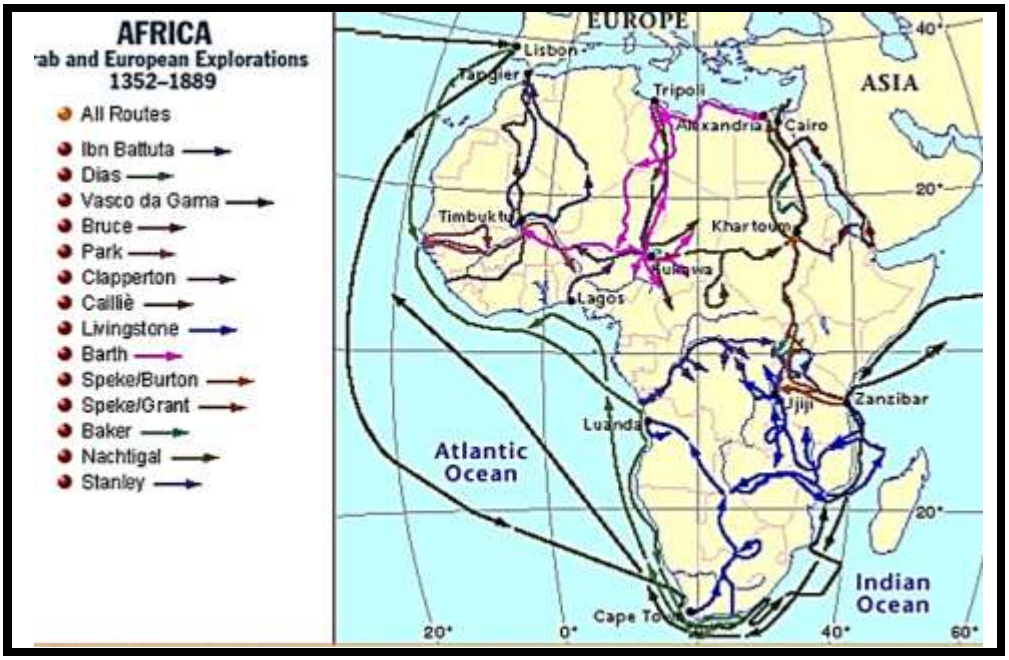
Organisations which sponsored explorers' journeys to Africa.

- Royal Geographical Society (RGS)
- African Association.

Early explorers in Africa

East Africa	*West Africa*	*Southern and Central Africa*
• John Hanning Speke • Henry Morton Stanley • Joseph Thomson • Richard Burton • James Grant • Sir Samuel Baker • Vasco da Gama • Count Teleki • Jakob Erhardt • Johannes Rebmann • Johann Ludwig Krapf.	• Mungo Park • Richard Lander • John Lander • Rene Caillie • Hugh Clapperton • Dr. Heinrich Barth • Gaspard Mollen • Major Laing • *De Brazza*	• Dr. David Livingstone.

EUROPEAN EXPLORERS IN AFRICA

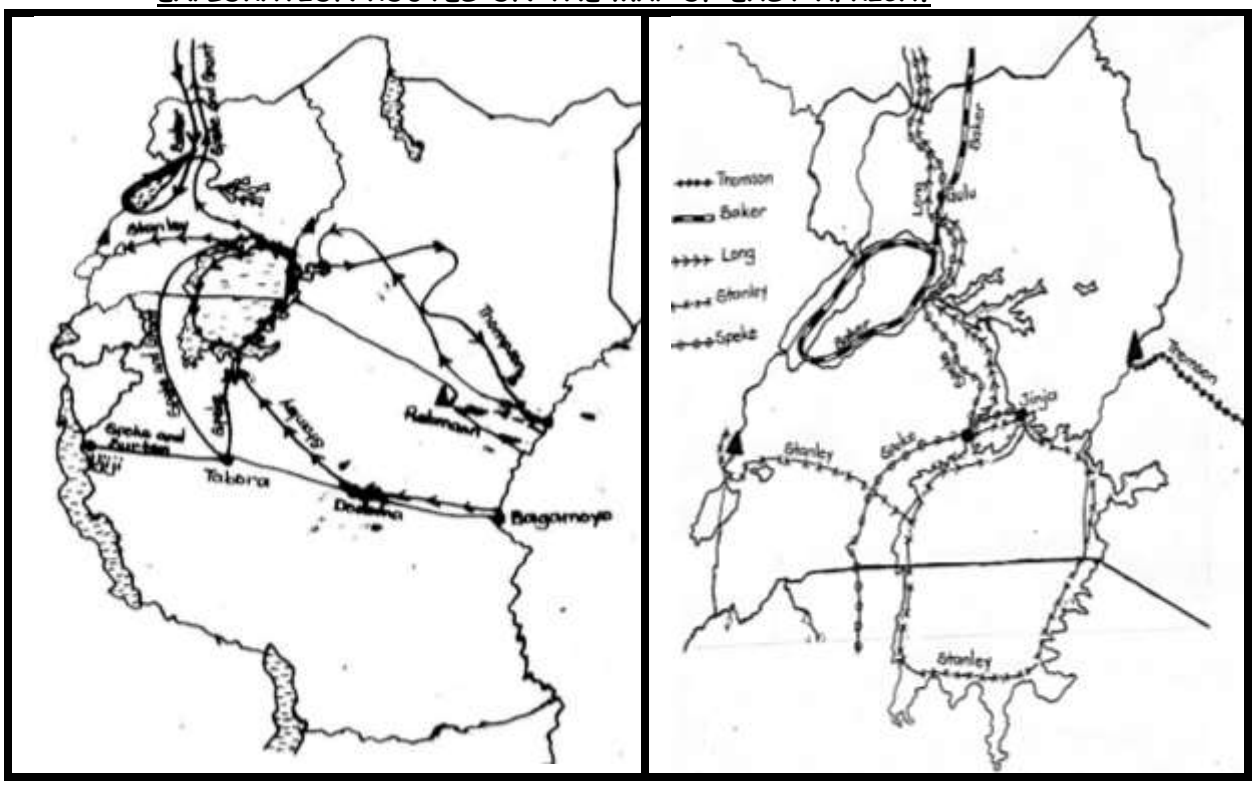




John and Richard Lander

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

EXPLORATION ROUTES ON THE MAP OF EAST AFRICA.

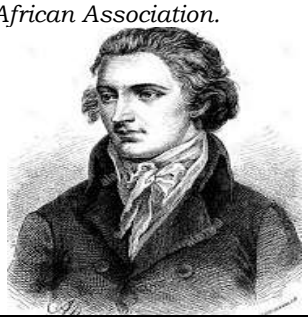


Major discoveries made by famous European explorers in Africa

John Hanning Speke *From England.* *With Burton in 1857* *With Grant in 1860* 	• **Lake Victoria** • **The source of River Nile.** • **Ripon falls** **Note** - *John Speke was the first European explorer to come to Uganda (in 1862).* - *He named the **Ripon falls** at the source of river Nile after Lord Murchison who was the president of the RGS by then.* - *He also named **lake Victoria** after Queen Victoria of England.*
Richard Burton *(from England)* **and** John Speke 	• **Lake Tanganyika** ❖ **They were sent by the Royal Geographical Society to find the source of river Nile** ❖ **They entered into East Africa through Bagamoyo, via Tabora to Ujiji on lake Tanganyika.** ❖ **On their return, Burton fell sick and remained at Tabora. Speke continued northwards and came across a great water body which he believed to be the source of River Nile.**

James grant and John Speke. 	❖ **The two were sent to find the source of river Nile.** ❖ **While at Karagwe,Grant fell sick and remained at Karagwe under the care of king Rumanika who welcomed them to his kingdom.** ❖ **Speke moved northwards and entered into Buganda.** ❖ **He was welcomed by Kabaka Muteesa I in 1862.** ❖ **Speke gave gifts of clothes, rifles, knives and beads to the king.** ❖ **Speke moved eastwards and reached the source of River Nile on 28th July, 1862.** ❖ **Speke was later joined by Grant ant the two followed river Nile moving towards its mouth in the North.** ❖ **They met another explorer called Sir Samuel Baker at Gondokoro in Sudan.**
Sir Samuel Baker. *From England* 	• **Murchison falls** • **Lake Albert** ***Note:*** ✓ *John Speke and James Grant met Sir Samuel Baker at Gondokoro in South Sudan.* ✓ *Baker with his wife Jane Baker wanted to find the source of River Nile from its mouth in Egypt.* ✓ *He saw and named lake albert in 1864.* ✓ ***Lake Albert** was named after the husband of Queen Victoria of England.* ✓ *He saw and named the **Murchison falls** after the president of RGS.*
Henry Morton Stanley *A Welsh from Wales* 	• **Mountain Rwenzori.** • **Lake George.** • **Lake Edward.** ***Note:*** ❖ **Stanley came to Africa in three different occasions.** **<u>Stanley's 1st journey in 1871.</u>** ❖ **He came to look for Dr. David Livingstone.** ❖ **He was sponsored by two newspapers namely;-** - **Daily telegraph.** - **New York Herald tribune.** **<u>Stanley's 2nd journey in 1874.</u>** **He was sent to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **He used his canoe he had named Lady Alice to circumnavigate lake Victoria.** **Henry Morton Stanley circumnavigated lake Victoria to prove whether lake Victoria was the source of River Nile.** ❖ **In 1875, Henry Morton Stanley reached Kabaka Muteesa I's palace and requested him to allow missionaries to come to Uganda.**

	❖ **On Kabaka's request, Henry Morton Stanley wrote a letter on behalf of Kabaka Muteesa I inviting Christian missionaries to come to Uganda.** ❖ **The letter was taken by <u>Linant de Bellefonds.</u> And it appeared in the Daily Telegraph newspaper.** **Note:** ✓ ***Linant de Bellefonds*** *arrived in the Kabaka's palace in April 1875. This is where he also met Henry Morton Stanley.* ✓ *He collaborated with Stanley's idea of inviting the missionaries.* ✓ *Bellefonds was killed in Sudan on 26th August 1875 and the letter was sent to* ***Charles Gordon****, the governor of the Equatorial province, who sent it to the Queen of England.* **Henry Morton Stanley then moved westwards and saw Mountain Rwenzori and named it "the mountains of the moon" This was because of the snow on its peak which glitters like a moon.** ❖ **He also saw and named lake Edward and lake George.** ❖ **He then continued westwards through Democratic Republic of Congo and returned to Europe.** **<u>Stanley's 3rd journey (1887-1890).</u>** ❖ **He came to rescue Emin Pasha from the Equatorial province.**
Joseph Thomson *From Scotland* 	• **Mountain Elgon** • **Lake Nakuru.** • **Lake Baringo.** **Note:** ✓ *Thomson was sent to find the shortest route from the coast to lake Victoria.* ✓ *Thomson was the first European to cross the Nandi and Masai land successfully.*
Johann Ludwig Krapf *From Germany*	• **Mountain Kenya** • **River Tana**
Johannes Rebmann *From Germany in 1846*	• **Mountain Kilimanjaro**
Jakob Erhardt	• **He attempted to draw the first map of East Africa.**
Dr. David Livingstone *From Scotland.*	• **River Zambezi** • **Victoria falls along river Zambezi.** • **Lake Mweru along the border of Zambia and DRC.** • **Lake Bangweulu in Zambia** • **Lake Nyasa (Malawi)** • **River Lualaba** **Note:** ✓ *Livingstone was a doctor, an explorer and a missionary.*

	✓ *He was the greatest explorer in Africa because he spent a lot of his life time exploring the African continent from 1841 till his death in 1873.*
James Bruce *From Scotland.*	• **Blue Nile** • **Lake Tana**
Mungo Park *From Scotland, sent by the African Association.* 	• **He was the first European explorer to see river Gambia in 1795.** • **He was tracing the mouth of river Niger.** • **He drowned and died at Bussa rapids in 1806** • **He made a report on natural resources, people and transport on river Niger.**
Richard Lander and John Lander *From Britain*	• **To continue with Mungo park's exploration of river Niger.** • **They were the first European explorers to see the mouth of river Niger.** **Note:** ✓ *Richard Lander died in West Africa.* ✓ *John Lander made a report on the possibilities of trade in West Africa.*
Major Gordon Laing *From Britain.* *He was killed in 1826 after Timbuktu*	• **He was the first European explorer to locate the source of river Niger.** • **He was the first European to cross the Sahara from North to South.**
Rene Caille *From France in 1827*	• **River Senegal** • **Fouta Djallon hills.**
Dr. Heinrich Barth	• **Adamawa highlands in Cameroon.**
Hugh Clapperton *From Scotland.*	• **He travelled from Tripoli across the Sahara desert and died Of malaria and dysentery in West Africa.**
Mary Henrietta Kingsley 	• **She was the first European explorer to see and climb mountain Cameroon.** • **She made three different journeys to Africa.** • **She wrote a book revealing how slave traders mistreated the Africans in West Africa.** • **She carried out exploration work in West Africa, Central Africa and Southern Africa.**
Charles Chaille Long (*from America*)	❖ **He was the first European to see lake Kyoga.** • **He arrived in Buganda in 1874 and became the second European explorer to see Lake Victoria.**

<u>Notable facts about explorers in East Africa.</u>

✓ ***<u>Vasco da Gama</u>*** *was the first European explorer to come to East Africa.*

✓ *John Speke and Richard Burton were the first European explorers to travel to the interior of East Africa.*

✓ *The Portuguese were the first explorers to come to East Africa.*

- ✓ ***Bartholomew Diaz*** *was the first European explorer to sail around Africa up to the Cape of Good Hope.*
- ✓ *Africa was referred to as "**a white man's graveyard**" because many Europeans died of malaria in West Africa.*

Why most European explorers who came to the interior of East Africa entered through Bagamoyo.

- ✓ *There was a direct route from Bagamoyo to the interior of East Africa.*
- ✓ *The route through Bagamoyo had friendly people.*

Qn: *Why was it difficult for explorers who travelled to Uganda to pass through Kenya?*

Why most European explorers who came to the interior of East Africa first went to Zanzibar.

- ✓ *To learn Kiswahili language.*
- ✓ *To get permission from the sultan of Zanzibar.*
- ✓ *To get porters to carry their supplies.*

THE PORTUGUESE EXPLORERS.

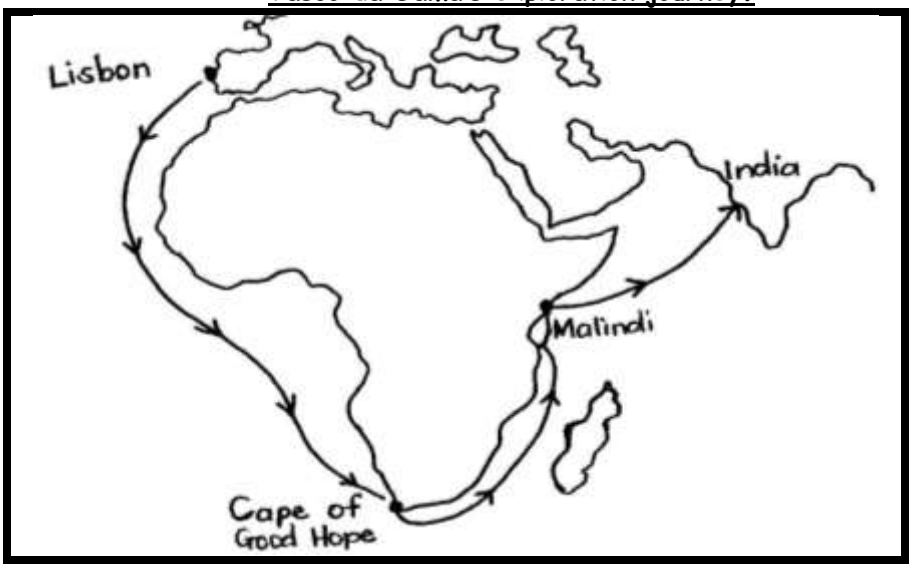
- **The Portuguese were the first explorers to come to Africa.**
- **The Portuguese explorers wanted to find the shortest sea route to India.**
- ***Prince Henry the navigator*** **sponsored the journeys of most Portuguese explorers to Africa.**
- **He also started a school for navigation at Sagres which trained navigators.**
- **The Portuguese wanted to find the shortest sea route to India because they wanted to get silk and spices from the far East.**

Portuguese explorers who came to East Africa.

Bartholomew Diaz	• **He reached the Cape of Good Hope in South Africa in 1488.** • **He was unable to continue due to shortage of supplies, so he went back to Portugal.**
Pedro da Covilla	• **He travelled over the African continent from the North.** • **He sailed down the Red sea and followed the Arabs' trade route up to Sofala.**
Vasco da Gama 	• **He was sent to continue from where Bartholomew Diaz had reached.** • **He sailed from Lisbon, Portugal in 1497 and reached Calcutta, India on 20th May 1498.** • **Da Gama became the first Portuguese sailor to find a sea route to India.** • **He named the Cape of Good Hope because he had got hope of reaching India.** **Note:** • ***The Arabs along the East African coast didn't welcome Vasco da Gama because:*** ❖ *They hated Christianity which the Europeans were spreading.* ❖ *They thought that the Europeans would interfere with their trade.* ***Sultan Seyyid Ali of Malindi*** *welcomed Vasco da Gama. He gave him an Indian captain called* ***Ahmed bin Majid*** *to direct his ships to India.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Vasco da Gama's exploration journey.



PORTUGUESE CONQUEST OF THE EAST AFRICAN COAST.

- The Portuguese established their headquarters in Mozambique and Mombasa was their major coastal town.
- They divided their empire into provinces for easy administration, and each province was under the rule of a Governor.
- The Portuguese introduced Christianity which caused a lot of hatred from the coastal people who were already under Arab influence.
- The Portuguese administrators were very harsh, corrupt, over taxed traders and always isolated themselves from the natives.
- They controlled the East African coast for 200 years and their rule declined.

Why the Portuguese conquered the East African coast.

(Why the Portuguese came and settled along the East African coast)

- They wanted to control the profitable trade along the coast of East Africa.
- They wanted to create a resting base for their sailors.
- They wanted to fight Muslims domination in East Africa.
- The East African coast had good natural harbours for trade and defense.
- They wanted to control the coastal states and make them pay tributes to Portugal.

Why the Portuguese succeeded in conquering the East African coast.

- The Portuguese had superior weapons.
- They had well trained soldiers.
- They used surprise night attacks.
- Disunity among the coastal towns.

Reasons for the decline of the Portuguese rule in East Africa.

- Corrupt Portuguese officials.
- Poor communication with the home government.
- The Portuguese administrators along the coast were very few.
- The coming of the British and the French also weakened their rule.

Effects of Portuguese rule along the coast.

a) Positive effects.

- They built Fort Jesus which is now a major tourist attraction.
- They spread Christianity along the coast.
- They introduced new crops e.g. Pawpaws, pineapples.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- **They introduced new methods of farming.**
- **East Africa was linked to Europe and India.**

Note:

- ✓ *Fort Jesus was built for protection against enemies.*
- ✓ *Fort Jesus still stands today as an important historical monument which attracts tourists.*

b) Negative effects.

- **It led to decline of coastal trade.**
- **They imposed heavy taxes on traders which decreased trade.**
- **It led to destruction of coastal towns e.g. Kilwa and Mombasa which were burnt.**

Effects of the coming of European explorers to Africa.

- **Africa was made known to the rest of the world.**
- **They renamed physical features e.g. Lake Victoria instead of Nalubaale.**
- **They paved way for the coming of the missionaries and the colonialists.**

How exploration work led to European colonisation of Africa.

- **Explorers made reports about the rich natural resources of Africa which attracted the colonialists.**

Problems that were faced by the European explorers in Africa.

- **Walking long and tiresome journeys.**
- **Attacks from dangerous animals.**
- **Shortage of supplies like food, medicine.**
- **Attacks from tropical diseases.**
- **Attacks from hostile people.**
- **Difficulty in communication with the natives.**

COLONIALISTS IN AFRICA.

- ***Colonialism*** **is the practice by which a powerful / superior country controls weaker / inferior country.**
- ***A colonialist*** **is a person who controls an inferior country on behalf of his home country.**
- ***A colony*** **is a country which is controlled and developed by a powerful country with an aim of having permanent settlement.**
- ***A protectorate*** **is a country which is controlled and protected by a powerful country for economic gains with no aim of having permanent settlement.**

Qn: *How is a Colony different from a Protectorate?*

Reasons for the coming of the colonialists to Africa.

- **They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.**
- **They wanted to invest their surplus capital.**
- **They wanted to find market for their processed goods.**
- **To get more space for resettling excess population.**
- **The desire for political pride.**

Industrial revolution in Europe.

- **This was the time when there was great change in production of goods from hand tools to power machines.**

How industrial revolution led to colonisation of Africa.

- **It increased need for raw materials.**
- **It increased need for market for industrial goods.**
- **It increased need to invest surplus capital.**
- **It increased need for land for expansion of industries.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: **+256771623617 / +256700770630**

Colonial powers that had colonies in Africa.

- **Great Britain**
- **France**
- **Portugal**
- **Italy**
- **Germany**
- **Spain**
- **Belgium**

NB: ***France*** *had the biggest number of colonies in Africa.*

THE SCRAMBLE FOR AND PARTITION OF AFRICA.

- ***Scramble for Africa*** **was the struggle among European countries to have territories in Africa.**
- ***Partition of Africa*** **was the peaceful sharing of African territories amongst European powers.**

European countries which scrambled for African territories.

- **Great Britain**
- **France**
- **Germany**
- **Portugal**
- **Spain**
- **Italy**
- **Belgium**

Reasons for scramble for Africa.

- **They wanted to get raw materials for their home industries.**
- **They wanted to invest their surplus capital.**
- **They wanted to find market for their processed goods.**
- **To get more space for resettling excess population.**
- **The desire for political pride.**

The BERLIN CONFERENCE OF 1884

- **This was a meeting in which European countries with interest in colonising Africa discussed the partition of Africa.**
- **The conference was held in Berlin, Germany.**
- **It was called by king Leopold II of Belgium.**
- **The Berlin conference was chaired by Chancellor Otto Von Bismarck.**
- **It was held purposely to find peaceful means of partitioning Africa (sharing African territory amongst European powers).**

Effects of Partition of Africa.

- **It led to creation of new states.**
- **Africans lost their independence.**
- **Some people lost their historical origin.**
- **It led to separation of communities.**

Colonies in Africa.

- ***A colony*** **is a country which is controlled and developed by a powerful country with an aim of having permanent settlement.**
- **Cape colony was the first colony to be established in Africa.**
- **It was established by the Dutch.**

Colonies in Africa.

- **Kenya**
- **Zimbabwe**
- **Angola**
- **Mozambique.**
- **South Africa**

Note:

- ***Anglophone states in Africa*** *are countries that were colonized by Britain. Such countries use English as their official language.*

They include; Uganda, Kenya, South Africa, Nigeria, Ghana etc.

- ***Francophone states in Africa*** *are countries that were colonized by the France. Such countries use French as their official language.*

They include; Senegal, Madagascar, Benin, Mali, Algeria etc.

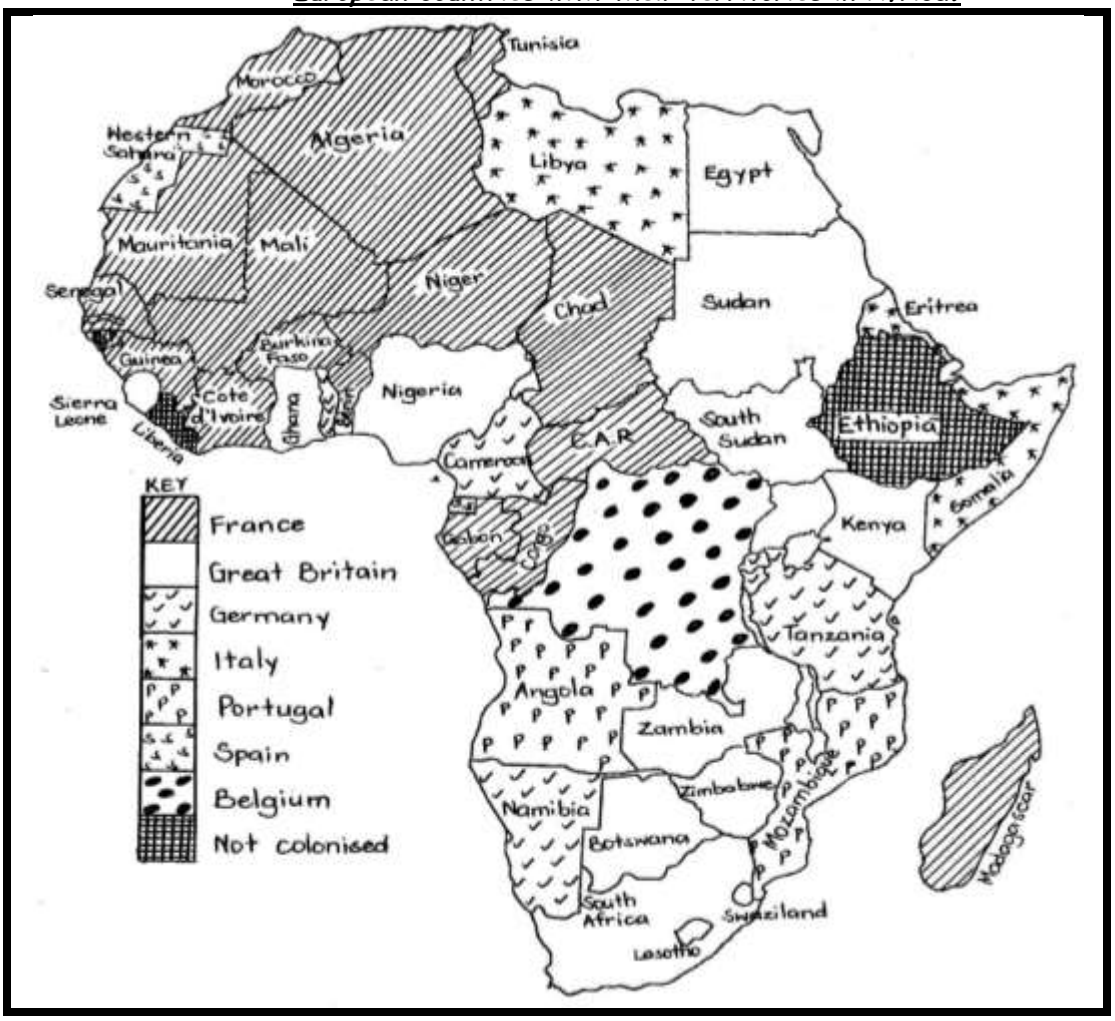
European territories in Africa.

Great Britain	***France***	***Germany***	***Portugal***	***Italy***
• Uganda • Kenya • Zambia • Egypt • Botswana • South Africa • Sudan • Nigeria • Zimbabwe • Zambia • Malawi • Lesotho • Ghana • Eswatini • Sierra Leone	• Morocco • Algeria • Tunisia • Mali • Madagascar • Gabon • Congo Brazzaville • Gambia • Algeria • Burkina Faso • Benin • Cote d'Ivoire • Central African Republic • Comoros • Guinea • Djibouti • Niger • Mauritius	• Tanzania • Rwanda • Burundi • Namibia • Cameroon • Togo	• Mozambique • Angola • Cape Verde • Sao Tome and Principe. • Guinea Bissau	• Somalia • Eritrea • Libya
Spain •Western Sahara •Equatorial Guinea	**Belgium** •Democratic Republic of Congo			
Not colonized (empire free states) Liberia Ethiopia	❖ Liberia was a land for freed slaves. ❖ Ethiopia had a strong army which resisted against colonial rule. Note: ✓ *The mountainous nature of Ethiopia provided hiding places for Ethiopian soldiers.* ✓ ***Emperor Menelik II*** *(1889-1913) and* ***Emperor Haile Selassie*** *(1930-1974) of Ethiopia resisted against Italian occupation of Ethiopia.*			

African countries and their colonial names.

Country	*Colonial name.*
Uganda	Uganda Protectorate
Kenya	British East Africa
Tanzania	German East Africa
Democratic Republic of Congo	Belgian Congo
Ghana	Gold Coast
Cote d'Ivoire	Ivory Coast
Togo	French Togoland
Zambia	Northern Rhodesia
Zimbabwe	Southern Rhodesia
Burkina Faso	French Upperland
Sudan	Anglo-Egyptian Sudan
Benin	Dahomey

European countries with their territories in Africa.



ESTABLISHMENT OF COLONIAL RULE IN AFRICA.

Methods used by the colonialists to establish their rule in Africa.

- Use of military force.
- Through signing agreements / treaties.
- Through divide and rule policy (fueling existing misunderstandings)
- Use of trading companies like IBEACo, GEACo.
- Use of African collaborators.

Problems faced during the establishment of colonial rule

- Limited funds.
- African resistance.
- Absence of a centralised system of administration in some areas.
- Difficulty in communication with the African natives.
- Tribal wars in some communities.

a) Signing of treaties.

- A treaty is a formal agreement between two or more people.
- Treaties were signed in areas where the African natives voluntarily accepted colonial rule.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Colonial agreements that were signed in Uganda.

- **The 1894 Protectorate treaty**
- **The 1900 Buganda agreement**
- **The 1900 Tooro agreement.**
- **The 1901 Ankole agreement.**
- **The 1933 Bunyoro agreement.**

The 1900 Buganda agreement

Year of signing	❖ **1900**
Signatories	➢ **Apollo Kaggwa on behalf of Buganda kingdom.** ➢ **Sir Harry Johnston on behalf of the British protectorate government.** **Note:** ➢ ***Kabaka Daudi Chwa*** *didn't sign the 1900 Buganda agreement because he was still an infant.* ➢ ***Kabaka Mwanga*** *didn't sign this agreement because he was still in exile.* ➢ *Kabaka Daudi Chwa ruled Buganda with the help of the regents.* ➢ ***A Regent*** *is a person who is appointed to rule on behalf of an infant king.* ***Regents of Kabaka Daudi Chwa.*** ▪ *Sir Apollo Kaggwa* ▪ *Stanslas Mugwanya* ▪ *Zakaria Kisingiri*
Terms of the agreement	❖ **Taxation** ❖ **Land** ❖ **Governance**
Recommendations	❖ **Kabaka's powers were to be reduced.** ❖ **Hut and gun taxes were to be introduced.** ❖ **Buganda kingdom was to be enlarged and divided into 20 counties.** ❖ **The Lukiiko was to be given more powers.** ❖ **Buganda's land was to be divided into Mailo and Crown land.** ❖ **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was to be changed to His Highness.** ❖ **The number of members on the Lukiiko was to be increased.** **Note:** ✓ *Mailo land was given to the kabaka while Crown land was given to the British protectorate government in this agreement.* ***Why the British colonialists had to be given the crown land.*** ✓ *To get land for building schools, hospitals, churches, administrative offices etc.*
Effects	❖ **Kabaka's were reduced and were given to the Lukiiko.** ❖ **Hut and gun taxes were introduced.** ❖ **Buganda's land was divided into Mailo and crown land.** ❖ **Buganda kingdom was enlarged and divided into 20 counties.** ❖ **The number of members on the Lukiiko increased.** ❖ **Kabaka's title of His Majesty was changed to His Highness.**

b) Use of military force.

- **Military force was used in areas where the natives resisted against colonial rule.**

e.g.-By Colonel Henry Colville against Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro. Colville was helped by Semei Kakungulu.

-By Sir Fredrick Jackson against chief Awich of Payera in Acholi.

c) Divide and rule policy

e.g. between Tooro and Bunyoro.

Qn: *How was Captain Frederick Lugard helpful to Omukama Kasagama of Tooro?*

❖ **Lugard restored Omukama Kasagama onto his throne.**

COLONIAL ADMINISTRATIVE SYSTEMS.

Methods used by the colonialists to administer Africa.

- **Direct rule**
- **Indirect rule**
- **Assimilation policy**

i) ***Direct rule***

- **This was the system of administration where the colonialists ruled the natives directly by themselves.**
- **Under this system, the colonialists collected taxes directly from the natives and also supervised the growing of cash crops.**
- **The German colonialists used Direct rule to administer Tanzania.**

Reasons why Direct rule was used.

❖ **The colonialists wanted to promote their culture.**
❖ **They wanted to show their superiority over the Africans.**
❖ **They wanted to exploit resources of their countries of control.**

Effects of Direct rule

a) On the Africans

❖ **Local leaders lost control over their territories.**
❖ **It led to over exploitation of Africa's resources.**
❖ **It limited the provision of social services.**
❖ **It was harsh and oppressive to the natives.**

b) On the Colonialists.

❖ **It increased rebellions against colonial rule.**
❖ **It increased colonial expenditure.**
❖ **It increased enmity between the Africans and the colonialists.**
❖ **It made it very difficult for some colonial policies to be implemented.**

ii) ***Indirect rule.***

- **This was the system of colonial administration where local leaders were used to rule the natives on behalf of the colonialists.**
- **Local leaders encouraged and supervised the growing of cash crops and collected taxes on behalf of the colonialists.**
- **It was mainly used by the British in Uganda, Ghana, Nigeria, etc.**

Reasons why the colonialists used Indirect rule.

❖ **To control rebellions against colonial rule.**
❖ **It was cheap in terms of paying local leaders.**
❖ **They wanted to increase manpower for the colonialists.**
❖ **They wanted to ease communication with their subjects.**

Advantages of Indirect rule.

a) To the Africans.

❖ **Local leaders learnt new methods of administration.**
❖ **It preserved the cultural practices of the natives.**
❖ **Kingdoms and chiefdoms were retained.**

b) To the Colonialists.

- ❖ It was cheap to pay local leaders.
- ❖ It reduced rebellions against colonial rule.
- ❖ It made communication between the natives and the colonialists easy.

Disadvantages of Indirect rule.

- ❖ It promoted hatred by the natives towards local leaders.
- ❖ It caused divisions among the natives.
- ❖ Native leaders were used as puppets by the colonialists.

ASSIMILATION POLICY.

- ❖ It was mainly used by the French in Senegal.
- ❖ The French aimed at turning the people in French colonies into French citizens.
- ❖ The natives in these colonies were made to speak French, adopt French education system and the French dressing style and were also given membership in the parliament of France.
- ❖ The natives lost their culture and identity as a result of this administrative system.

THE WHITE SETTLERS IN AFRICA.

- *European settlers* are groups of people who came from Europe and settled in different parts of the world.
- *Consuls* were military officers who were given the responsibility of guarding European interests in Africa.

Examples of Consuls.

- Captain Frederick Lugard in Uganda, Nigeria and Ghana.
- Cecil Rhodes and Joseph Moffat in Central Africa.

Examples of Settler colonies in Africa.

- ❖ Cape colony.(by the Dutch colonialists)
- ❖ Kenya (by the British colonialists)
- ❖ Angola (by the Portuguese colonialists)
- ❖ Zimbabwe (by the British colonialists)
- ❖ Mozambique (by the Portuguese colonialists)
- ❖ South Africa (by the Dutch and the British colonialists)

Reasons for the coming of the European / White settlers

- ❖ To find areas with fertile soils for crop growing.
- ❖ To exploit the natural wealth of Africa.
- ❖ They wanted to open up industries in Africa.
- ❖ They wanted to get more land for resettling excess population.

Effects of the coming of the white settlers.

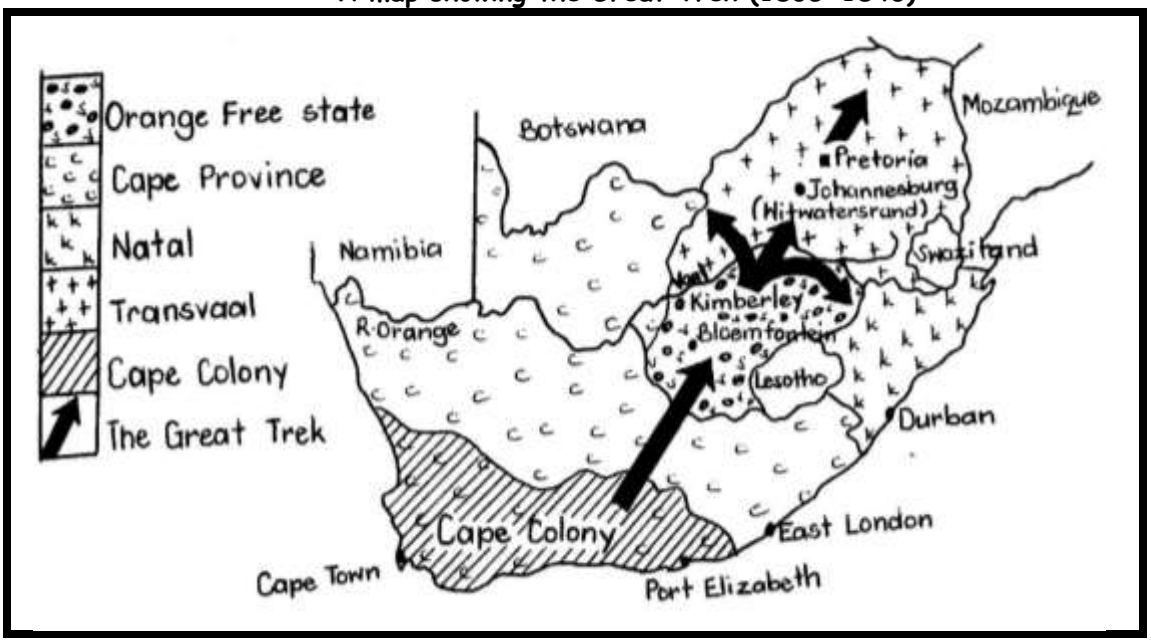
- ❖ It led to displacement of the natives e.g. The kikuyu were displaced from the Kenya highlands.
- ❖ It led to outbreak of rebellions e.g. Mau Mau rebellion.
- ❖ Africans lost their fertile land to the white settlers.
- ❖ It led to over exploitation of Africa's resources.
- ❖ There was a lot of discrimination among the African natives.
- ❖ It increased enmity between the natives and the white settlers.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

THE DUTCH AND THE BRITISH IN SOUTH AFRICA.

- The Dutch settlers came to live in Cape colony when their ship called *Haarlem* hit a rock and sank in the Atlantic Ocean.
- Most of the survivors swam to the shore where they built temporary houses and cultivated the land at the *Cape of Good Hope.*
- The Cape of Good Hope became known as the *Cape colony*.
- *Cape colony* was the first colony to be founded in Africa.
- *Jan Van Riebeeck* set off from Texel in the Netherlands on 24th Dec, 1651 for the Cape of Good Hope. He arrived at the Cape of Good Hope on 6th April,1652.
- Jan Van Riebeeck encouraged the Dutch settlers in South Africa.
- The Dutch farmers were also known as the *Boers* which means *farmers.*
- The Boers introduced the growing of grape vines for wine making.
- In 1805, The British went to South Africa to colonise it and control the sea route to India.
- In 1835, The British fought and defeated the Dutch (Boers). The Boers were forced to move to the interior of South Africa through a journey called the *Great Trek*.
- ***-Great trek was the massive migration of the Boers from Cape colony to the interior of South Africa.***

A map showing the Great Trek (1835-1846)



Causes of the Great trek.

- Constant attacks from the British.
- Introduction of new land laws.
- Introduction of English as an official language at the Cape.
- Conflicts over land ownership with the British.
- Freeing of the Khokhoi who were slaves by the British.
- Loss of independence by the Boers to the British.

States created by the Dutch farmers (Boers)

- Cape colony.
- Transvaal
- Orange Free state.

NB-*Transvaal means "**across the Vaal river**".*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Effects of the Great trek.

- **It led to creation of new states.**
- **Africans lost their land to the Boers.**
- **Population increased in the interior of South Africa.**
- **It led to introduction of modern farming systems in the interior of South Africa.**
- **It led to discovery of minerals in the interior of South Africa.**

e.g. Gold at Witwatersrand, diamond at Kimberley.

- **It led to apartheid policy in South Africa.**

NB- *The intermarriages between the blacks and the whites in South Africa resulted into the Coloureds.*

APARTHEID POLICY IN SOUTH AFRICA.

- ***Apartheid*** **is to the segregation of people according to their races / skin colour.**
- **Apartheid refers to racial segregation.**
- **In Africa, apartheid was mainly practiced in South Africa.**
- **Apartheid was introduced by the descendants of the Dutch farmers in South Africa. (The Afrikaners)**
- ***Jan Van Riebeeck*** **was the leader of the Dutch farmers in South Africa.**
- **The Boers regarded Africans as an inferior race and mistreated them.**
- **The British took over the Cape colony in 1805.**
- **They defeated the Boers at the Cape in 1835. The Boers were forced to move from Cape colony to the interior of South Africa in a journey called the *Great trek*.**
- **Apartheid was introduced as an official policy in South Africa by the British during their rule. (from 1948-1994)**

Note:

- ✓ *Racial segregation is the division of people according to their skin colour.*
- ✓ *Colour bar policy in Kenya was similar to apartheid policy in South Africa.*
- ✓ ***Colour bar policy*** *was the system of racial segregation where the natives were not allowed to share the same social services with the whites.*
- ✓ ***Kipande policy*** *in Kenya restricted the movement of the blacks in the country.*
- ✓ *The Kenyan natives were not allowed to move from one part of the country to another without identity cards.*

Apartheid policy divided people into 4 races.

These were;

- **The Blacks (African natives)**
- **The Whites (Europeans)**
- **The Coloureds (mixed blood)**
- **Asians**

How Apartheid laws were practiced in South Africa.

- **Africans were not allowed to travel to other parts of the country without identity cards.**
- **Marriage between the whites and non-whites was illegal.**
- **There were separate residential places for the blacks called Bantustans.**
- **The blacks were denied quality education.**
- **There were separate schools, hospitals and churches for the Africans.**

Effects of Apartheid policy in South Africa.

- **It led to loss of land by the African natives.**
- **It led to high rate of poverty among the Africans natives.**
- **It led to high rate of illiteracy among the blacks.**
- **It increased enmity between the blacks and the whites.**
- **It led to imprisonment of people eg. Nelson Mandela.**
- **It led to violation of human rights.**

THE BANTUSTANS.

- ❖ **These were separate homelands that were created for the black Africans in South Africa.**
- ❖ **Ten homelands were created for the blacks in South Africa.**
- ❖ **Bantustans were created by the British racist government in South Africa.**

The first Bantustans in South Africa. (TVC)

- **Transkei**
- **Venda**
- **Ciskei**

Other Bantustans were;

- **KwaZulu**
- **Bophuthatswana.**
- **KwaNdebele**
- **Lebowa**
- **Gazankulu**
- **Qwaqwa**
- **KaNgwane**

Characteristics of Bantustans.

- **Congested houses.**
- **Poor hygiene.**
- **Wide spread poverty.**
- **Inadequate food**
- **Poor social service centres.**
- **Restriction of movement of the blacks.**

Why the Bantustans were created.

- ❖ **To create a large reserve for labour.**
- ❖ **To promote the white man's superiority over the Africans.**
- ❖ **To keep the whites and the blacks apart.**

Note:-*Townships* *were the underdeveloped racially segregated urban areas for the non-whites in South Africa during colonial rule. They were for the Indians, Africans and the coloureds eg. Soweto near Johannesburg, Tembisa near Kempton park, Umlazi near Durban, Mamelodi near Pretoria, Soshanguve near Pretoria, Katlehong near Germiston etc.*

Roles played by different bodies towards ending Apartheid in South Africa.

a) Roles played by the Organisation of African unity (OAU)

- ❖ **OAU regarded apartheid as an evil against mankind.**
- ❖ **OAU gave military support to freedom fighters in South Africa.**
- ❖ **It demanded for the release of political prisoners in South Africa.**

b) Roles played by the united nations organisation (UNO)

- ❖ **UN Security Council imposed an arms ban on South Africa.**
- ❖ **The UN universal declaration of human rights regarded apartheid as an evil against mankind.**
- ❖ **UN member states imposed trade embargo on South Africa.**

c) Roles played by the African National Congress (ANC)

- ❖ **ANC members composed songs and slogans against apartheid.**
- ❖ **ANC caused black workers to strike against mistreatment by the racist employers.**
- ❖ **It founded a newspaper which helped to arouse nationalism.**

d) Roles played by the Commonwealth of Nations.

- ❖ **It suspended South Africa from participating in commonwealth games.**

e) Roles played by Frontline states.

- ***Frontline states*** **were countries that offered military support and training to the freedom fighters against apartheid in South Africa.**

Examples of Frontline states.

- **Tanzania**
- **Zimbabwe**
- **Mozambique**
- **Zambia**
- **Malawi**
- **Swaziland**

Roles played by Frontline state were;

- **Frontline states imposed trade embargo on South Africa.**
- **They provided military training to the freedom fighters.**
- **They provided refuge to the exiled ANC members.**
- **They provided supplies like food, medicine to the people fighting against apartheid in South Africa.**

Factors that favoured the independence of South Africa.

- **The formation of political parties.**
- **The rise of strong nationalists e.g. Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo, Thabo Mbeki, Cyril Ramaphosa.**
- **The financial and military support from the frontline states.**
- **The role of music, dance and drama.**

REACTIONS TO COLONIAL RULE IN AFRICA.

- **Some Africans collaborated with the colonialists.**
- **Others resisted against colonial rule.**

A) Colonial collaborators in Africa.

- ***Collaborators* were the African natives who helped the colonialists in establishing their rule in different parts of Africa.**

Examples of Colonial collaborators in Africa.

- **Semei Kakungulu in Eastern Uganda.**
- **Nuwa Mbaguta in Western Uganda.**
- **Sir Apollo Kaggwa of Buganda**
- **Nabongo Mumia of Wanga kingdom in Kenya.**
- **Chief Lenana of the Masai in Kenya.**
- **Omukama Kasagama of Tooro.**

Reasons why some Africans collaborated.

- **They wanted to get favour from the colonialists.**
- **Kings and chiefs wanted to get military support.**
- **Some wanted to enrich themselves.**

Roles played by the collaborators.

- **They helped in signing colonial agreements.**
- **They helped in enforcing colonial policies.**
- **They acted as interpreters for the colonialists.**
- **They provided information to the colonialists.**

Note:

Semei Kakungulu

- ✓ *He brought the Eastern parts of Uganda under colonial rule.*
- ✓ *He introduced the Buganda system of administration in Eastern Uganda.*
- ✓ *He encouraged cash crop growing in Eastern Uganda. This helped to increase household income of the people of Eastern Uganda.*
- ✓ *He encouraged the people of Eastern Uganda to plant trees (Mvule trees).*
- ✓ *He constructed roads in Eastern Uganda which helped to ease British administration.*
- ✓ *He appointed Buganda agents to become chiefs in Eastern and Northern Uganda.*
- ✓ *He helped the British to capture **Kabaka Mwanga** and Omukama **Kabalega** in Lango and were exiled to Seychelles islands.*
- ✓ *Semei Kakungulu failed to extend British rule in North Eastern Uganda (Karamoja) because the people in North Eastern Uganda were hostile. The British also never had interest in the dry area of Karamoja since it couldn't favour crop growing.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Ways Semei kakungulu managed to establish British rule in Eastern Uganda

- *He built roads in Eastern Uganda*
- *He built administrative posts in Eastern Uganda*
- *He signed treaties with the local chiefs*

Nuwa Mbaguta

- ✓ *He was the Prime minister of Ankole.*
- ✓ *He extended British rule in Western Uganda*
- ✓ *He encouraged the building of feeder roads in Ankole.*
- ✓ *He planted trees in Ankole and educated people on their importance.*
- ✓ *He fought against illiteracy by supporting the building of schools in Ankole*

B) Colonial resisters in Africa.

- ***Resisters*** **were the African natives who opposed colonial rule.**

Ways how the Africans resisted against colonial rule.

- ❖ **Through staging rebellions.**
- ❖ **Through forming boycotts.**
- ❖ **Through forming riots and demonstrations.**
- ❖ **Through forming trade unions.**

Examples of colonial resisters in Africa.

- ❖ **Omukama Kabalega of Bunyoro.**
- ❖ **Kabaka Mwanga of Buganda.**
- ❖ **Chief Mkwawa of Tanzania**
- ❖ **Kinjikitile Ngwale of Tanzania.**
- ❖ **Emperor Menelik II of Ethiopia.**
- ❖ **Chief Awich of Payera in Acholi**
- ❖ **Chief Siki of the Nyamwezi.**

African communities that resisted against colonial rule.

- ❖ **Banyoro of Uganda**
- ❖ **Kikuyu of Kenya.**
- ❖ **Acholi of Uganda.**
- ❖ **Hehe of Tanzania**
- ❖ **Igbo of Nigeria.**

Causes for Africans resistance against colonial rule.

- ❖ **The colonialists were harsh and oppressive to the Africans.**
- ❖ **Loss of powers by kings and chiefs.**
- ❖ **Loss of fertile land by the natives.**
- ❖ **Acquisition of military skills from world wars.**
- ❖ **Denial of the Africans equal representation on the LEGCO.**
- ❖ **Imprisonment of the African nationalists.**

Why the Africans demanded for their independence.

- ❖ **They wanted to regain their lost fertile land.**
- ❖ **Kings and chiefs wanted to regain their powers.**
- ❖ **They wanted to have equal representation on the LEGCO.**
- ❖ **They wanted to have their rights respected by the colonialists.**

Reasons why African resistance against the colonialists was defeated / unsuccessful.

- ❖ **Africans had inferior weapons.**
- ❖ **Disunity among the African natives,**
- ❖ **There were few African standing armies.**
- ❖ **Europeans were well trained in fighting.**

REBELLIONS AGAINST COLONIAL RULE IN AFRICA.

- ❖ ***A rebellion*** **is an occasion when people choose to fight those in authority.**
- ❖ **Rebellions against colonial rule were led by the African natives who had acquired European education and military skills.**

Examples of rebellions that were staged against colonial rule in Africa.

Rebellion	*Leader*	*Country*
• Lamogi rebellion • Nyangire rebellion • Mwanga's rebellion	• Chief Awich • Omukama Kabalega • Kabaka Mwanga	Uganda
• Maji Maji rebellion • Abushiri rebellion • Hehe rebellion	• Kinjikitile Ngwale • Abushiri Bin Salim • Chief Mkwawa	Tanzania
• Mau Mau rebellion	***Political leaders*** • Jomo Kenyatta • James Gichuru ***Military leaders*** • General China • Dedan Kimathi	Kenya

Major causes of African resistance against colonial rule.

Rebellion	*Main cause*
Lamogi	• Forced gun registration policy by the British.
Nyangire	• Opposition of British rule through Baganda agents. • The Banyoro never wanted to be ruled by the Baganda who were colonial agents.
Maji Maji	• Harsh German rule and forced cotton growing.
Mau Mau	• Loss of fertile land by the Kenyans.
Abushiri revolt	• Loss of political powers and control over slave trade by the Arabs.
Battle of Adoa	• To defend the Ethiopians against the Italian invasion.
Soweto uprising	• To demand for better education and use of native languages for instruction in schools for blacks.
Chimurenga resistance	• The loss of fertile land by the Shona and Nbebele.
Asante resistance	• To defend the interests and freedom of the Asante people.

EFFECTS OF COLONIAL RULE.

Political effects	Positive	❖ New states were created in Africa. ❖ Africans learnt new leadership skills. ❖ New systems of administration were introduced in Africa.
	Negative	❖ Africans lost their independence to the colonialists. ❖ Africans were denied political rights. ❖ Traditional leaders lost their powers.
Social effects	Positive	❖ Formal education was introduced. ❖ International languages were introduced in Africa. ❖ Social service centres like schools, hospitals were built.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

	Negative	❖ Africans were segregated. ❖ It led to displacement of people. ❖ It led to loss of African culture.
Economic effects	Positive	❖ It led to development of towns and trading centres. ❖ Many cash crops were introduced in Africa. ❖ It led to development of infrastructure like roads, industries. ❖ New forms of currency were introduced.
	Negative	❖ Heavy taxes were imposed on Africans. ❖ African local industries collapsed ❖ It led to over exploitation of Africa's natural resources.



Testing Exercise.

1. Mention the four main groups of foreigners that came to Africa.
2. State any three reasons for the coming of the Arab traders to Uganda.
3. Which group of foreigners introduced monetary trade to Africa?
4. Mention any three trade items that were introduced in Africa by the Arab traders.
5. Which type of cattle was introduced to Africa by the Arab traders?
6. State any three positive contributions of the Arabs in Africa.
7. How did Swahili culture come into existence in East Africa?
8. Give any two reasons why the Arab traders to East Africa took long to enter in the interior.
9. State any two reasons why Islam took long to spread in Africa yet it was the first foreign religion to be introduced.
10. Why is Ahmed Bin Ibrahim historically remembered in Uganda?
11. How were the monsoon winds helpful to the early Arab traders who came to East Africa?
12. State the main reason why the Indian coolies were brought to East Africa.
13. State any two contributions of the Indians towards the development of Uganda.
14. Write IBEACO in full.
15. State any two reasons why IBEACO was formed.
16. How was Sir William Mackinnon related to IBEACO.
17. Give any two reasons why IBEACO ran bankrupt.
18. How did Bishop Alfred Tucker support the work of IBEACO in East Africa?
19. What was Trans-Atlantic trade?
20. Where was the largest slave market in each of the following regions of Africa during slave trade?
    (i) East Africa.
    (ii) West Africa
21. Why was Trans-Atlantic trade referred to as the triangular trade?
22. Mention any two trade items that were obtained from each of the following areas during the Trans-Atlantic trade.
    (i) Africa
    (ii) America
    (iii) Europe

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

23. State any three ways Trans-Atlantic trade affected the people of Africa.
24. Give any two reasons why Kabaka Muteesa I invited the Christian missionaries to Uganda.
25. What role did Henry Morton Stanley play towards the coming of Christian missionaries to Uganda?
26. State any two reasons for the coming of the Christian missionaries to Africa.
27. What role did the Church Missionary Society (CMS) play towards the coming of the Christian missionaries to Uganda?
28. Give two ways Dr. Albert Cook contributed to the development of the health sector in Uganda.
29. Name the place where the first mission station in East Africa was built.
30. Give one way Kenneth Borup promoted economic development of Uganda.
31. Give any two ways Johann Krapf promoted the spreading of Christianity in East Africa.
32. How did Dr. David Livingstone contribute towards the abolition ofstate slave trade in Africa?
33. State any three social contributions of the Christian missionaries.
34. Give any two ways Christian missionaries paved way for the colonisation of Africa.
35. Mention any two reasons why European explorers came to Africa.
36. How was the Royal Geographical Society (RGS) helpful to the early explorers who came to Africa?
37. Name any three famous explorers who carried out their work in each of the following regions of Africa.
    (i) East Africa
    (ii) West Africa.
38. Name the feature which attracted most European explorers to East Africa.
39. Match the information in list A with that given in list B correctly.

List A	*List B*
(i) Mungo Park	Lake Albert and Murchison falls
(ii) Henry M. Stanley	Source of river Nile and lake Victoria
(iii) Sir Samuel Baker	Drowned at Bussa rapids.
(iv) John Speke	Mountain Rwenzori and lake Edward

40. Why was Africa referred to as the White man's graveyard by the early Europeans?
41. Give one reason why most European explorers first reached Zanzibar before entering the interior of East Africa.
42. Why did most European explorers who came to Uganda enter through Bagamoyo?
43. Give any two reasons why the Portuguese explorers conquered the East African coast.
44. Give any two reasons why the Portuguese succeeded in conquering the coast of East Africa.
45. Why did the Portuguese build fort Jesus in East Africa?
46. Give any two reasons for the collapse of the Portuguese rule in East Africa.
47. State any three ways the Portuguese rule affected the people of East Africa.
48. In which way does fort Jesus contribute to the economic development of Kenya?
49. How is a Colony different from a Protectorate?
50. State any two reasons why European colonialists wanted colonies in Africa.
51. In which way did the industrial revolution in Europe lead to colonisation of Africa?
52. Give the meaning of each of the following;
    (i) Scramble for Africa.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: **+256771623617 / +256700770630**

(ii) Partition of Africa.

53. Why was the Berlin conference held?
54. Mention the first colony to be established in Africa.
55. Name any one francophone state in West Africa.
56. How did the mountainous nature enable Ethiopia to protect her independence against the Italian occupation?
57. Which country in West Africa was not colonised by the Europeans?
58. Mention any three methods that were used by the Europeans to establish their rule in Africa.
59. State any two problems that were faced by the European colonialists during the establishment of their rule in Africa.
60. Which European country colonised each of the following countries?
    (i) Rwanda
    (ii) Democratic Republic of Congo
    (iii) Tanzania
61. Mention the first colonial agreement to be signed in Uganda.
62. Why didn't kabaka Mwanga sign the 1900 Buganda agreement?
63. Apart from the 1900 Buganda agreement, mention any two other agreements that were signed to put different parts of Uganda under colonial rule.
64. What role did the following personalities play during the signing of the 1900 Buganda agreement?
    (i) Sir Harry Johnston
    (ii) Sir Apollo Kaggwa
65. Why was kabaka Daudi Chwa unable to sign the 1900 Buganda agreement?
66. Mention any two terms of the Buganda agreement of 1900.
67. Mention the two forms of taxes that were introduced in the 1900 Buganda agreement.
68. Give any two ways indirect rule was applied by the British colonialists in Uganda.
69. Why did the British use indirect rule in Uganda?
70. Mention any two colonial administrative systems that were used by the European colonialists in Africa.
71. Give any two reasons why the White settlers settled in the Kenya highlands.
72. State any three effects of the coming of the white settlers to Kenya.
73. Give one way direct rule affected the German colonialists in Tanzania.
74. Give the meaning of the Great trek.
75. State any three causes of the Great trek.
76. Mention any two states that were created in Africa as a result of the Great trek.
77. Give one way the Great trek affected the original inhabitants.
78. Give one way the Kipande policy affected the people of Kenya.
79. Which system of racial segregation was applied by the British colonialists in Kenya?
80. Give the meaning of each of the following;
    (i) Apartheid.
    (ii) Bantustans
81. Mention the first three Bantustans to be created in South Africa.
82. Mention any three characteristics of Bantustans.
83. Give one reason why the racist government created the Bantustans.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

84. **Mention any one role that was played by the Frontline states towards ending Apartheid in South Africa.**
85. **Give any two ways Semei Kakungulu contributed to the establishment of colonial rule in Uganda.**
86. **Give any two reasons why the Aficans' resistance against colonial rule was unsuccessful.**
87. **Give any three reasons why the African natives demanded for their independence.**
88. **State the major cause of the Mau Mau rebuellion in Kenya.**
89. **Give any two ways the Mau Mau rebellion in Kenya.**
90. **Give any three ways colonial rule affected the Africa natives.**

TOPIC 7: NATIONALISM AND THE ROAD TO INDEPENDENCE IN AFRICA.

PAN AFRICANISM.

- ***Pan-Africanism*** is the political union of all people of African origin into one African community.
- It is a worldwide movement that aims at encouraging and strengthening bonds between all people of African descent.
- It is based on the belief that unity is vital to economic, social and political progress and aims to unify and uplift people of African descent.
- ***Pan-Africanists*** are people who seek to unite all people of African descent into one African community.

Sylvester Williams



Marcus Garvey



The Earliest Pan-Africanists. (outside Africa)

- Henry Sylvester Williams (Trinidad and Tobago)
- Booker T. Washington. (USA)
- Dr. William E. Dubois (USA)
- Marcus Garvey (Jamaica)
- Martin Luther King Junior (USA)
- Malcolm X (USA)

Other Pan-Africanists (in Africa)

- Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana
- Leopold Sedar Senghor of Senegal.
- Edward Blyden of Liberia.
- Emperor Menelik II of Ethiopia.

Roles played by famous Pan-Africanists.

Henry Sylvester Williams	❖ He sponsored the first Pan-African conference which was held in London. ❖ He worked as a lawyer representing the poor Africans in courts of law against the whites who mistreated them.
Marcus Garvey	❖ He advised the Africans to startup businesses just as the whites did. ❖ He founded the Universal Negro Improvement Association (UNIA) to promote the rights of the Africans.
Dr. William Edward Dubois	❖ He encouraged the Africans to unite and oppose the Whites domination. ❖ He wanted the Africans to know their rights and defend them.
Booker T. Washington	❖ He encouraged the black people to cooperate and promote their welfare. ❖ He believed that Africans could improve gradually through education.
J.E.K Aggrey	❖ He encouraged the Africans to value education. ❖ He believed that Africans had to cooperate with the Whites if they were to progress.
Malcolm X	❖ He advocated the formation of separate states for African-Americans.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Roles played by the Pan-Africanists.

- ❖ They mobilised the Africans in their struggle for independence.
- ❖ They united the Africans in their struggle for independence.
- ❖ They demanded for the rights of the Africans.
- ❖ They promoted the welfare of the Africans.

Problems faced by the Pan-Africanists.

- ❖ Shortage of funds.
- ❖ Some of them were imprisoned.
- ❖ Some of them were murdered.
- ❖ Difference in political ideologies.
- ❖ Lack of unity among the African leaders.

Methods used by the Pan-Africanists in the independence struggle.

- Through meetings / conferences.
- Through the media.

Pan-African conferences.

- These were meetings that were held in different parts of the world to discuss challenges facing Africa as a result of European colonization.
- *Henry Sylvester Williams* sponsored and organized the first Pan-African conference which was held in London in 1900.
- *Dr. William Edward Dubois* organised the 1919 Pan-African congress which was held in Paris, France.
- The 1945 Pan-African congress held in Manchester, Britain was the most important Pan-African congress because it applied Pan-Africanism to liberate Africa from colonial rule / decolonize Africa.
- The African nationalists were encouraged to start up political parties aimed at struggling for Africa's independence.

African leaders who attended the Manchester congress.

- Jomo Kenyatta of Kenya
- Kamuzu Banda of Malawi
- Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana.
- Jaja Wachuku of Nigeria.
- Obafemi Awolowo of Nigeria.

Note:

- ✓ *The 1958 Pan-African conference was held in* ***Accra, Ghana****.*
- ✓ *It was the first African conference to be held in Africa.*
- ✓ *It was organised by* ***Dr. Kwame Nkrumah.***

African leaders who attended the 1958 Accra conference.

- Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana.
- Tom Mboya of Kenya.
- Kenneth Kaunda of Zambia.
- Kamuzu Banda of Malawi.
- Holden Roberto of Angola
- Patrice Lumumba of DRC.

How the Pan-African meetings were important.

- ❖ They taught the Africans the need for independence.
- ❖ They united the nationalists in their struggle for independence.
- ❖ They helped to raise the spirit of nationalism.
- ❖ They enabled the nationalist to meet and discuss challenges facing Africa.

THE RISE OF AFRICAN NATIONALISM.

- ***Nationalism*** is the feeling of love for and pride in one's country.
- ***A nationalist*** is a person who has strong feeling of love for his / her country.
- Patriotism is the feeling of love for one's country and willingness to defend it.

Factors that led to the rise of African nationalism.

- ❖ The formation of political parties.
- ❖ Harassment of the Africans by the Europeans.
- ❖ Acquisition of European education.
- ❖ The influence of World War II.
- ❖ The influence of Pan-Africanism.

How the above factors led to the rise of African nationalism.

a) ***The influence of world war II*** (Between 1st Sept 1939-2nd Sept, 1945)

- ❖ It gave the Africans courage to fight for their independence.

HOW??

- ❖ War veterans learnt military skills.
- ❖ Africans learnt that the Whites could be fought and defeated.
- ❖ Africans realised the need to fight for their freedom.

Other effects of World War II

- ❖ It led to destruction of property.
- ❖ It led to loss of lives.
- ❖ It led displacement of people.
- ❖ International trade declined.
- ❖ Agricultural production decreased which led to famine.

b) The influence of Pan-Africanism.

- ❖ Pan-Africanists advocated for the rights of the Africans.

c) The influence of political parties.

- ❖ They helped to unite people in their struggle for independence.
- ❖ They protested the harsh government laws.

Famous African nationalists.

- Dr. Apollo Milton Obote of Uganda.
- Jomo Kenyatta of Kenya
- Julius Kambarage Nyerere of Tanzania.
- Kwame Nkrumah of Ghana.
- Nelson Mandela of South Africa
- Kenneth Kaunda of Zambia.
- Hastings Kamuzu Banda of Malawi.
- Gamal Abdel Nasser of Egypt.
- Emperor Haile Selassie of Ethiopia.
- Nnamdi Benjamin Azikiwe of Nigeria.
- Patrice Lumumba of DRC.
- Benedicto Kiwanuka of Uganda.
- Jaja Wachuku of Nigeria
- Samora Machel of Mozambique.

Contributions made by famous African nationalists.

Dr. Apollo Milton Obote 	❖ He led Uganda to independence under Uganda people's congress (UPC) ❖ He was the first prime minister and first executive president of Uganda. ❖ He was one of the founders of the Organisation of African Unity (OAU) in 1963 and the East African community (EAC) in 1967.
Gamal Abdel Nasser 	❖ He was one of the founders of OAU. ❖ He was the second president of Egypt. ❖ He helped to bring the Suez Canal under control of the Egyptian government. ❖ He reformed education and made it free and compulsory.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

	❖ He constructed the Aswan High dam.
Patrice Lumumba 	❖ He formed the Movement National Congolais (MNC) which led DRC to independence. ❖ He was the first prime minister of DRC. ❖ He attended the Pan-African conference which was held in Accra, Ghana
Nnamdi Benjamin Azikiwe 	❖ He led Nigeria to independence through the National Council of Nigeria and Cameroons. (NCNC) ❖ He was the first president of Nigeria. ❖ He was one of the founders of OAU in 1963.
Samora Moises Machel 	❖ He was the first president of Mozambique. ❖ He helped to free the people of Mozambique from the Portuguese rule. ❖ He led Mozambique to independence under the Mozambique Liberation Front (FRELIMO) ***Objectives of FRELIMO*** ❖ To introduce democracy in Mozambique. ❖ To abolish heavy taxes. ❖ To provide better social service centres like hospitals, schools. ❖ To allow people to freely cultivate their land. ***Forms of suffering in Mozambique under the Portuguese rule*** ❖ There was forced labour. ❖ There was racial discrimination. ❖ The Portuguese imposed heavy taxes on the natives.
Kamuzu Banda 	❖ He was the first prime minister of Malawi. ❖ He led Malawi to independence through the Malawi Congress Party (MCP) ❖ He represented his country (Nyasaland) in the 1945 Manchester congress.
Kenneth Kaunda 	❖ He led Zambia to independence through the united national independence party (UNIP)
Jomo Kenyatta 	❖ He led Kenya to independence through Kenya African national congress (KANU) ❖ He was one of the political leaders of Mau Mau rebellion ❖ He was one of the founders of EAC in 1967.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Emperor Haile Selassie (1930-1974) 	❖ **He protected the independence Ethiopia.** ❖ **He was the founding father of OAU.** ❖ **He offered room for the headquarters of OAU in Addis Ababa in Ethiopia** **Qn:** *Why was Ethiopia not colonised by European countries?*
Kwame Nkrumah 	❖ **He led Ghana to independence through the Convention People's Party (CPP)** ❖ **He represented his country in the 1945 Manchester congress.** ❖ **He organized the first Pan-African conference held in Africa. (in Accra, Ghana in 1958)** ❖ **He was one of the founders of OAU.**
Nelson Mandela 	❖ **He led South Africa to freedom from apartheid rule.** ❖ **He was the first black president of South Africa.** ❖ **He was one of the leaders of the African National Congress (ANC) which led South Africa to independence.** ❖ **Mandela was imprisoned for 27 years at *Robben islands* in the Atlantic ocean.** **Note:** • ***President Frederik de Klerk*** *was the last white president of South Africa.* • *He released Nelson Mandela from prison in 1990.* • ***Umkhonto we Sizwe*** *(Spear of the Nation) was the armed / military wing of the ANC.* • *Mandela became the first black president of South Africa in 1994.* • ***Bishop Desmond Tutu*** *was appointed as the chairperson of the Truth and Reconciliation commission, which settled disputes between the racist government and the black natives in South Africa.* ***Objectives of the Truth and Reconciliation commission.*** ➢ *To encourage forgiveness between the blacks and the whites.* ➢ *To avoid revenge against the whites.* ➢ *To promote love between the blacks and the whites.*

Methods used by the Nationalists in the struggle for independence.

❖ **Formation of political parties.**
❖ **Formation of trade unions. These mobilized people to demonstrate or even boycott buying European goods.**
❖ **Through writing articles in newspapers and magazines.**
❖ **Through organising rallies.**
❖ **Through staging rebellions.**

Problems faced by the Nationalists in their struggle for independence.

❖ **Some of them were imprisoned.**
❖ **Some of them were murdered.**
❖ **Some had their movements restricted to particular places.**
❖ **Some of them were sent into exile. For example -Sir Edward Muteesa II who was exiled to Britain in 1953 by Sir Andrew Cohen.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: **+256771623617 / +256700770630**

THE STRUGGLE FOR INDEPENDENCE IN AFRICA

- ***Independence*** is the state of being free from social, political and economic oppression.
- ***National independence*** is the state when a country is free from control of another country.
- The struggle for independence in Africa was in two forms.

These were;

i) Peaceful struggle.

ii) Armed struggle.

- ***Peaceful struggle*** is when Africans used non-violent means to demand for independence.
- It was mainly used in Uganda, Ghana and Nigeria.

The peaceful means of demanding for independence included;

-Formation of political parties.

-Formation of boycotts.

-Peaceful demonstrations.

- ***Armed struggle*** is when the Africans used violent means / fire arms to demand for their independence.
- It was mainly used in Kenya, Namibia, Mozambique, Algeria etc.

Qn: How was the attainment of Uganda's independence different from that of Kenya?

-Uganda got her independence through peaceful struggle while Kenya got hers through armed struggle.

Notable independence movements in Africa.

- African National Congress (ANC) led by Nelson Mandela
- Zimbabwe African National Union (ZANU) led by Robert Mugabe.
- Mozambique Liberation Front (FRELIMO) led by Samora Machel.
- Mzungu arudi Ulaya Mwafrica apate Uhuru (MAU MAU) rebellion led by Jomo Kenyatta and James Gichuru as its political leaders, and General China and Dedan Kimathi as its military leaders.
- Sudanese People's Liberation Army (SPLA) led by John Garang.

FORMATION OF POLITICAL PARTIES IN AFRICA.

- ***A political party*** is an organisation comprising of people with the same political ideologies and goals.
- Political parties were mainly formed to demand for independence.
- Political parties united people in their struggle for independence.

Why political parties were formed during colonial rule.

- To unite people in their struggle for independence.
- To deal with common problems affecting people.
- To protest harsh government laws and policies.
- To advise the government.

Notable political parties during colonial rule.

Political party	*Leader*	*Country*
Uganda National Congress (UNC)	Ignatius Kangave Musaazi	Uganda
Uganda People's Congress (UPC)	Dr Apollo Milton Obote	
Democratic Party (DP)	Benedicto Kiwanuka.	
Kenya African National Union (KANU)	Jomo Kenyatta	Kenya
Tanganyika African National Union (TANU)	Julius Kambarage Nyerere	Tanzania
Zimbabwe African National Union (ZANU)	Robert Mugabe	Zimbabwe

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

African National Congress (ANC)	Nelson Mandela	SouthAfrica
Mozambique Liberation Front (FRELIMO)	Samora Machel	Mozambique
Movement National Congolais (MNC)	Patrice Lumumba	DRC
Convention People's Party (CPP)	Kwame Nkrumah	Ghana
Council of the Revolution.	Gamal Abdel Nasser	Egypt
Malawi Congress Party (MCP)	Hastings Kamuzu Banda	Malawi
United National Independence Party (UNIP)	Kenneth Kaunda	Zambia

Reasons why the African natives demanded for independence.

a) Economic reasons.

- They wanted to regain their lost land.
- They wanted to be free from unfair colonial policies.
- They wanted to have control over their natural resources.

b) ***Political reasons***.

- They wanted to participate in choosing their own leaders.
- Traditional leaders wanted to regain their lost powers.
- They wanted to have equal representations on the Legislative council (LEGCO).

c) Social reasons

- They wanted to end racial segregation by the Whites.
- They wanted to revive African culture.
- They wanted to be free from forced labour.
- They wanted to have their rights respected by the Whites.

DECOLONISATION OF AFRICA.

- ***Decolonisation*** is the process by which an inferior country gains independence from a powerful country.

Factors that led to decolonisation of Africa.

- The influence of World War II.
- The rise of African nationalists.
- Acquisition of European education.
- The formation of the OAU.
- Support from other countries. Like Russia, USA.
- The formation of political parties.

Attainment of independence in Africa.

- ✓ *Egypt was the first African country to gain independence from the European colonialists in 1922.*
- ✓ ***Ghana*** *became the first West African country to gain independence from the European colonialists under Dr. Kwame Nkrumah in 1957.*
- ✓ ***Tanzania*** *was the first East African country to gain independence from the European colonialists under Julius Nyerere in 1961.*
- ✓ *South Africa was the last African country to gain independence from the European colonialists in 1994 under Nelson Mandela.*
- ✓ *The year 1960 is known as* ***"the year of Africa"*** *because most African countries got independence from the European colonialists in 1960.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

No	African country	Date of independence	Independence from	First head of state
1.	Liberia (Not Colonized)	26thJul,1847	American colonisation	Joseph Jenkins Roberts
2.	Ethiopia (Not Colonized)	27th Nov, 1941	Italy	Emperor Haile Selassie
3.	Egypt	28th Feb, 1922	Britain	King Fuad I
4.	Libya	24th Dec, 1951	Italy	King Idris I
5.	Sudan	1st Jan, 1956	Britain	Ismail al-Azhari
6.	Morocco	2nd Mar, 1956	France	Mohammed V
7.	Tunisia	20th Mar,1956	France	Muhammad Viii Al-Amin
8.	Ghana (Gold Coast)	6th Mar, 1957	Britain	Kwame Nkrumah
9.	Guinea	2nd Oct, 1958	France	Sekou Toure
10.	Cameroon	1st Jan, 1960	France	Ahmadou Ahidjo
11.	Senegal	4th April, 1960	France	Leopold Sedar Senghor
12.	Togo	27thApril, 1960	France	Sylvanus Olympio
13.	Mali	20th Jun, 1960	France	Modibo Keita
14.	Madagascar	26thJune, 1960	France	Philibert Tsiranana
15.	Dem.Rep.of Congo	30th Jun, I960	Belgium	Patrice Lumumba
16.	Somalia	1stJuly,1960	Italy	Aden Abdullah Osman.
17.	Benin (Dahomey)	1st Aug,1960	France	Hubert Maga
18.	Niger	3rd Aug, 1960	France	Hamani Diori
19.	Burkina Faso	5THAug, 1960	France	Maurice Yameogo
20.	Cote d'Ivoire	7th Aug, 1960	France	Felix Houphouet-Boigny
21.	Chad	11th Aug, 1960	France	Francois Tombalbaye
22.	Central African Republic	13th Aug, 1960	France	David Dacko
23.	Congo Brazzaville	15th Aug, 1960	France	Fulbert Youlou
24.	Gabon	17th Aug, 1960	France	Leon M'ba
25.	Nigeria	1st Oct, 1960	Britain	Nnamdi Azikiwe
26.	Mauritania	28th Nov, 1960	France	Moktar Ould Daddah
27.	Sierra Leone	27thApril, 1961	Britain	Milton Margai
28.	Tanzania	9th Dec, 1961	Britain	Julius Nyerere
29.	Burundi	1stJuly,1962	Belgium	Ntare V
30.	Rwanda	1stJuly,1962	Belgium	Gregoire Kayibanda
31.	Algeria	3rdJuly, 1962	France	Ahmed Ben Bella
32.	Uganda	9th Oct, 1962	Britain	Milton Obote
33.	Kenya	12th Dec, 1963	Britain	Jomo Kenyatta
34.	Malawi (Nyasaland)	6th July, 1964	Britain	Kamuzu Banda
35.	Zambia	24th Oct,1964	Britain	Kenneth Kaunda
36.	Gambia	18th Feb, 1965	Britain	Dawda Kairaba Jawara
37.	Botswana	30th Sep, 1966	Britain	Seretse Khama
38.	Lesotho	4th Oct, 1966	Britain	Leabua Jonathan
39.	Mauritius	12th Mar, 1968	Britain	Veerasamy Ringandoo
40.	Swaziland (Eswatini)	6th Sept, 1968	Britain	Sobhuza II
41.	Equatorial Guinea	12th Oct,1968	Spain	Francisco Nguema
42.	Guinea-Bissau	24th Sep, 1973	Portugal	Luis Cabral
43.	Mozambique	25th Jun, 1975	Portugal	Samora Machel

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

44.	Cape Verde	5thJuly, 1975	Portugal	Aristides Pereira
45.	Comoros	6th July, 1975	France	Ahmed Abdallah
46.	Sao Tome and Principe	12thJuly, 1975	Portugal	Manuel Pinto da Costa
47.	Angola	11th Nov,1975	Portugal	Agostinho Neto
48.	Western Sahara	28th Feb, 1976	Spain	El-Ouali Mustapha Sayed
49.	Seychelles	29th Jun, 1976	Britain	James Richard Mancham
50.	Djibouti	27th June,1977	France	Hassan Gouled Aptidon
51.	Zimbabwe	18th April,1980	Britain	Robert Mugabe
52.	Namibia	21st Mar,1990	South Africa	Sam Nujoma
53.	Eritrea	24th May, 1993	Ethiopia	Isaias Afwerki
54.	South Africa	10th May, 1994	Britain	Nelson Mandela
55.	South Sudan	9thJuly, 2011	Sudan	Salva Kiir Mayardit

SYSTEMS OF GOVERNMENT.

- ***A government*** **is a ruling body of a state.**
- **This is a group of people who exercise authority in a state.**
- ***Governance*** **is the system by which a society is governed.**

Levels of government in Uganda.

- **The Central government.**
- **The Local government.**

- **The Central government is in charge of the entire country while the Local government is in charge of a district, region or an urban area.**
- **The Central government builds and maintains major roads (through UNRA) while Local government builds and maintains feeder roads.**

Organs of a Democratic government.

Organ	*Duties / roles*	*Composition.*
Executive	❖ To plan and rule the country. ❖ To implement government policies/programmes. ❖ To maintain law and order in the country. ❖ To run and rule the country. ❖ To collect and spend government revenue.	• President (head) • Ministers • Civil servants eg. teachers, police, doctors etc. ***Note:*** • ***A Permanent secretary*** *is the highest civil servant in a ministry.* • ***CAO*** *is the highest civil servant in a district.* • *Ministers, prime minister, vice president, chief justice etc are appointed by the president and are approved by the parliament.* • ***Civil servants*** *are people who work for the government. They help to implement government programmes.*
Legislature	❖ To make and amend laws. ❖ To approve the National Budget. ❖ To check on how the government spends its income.	• Speaker of parliament (head) • Members of parliament representing constituencies.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

	❖ **To approve the government officials who have been appointed by the president.** **Note:** ✓ *The Legislature is sometimes called the National Assembly or* ***Parliament.*** ✓ *It was called the Legislative Council* ***(LEGCO)*** *during colonial times.* ✓ *The legislature makes laws which are used by the judiciary to punish law breakers.* ✓ ***A mace*** *is a symbol of authority representing the power of the speaker.* ✓ *The process of law making.* ✓ ***A bill*** *is a proposed law in the parliament. It becomes a law when the president has signed it.* ✓ *A law/ an act is a rule that governs the conduct of citizens of a country.* ✓ ***An act*** *is a law that has been passed by the parliament and signed by the president.* ✓ ***Hon.Rebecca Kadaga*** *is the current speaker of the parliament of Uganda.*	• **Representatives of special interest groups in the parliament eg. the workers, women, youths, ex-officios, the army.** **Note** ▪ ***Clerk to parliament*** *records and keeps the proceedings of debates in the parliament. The recorded proceedings are called* ***Hansards.*** ▪ ***Sergeant at arms*** *keeps security in the parliament.* ▪ *He also alerts the house when the speaker is about to enter.*
Judiciary	❖ **To punish law breakers.** ❖ **To interpret laws to people.** ❖ **To settle disputes among people in the country.** ❖ **To protect the rights of the citizens.** **Note:** ✓ *The chief justice is responsible for the swearing in of the president and other top leaders.* ✓ *He also guides the judges and magistrates on how to carry out their duties.* ✓ ***Bart Katureebe Magunda*** *is the current chief justice of Uganda.* ***Law breakers are punished by;*** ✓ *Fining them* ✓ *Sentencing them to spend a period of time in prisons.*	▪ **Chief justice (head)** ▪ **Justices** ▪ **Judges** ▪ **Magistrates** ▪ **Attorneys** ▪ **Lawyers**

Systems of government include:

- **Party system of government.**
- **Democratic system of government.**
- **Unitary government system.**
- **Monarchial government system**
- **Theocratic system of government.**
- **Dictatorship system of government**
- **Military system of government.**

Party system of government.

- **This is the system of government where political parties control a democratic government.**
- **Party system is classified into single and multiparty system of governance.**

i) ***Single party system of government.***

- This is the type of party system in which one political party has a right to form a government.

Advantages of Single party system of government.

- It promotes unity among people.
- Leadership is respected.
- It is easy to take decisions.
- There are less chances of conflicts for power.
- It is cheaper to conduct elections.

Disadvantages of single party system of government.

- It promotes dictatorship.
- It encourages corruption among government officials.
- It creates no room for new ideas.
- Decisions take long to be implemented.
- There is less accountability

ii) ***Multiparty system of government***

- This is the system of government which involves many political parties.

Examples of political parties in Uganda.

- National resistance movement (NRM)
- People's Progressive Party (PPP)
- Forum for Democratic Change (FDC)
- Democratic Party (DP)
- Conservative Party (CP)

Advantages of Multiparty system of government.

- It promotes democracy in the country.
- There is room for choosing better leaders.
- It creates room for new ideas.
- It promotes respect for human rights in the country

Disadvantages of Multiparty system of government.

- Political parties divide people in the country.
- It promotes conflicts among people.
- It increases injustice in the country.
- Decisions and programmes take long to be worked on.

Indicators of good governance in the country.

- Rule of law.
- Peace and security.
- Respect for human rights.
- Free participation of citizens in elections.

ELECTIONS.

- *An election* is a formal democratic process of choosing leaders by voting for them.

Types of elections.

- General elections.
- Primary elections.
- By-elections
- Referendum elections.
- Local elections.

i) General election.

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at the national level eg. The president, members of parliament.

ii) Referendum election.

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose to accept or reject a political proposal that concerns all citizens in the country.

iii) Local election.

- This is a formal democratic process in which people choose leaders at local council level ie. Local council I -V leaders.

iv) By-election.

- This is a formal democratic process of choosing a leader to fill a vacant political post.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

v) Primary election.

- This is a formal democratic process in which a political party chooses a candidate to contest for a specific office in the general elections.

Causes of by-elections.

- Death of the incumbent/ post holder.
- Resignation of the incumbent.
- Long term imprisonment of the incumbent.
- Cancellation of the election results by the court of law.
- Mental illness of the incumbent.
- When vote of no confidence has been made against the incumbent.

Note: *By-elections lead to loss of government funds when organising them.*

Organisation of National elections.

- *The Uganda Electoral commission* is the body responsible for organizing and conducting regular free and fair elections in the country.
- It is under the *Ministry of Justice and Constitutional affairs.*
- *Justice Simon Byabakama* is the current chairperson of the Uganda electoral commission.
- The chairperson Electoral commission is appointed by the president and approved by the parliament.
- General elections in Uganda are conducted after every five years.

Roles of the Electoral commission

- To register voters and candidates.
- To prepare election materials
- To count votes and release election results.
- To carry out civic education concerning elections/ to carry out voter education.
- To demarcate polling stations and constituencies.
- To train the electoral officials.

Challenges faced by the Electoral commission in Uganda.

- Shortage of funds.
- Poor response from the voters.
- Dishonest electoral officials.
- Voter bribery due to increased poverty among the electorate.
- Delay of election materials
- Election malpractices.

Possible solutions to the challenges facing the Electoral commission.

- By carrying out effective voter education. This can help to reduce the number of invalid votes.
- By eradicating poverty among the electorate.
- By distributing election materials in time.
- By punishing dishonest electoral officials.
- By providing adequate funds to the electoral commission.

Election malpractices.

- These are illegal acts done during elections.
- The election malpractices are the various forms of vote rigging.
- Some of these practices may lead to cancellation of election results and hence leading to by-elections.

These practices include;

- Voter bribery.
- Multiple voting.
- Torturing of opponents.
- Campaigning on the Election Day.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Bad practices that happen during voting.

- Bribing voters during elections.
- Harassing voters of a particular candidate.
- Ballot stuffing (putting pre-ticked ballot papers in the ballot box before elections)
- Grabbing and stealing ballot papers.
- Campaigning on the voting day.
- Cheating when counting votes.

Bad practices that happen after elections.

- Making fun of the losers of an election.
- Mis-recording of election results.
- A candidate refusing to accept defeat.
- Attacking a voter who has not voted a particular candidate.
- Unnecessary delay to announce final results.

Electoral systems.

- Secret ballot system
- Open elections.

Importance of elections.

- They promote democracy in the country.
- They promote peaceful change/transition of leaders.
- They promote respect for human rights.
- They enable people to choose their own leaders.

Materials used during the process of elections.

- Nomination forms. These are forms filled by the candidates and submitted to the Electoral Commission in order to be nominated for the posts they want.
- Ballot paper. This is a sheet bearing names and photograph of a candidate standing to be elected on particular post.
- A ballot box. This is a box where ballot papers are kept after voting.
- Voter's register.This is a list of all the people who register to participate in voting.
- Ink. It is used to mark a voter who has finished to vote.
- Basins.They are used to provide a safe place to for voters to cast his/her vote.
- Biometric machine.This is a machine which proves the details of a voter.
- Declaration forms.These are forms where election results are recorded.

Terms used in elections

- A Polling station is a place where voting takes place.
- A Polling day is the day when voting takes place.
- A Polling officer is a person who is in charge of elections at a polling station. He issues out ballot papers, declares results and fills the declaration form.
- A Polling assistant is a person who assists a polling officer at a polling station. they check for voters' names, issue out ballot papers, mark voters who have finished voting.
- A Polling constable is a person who is in charge of security at the polling station
- An Electorate refers to people in a country who qualify to vote.
- Proxy is a person who is given authority to vote on behalf of someone who is absent.
- Election monitors is a group of people from a foreign country who come to watch over elections.
- Voting by proxy is when a person who is absent gives authority to another person to vote on his/her behalf.

- **The candidates' agent is a person who represents a candidate at a polling station.**
- **An eligible voter is a person who qualifies to vote. He/she must appear on the voters' register of that polling station.**
- **Returning officer is a person in charge of elections in the district or division.**
- **An electoral college is a group of electors who are selected to elect a candidate to a particular office.**
- **A candidate is a person who stands to be voted/contests in an election.**
- **A valid vote is a vote that has been ticked correctly.**
- **An invalid vote is a vote that has been ticked wrongly. It is counted on none of the candidates.**
- **A constituency is an electoral area represented by a member of parliament.**

Note: ***The Citizen's Coalition for Electoral Democracy in Uganda (CCEDU)*** *is the body responsible for monitoring the general elections in Uganda.*

GOVERNMENT DECENTRALISATION.

- ***Decentralisation*** **is the transfer of some political powers from the central government to the local authorities.**
- ***By-laws*** **are laws made by the local authorities/ councils.**

Advantages of Decentralisation.

- **It makes administration easy.**
- **It eases the provision of social services.**
- **It creates more job opportunities.**
- **It promotes effectiveness of government programmes.**

Disadvantages of Decentralisation.

- **It makes equal provision of social services difficult.**

Challenges affecting decentralisation.

- **Corruption**
- **Shortage of funds.**
- **Weak local administrators.**

Note:

- ***A National constitution*** *is a set of laws by which a country is governed.*

Uganda's constitutions since independence.

(i) The 1962 independence constitution.

- *It led Uganda to independence in 1962.*

(ii) The 1966 constitution.

- *It was known as the pigeon hole constitution.*
- *It was written after the conflict between Sir Edward Muteesa II and Dr.Apollo M.Obote.*
- *It was not popular because it was not discussed by the parliament.*

(iii) The 1967 constitution.

- *It was also called the Republican constitution.*

Results of the 1967 constitution.

- *All kingdoms in Uganda were abolished.*
- *Uganda became a republic.*
- *The president was given more powers to rule the country than the prime minister.*

(iv) The 1995 constitution.

- ✓ *It was called the people's constitution because it was made basing on people's views.*
- ✓ *This was announced publically/promulgated/launched on 8th October,1995 at the constitutional square (formerly City square) in Kampala.*

Importance of the national constitution.

- *It protects the rights of the citizens.*
- *It promotes democracy.*
- *It promotes peaceful change of leadership.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- *It defines the roles of each organ of the government.*
- *It is used to settle cases peacefully.*
- *It promotes good governance.*

CITIZENSHIP

- ***Citizenship*** **is the legal right of belonging to a particular country.**
- ***A citizen*** **is a person who has the legal right of belonging to a particular country.**

How one acquires citizenship of Uganda.

- **Through birth (is the legal right of belonging to a country when one's parents are citizens in that particular country)**
- **Through descent (is the legal right of belonging to a country a person gets when his / her ancestors were citizens in that country)**
- **Through registration. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a foreigner who has applied for citizenship in a particular country)**
- **Through naturalisation (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to a person after having spent a very long time in a particular country)**
- **Through adoption. (is the legal right of belonging to a country granted to foreigner who was brought up by a person who is a citizen in a particular country)**

Loss of citizenship of Uganda.

- **By spying against your country. (Espionage against Uganda).**
- **By joining the army of an enemy country to fight Uganda.**
- **If one's citizenship was acquired unlawfully.**
- **By denouncing the citizenship.**

Duties of a citizen.

- **To pay taxes promptly.**
- **To respect the rights and freedoms of other people.**
- **To help in maintaining law and order.**
- **To defend his/ her country.**
- **To participate in communal work.**
- **To preserve and protect public facilities.**
- **To obey national laws.**

Importance of citizenship.

- **It enables one to have a peaceful settlement in his/ her country.**
- **It enables one to get free social services from the government.**
- **It enables one to get a passport of that country hence making movement to other countries possible.**

Note:

- ***A National identity card*** *is a legal document given to all adult Ugandans for easy identification.*
- *National Identification and Registration Authority (NIRA) is the body responsible for registering Ugandan citizens and issuing national identity cards to them.*
  It also registers the births and deaths.
- ***A passport*** *is an official document which shows citizenship of a person.*
- *This can be obtained by both young and old people.*
  It legalises one to travel across borders.



Testing Exercise.

1. **Give the meaning of each of the following;**
   (i) **Pan Africanism.**
   (ii) **Nationalism.**
   (iii) **Patriotism.**
2. **How did Henry Sylvester Williams contribute to the rise of nationalism in Africa?**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

3. State any three problems that were faced by the Pan Africanists in their struggle to liberate Africa.
4. Name any two African leaders who attended the Pan African conference that was held in Manchester.
5. Mention any two methods that were used by the Pan Africanists in the struggle for independence.
6. How did Marcus Garvey help to promote the rights of the people of Africa?
7. Name the African leader who organised the Pan African conference of 1958.
8. Give any two ways world war II sped up the independence process in Africa.
9. State nay one contribution made by Gamal A. Nasser for his country Egypt.
10. Why were the following African countries not colonised by the Europeans?
    (i) Ethiopia
    (ii) Liberia
11. Why is Robben islands remembered in the life history of Nelson Mandela?
12. Mention any three methods that were used by the Pan Africanists to struggle for Africa's independence.
13. State any one role that was played by the Truth and Reconciliation commission in South Africa.
14. How was the attainment of independence in Kenya different that of Uganda?
15. Give any two reasons why political parties were formed in Uganda during 1950s.
16. Complete the table below correctly.

Country	*Nationalist who led to independence*	*Political party*
(i) ----------	Nelson Mandela	----------
(ii) ----------	----------	UPC
(iii) Zimbabwe	----------	----------
(iv) Tanzania	----------	----------
(v) ---------	Samora Machel	----------
(vi) ---------	----------	KANU

17. Name the first country in West Africa to gain independence.
18. Complete the table below correctly.

Arm of the government	*Main duty*	*Title of the leader*
(i) Executive	----------	----------
(ii) ---------	----------	Speaker of parliament
(iii) ---------	----------	Chief justice

19. How is a law different from a bill?
20. Mention any three special interest groups of people represented in Uganda's parliament.
21. How does the Legislature help the Judiciary to perform its duties?
22. Give one way law breakers are punished in courts of law.
23. What title is given to the highest civil servant in a ministry?
24. How is a Sergeant at arms important during parliamentary sessions?
25. Give any two reasons why the LEGCO was formed during colonial rule in Uganda.
26. Which system of government is practised in Uganda today?
27. State any two benefits countries with single party system enjoy.
28. State any two advantages of Multiparty system of government.
29. State any two problems Uganda faces as a result of using the multiparty system of government.
30. State any three roles of the electoral commission.
31. To which ministry does the electoral commission in Uganda belong?
32. State any two challenges the electoral commission faces when carrying out its duties.
33. Mention any three malpractises that are commonly exhibited during the voting process.
34. State any three causes of a by-elections in a country.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

35. Give any two reasons why it is important for a country to organise regular free and fair elections.
36. Give any two ways the electoral commission organises national elections in Uganda.
37. Give the meaning of the term Decentralisation.
38. Who is a Citizen by descent?
39. Mention any three duties of a citizen of Uganda.
40. State any two advantages of decentralisation.
41. What term refers to the laws that are made by the local councils?
42. Give any two ways one can become a citizen of Uganda.
43. State any one role played by NIRA in Uganda.
44. Give one way a National identity card is important to Ugandan citizens.
45. Name the official government document that permits one to travel from Uganda to other countries.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

TOPIC 8: POST INDEPENDENCE AFRICA.

- ***Post independence*** **refers to the period after independence.**
- ***Post independence Africa*** **involves the different social, political and economic changes that have taken place in Africa since the time African countries gained their independence.**

Changes which have taken place in the Post independence Africa.

- **Formation of regional bodies.**
- **Creation of new states.**
- **Development of industries.**
- **Development in technology.**
- **Development in trade.**
- **Development of infrastructure like airports, railway lines, roads, banks, hotels etc.**
- **Development of transport and communication lines.**

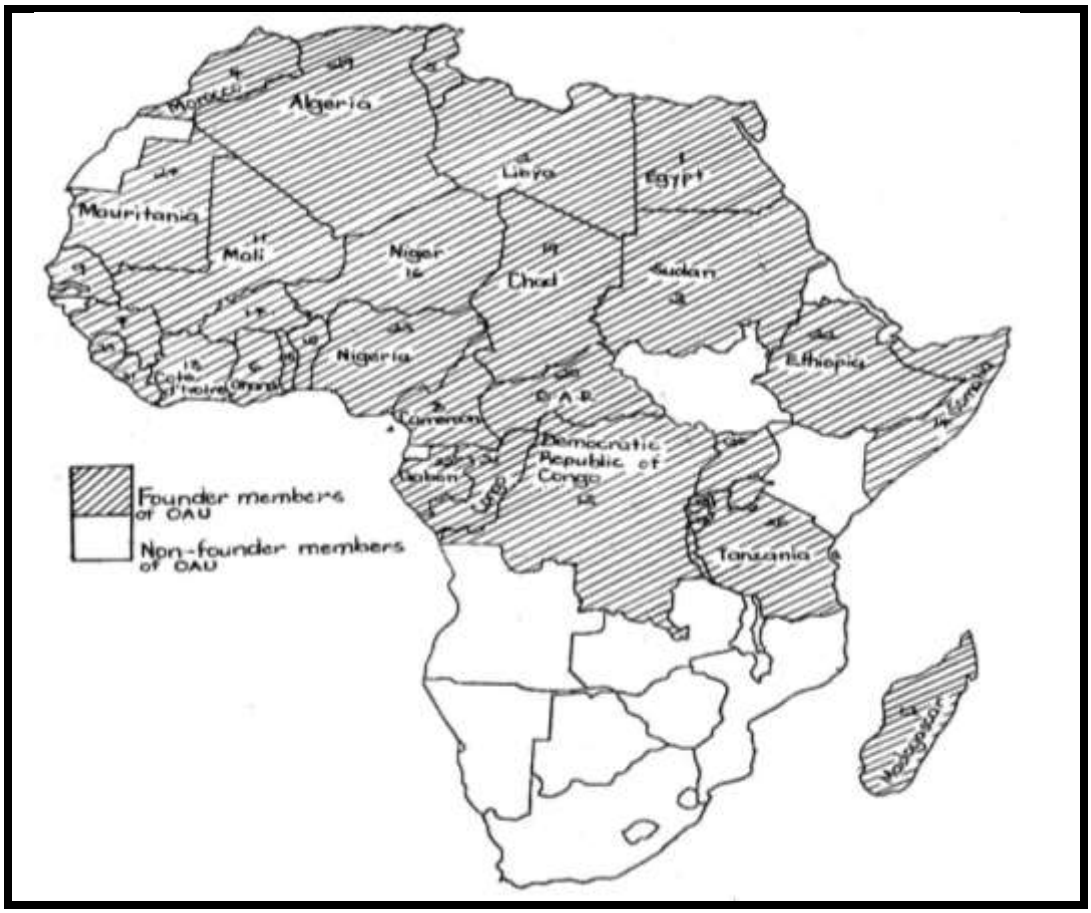
FORMATION OF THE ORGANISATION OF AFRICAN UNITY (OAU) (1963-2002)

- **OAU was formed on 25th may, 1963 by 32 independent African countries.**
- **The 32 heads of state met in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia in a meeting that was chaired by *Emperor Haile Selassie* of Ethiopia.**
- ***President Hubert Maga*** **of Benin (Dahomey by then) suggested the name of the OAU.**
- ***Diallo Telli*** **from Guinea was the first Secretary general of the OAU.**
- **South Africa was not a member of OAU because of Apartheid policy in that country.**
- **Morocco suspended her membership from OAU in 1984 to protest the admission of Western Sahara as an independent state. However, it rejoined the African Union (AU) recently in January, 2017.**

Founder members (countries) and founders (personalities) of OAU.

✓ *Refer to the table in the previous topic (consider the first 32 African countries to get independence)*

The Founder members of OAU



apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Aims/objectives of OAU (Why OAU was formed)

- ❖ **To end colonialism in Africa.**
- ❖ **To unite all independent African countries into one big nation.**
- ❖ **To promote development among African countries.**
- ❖ **To improve the standards of living of people in Africa.**
- ❖ **To defend the independence of African countries.**
- ❖ **To promote international cooperation between Africa and the rest of the world.**

Areas of operation of the OAU

- **Trade**
- **Politics**
- **Security**
- **Education**
- **Culture**
- **Transport and communication.**
- **Health.**

Agencies of OAU

- **Pan-African Telecommunications Union (PATU)**
- **Pan-African Postal Union (PAPU)**
- **Pan-African News Agency (PANA)**
- **Union of African National Television and Radio Organisations**
- **Union of African Railways (UAR)**
- **Organisation of African Trade Union Unity (OATUU)**
- **African Civil Aviation Commission (ACAC)**

Organs of the OAU

Organ	*Role*	*Head*	*First leader*	*Last leader*
The Assembly of the Heads of state. ✓ *These met once in a year*	❖**It was the decision making body of the OAU.** ❖**It was the supreme organ of the OAU.** ❖**Its major role was to discuss challenges facing Africa and find possible solutions.**	• **President of the chosen hosting country.**	• **Emperor Haile Selassie of Ethiopia.**	• **Thabo Mbeki of South Africa.**
The Secretariat ✓ *It was based in Addis Ababa and it served for 4 years.*	❖**It organized meetings for both the heads of state and the council of ministers.** ❖**It also prepared the budget for the organisation.**	• **Secretary general**	• **Mr. Diallo Telli of Guinea.**	• **Mr. Amara Essy of Cote d'Ivoire.**
The Council of ministers ✓ *It consisted of foreign affairs ministers of the member states. These met twice a year.*	❖**It was responsible for handling reports from the agencies of the OAU.**	• **Prime minister of the hosting country.**		

Note: -*President Idi Amin Dada was the chairperson of the OAU summit which was hosted in Uganda in 1975.*

Achievements/ success of OAU.

- ❖ **It ended colonialism in Africa.**
- ❖ **It helped to end apartheid policy in South Africa.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- ❖ It helped to end civil wars in some African countries e.g. in Liberia, Sierra Leone, Western Sahara
- ❖ It helped to solve border conflicts between countries e.g. Algeria and morocco, Ethiopia and Eritrea, Kenya and Somalia etc.
- ❖ It created the African development bank.
- ❖ It gave birth to the African union (AU).

Failures of OAU

- ❖ It failed to stop civil wars in some African countries e.g. In Sudan.
- ❖ It failed to create a standing army in Africa.
- ❖ It failed to eliminate neocolonialism in Africa.
- ❖ It failed to stop genocide in Rwanda in 1994.
- ❖ It failed to eliminate poverty in Africa.
- ❖ It failed to eliminate illiteracy in Africa.

Problems faced by the OAU (1963-2002)

- ❖ Shortage of funds.
- ❖ Lack of a peace keeping force.
- ❖ Civil wars in some African countries.
- ❖ High levels of poverty amongst African countries.
- ❖ Different political ideologies among African heads of state.
- ❖ Border conflicts.
- ❖ Dictatorship among African leaders.
- ❖ Big number of refugees in Africa.

Challenges that affected African countries (1963-2002)

- Poverty
- Under development.
- Civil wars.
- Human rights abuse
- Cross border conflicts.

THE FORMATION OF THE AFRICAN UNION (AU) (Since 2002 up to date)

- AU was formed on 9th july, 2002 in Durban, South Africa to replace the OAU.
- *President Muammar Gaddafi of Libya spearheaded the formation of the AU.*
- *President Thabo Mbeki of South Africa was the first chairperson of the General assembly of the AU.*
- *AU was formed purposely to create a stronger organisation that would deal with the challenges facing modern Africa.*

Aims / objectives of the AU

- ❖ To promote peace and security in Africa.
- ❖ To promote rule of law in Africa.
- ❖ To promote economic development in Africa.
- ❖ To support and defend African countries.
- ❖ To enable regional bodies improve their work.

Organs of the AU.

The Assembly of the union	❖ It is the supreme organ of the AU. ❖ It holds a meeting atleast once a year. ❖ It is composed of heads of state and government. ❖ It is the highest decision making body of the AU.
The Pan-African Parliament	❖ It is made up of 4 members from each national parliament. ❖ It is a forum for the people of Africa to express their ideas and interests.
The African Union commission	❖ It is responsible for the day to day running of the AU. ❖ It has 10 members and it is headed by the president. ❖ *Mr Amara Essy* of Cote d'Ivoire was the first president of the AU Commission.
The Executive council	❖ It is made up of foreign affairs ministers of the AU member states. ❖ It makes decisions on issues of common interest.

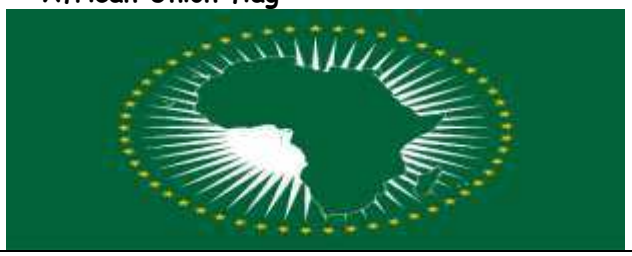
apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

The Peace and Security council.	❖ It is responsible for resolving conflicts among the member states.
The Economic development plan	❖ To reduce poverty in Africa. ❖ To encourage trade and investment in Africa through conjunction with New Partnership for African Development (NEPAD)

Chairpersons of The Assembly of the African Union.

Chairperson	*Period*	*Hosting country*
Thabo Mbeki	July 2002-July 2003	South Africa
Joaquim Chissano	July 2003- July 2004	Mozambique
Olusegun Obasanjo	July 2004- Dec 2005	Nigeria
Denis Sassou	Jan 2006- Jan 2007	Congo Brazzaville
John Kufuor	Jan 2007- Jan 2008	Ghana
Jakaya Kikwete	Jan 2008- Jan 2009	Tanzania
Muammar Gaddafi	Feb 2009- Jan 2010	Libya
Binguwa Mutharika	Jan 2010- Jan 2011	Malawi
Teodoro Obiang Nguema	Jan 2011- Jan 2012	Equatorial Guinea
Thomas Yayiboni	Jan 2012- Jan 2013	Benin
Hailemariam Dessalegn	Jan 2013- Jan 2014	Ethiopia
Mohamed Ould Abdelaziz	Jan 2014- Jan 2015	Mauritania
Robert Mugabe	Jan 2015- Jan 2016	Zimbabwe
Iddris Deby	Jan 2016- Jan 2017	Chad
Alpha Conde	Jan 2017- Jan 2018	Guinea
Paul Kagame	Jan 2018- Jan 2019	Rwanda

Symbols of the AU

• African Union flag 	• African Union emblem. 
• African Union motto "A United and Strong Africa"	• African Union anthem. "Let Us All Unite and Celebrate Together"

States created in Africa since the formation of the OAU.

- Djibouti from Ethiopia in 1972.
- Western Sahara from Morocco in 1976.
- Eritrea from Ethiopia in 1993.
- South Sudan from Sudan in 2011.

Importance / functions of the AU.

❖ It settles border conflicts between countries.
❖ It funds developmental projects in Africa.
❖ It protects Africans from human rights abuse.
❖ It provides relief to refugees.
❖ It funds African peace keeping operations.

Challenges faced by the African Union.

❖ Shortage of funds to run AU programmes.
❖ Civil wars in some African countries.
❖ Dictatorship among African leaders.
❖ Famine in some member states.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- ❖ Neocolonialism in many African countries.
- ❖ Abuse of human rights in many African countries.
- ❖ Differences in political systems among the member states.

Possible solutions to the challenges facing the AU.

- ❖ By promoting democracy in African countries.
- ❖ By exporting manufactured / processed goods instead of raw materials. Processed goods earn more income than raw materials.
- ❖ By promoting the protection of human rights in all African countries.
- ❖ By mechanising agriculture to increase food production.
- ❖ By widening the tax base in order to reduce dependence on foreign aid. This can help African countries to overcome neocolonialism.
- ❖ By creating a permanent army to solve conflicts in different African countries.

Note;

- ✓ *The AU created the African Standby Force (ASF) to be deployed in times of crisis. This force is based in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia.*
- ✓ *African Union Mission to Somalia (AMISOM) is a peace keeping mission operated by the AU in Somalia with approval by the United Nations (UN).*

REGIONAL BODIES IN AFRICA.

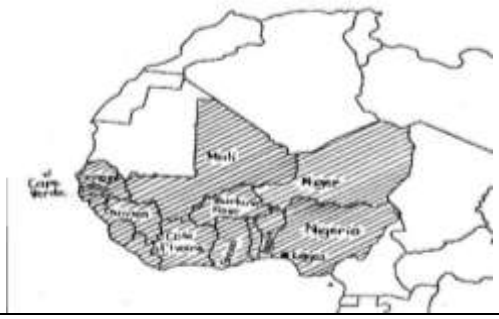
- ***A Regional body*** **is an economic organisation formed by countries with in a geographical region to create a common market for goods produced in the member states.**
- ***A common market*** **is an agreement that permits movement of people and goods across borders of the member states.**
- **Common markets can also be called regional economic groupings or economic blocs.**

Regional economic groupings / Common markets in Africa.

- ❖ East African Community (EAC)
- ❖ Common Market for Eastern and Southern Africa (COMESA)
- ❖ Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS)
- ❖ Southern African Development Community (SADC)
- ❖ Intergovernmental Authority on Development (IGAD)
- ❖ Economic Community of Central African Community (ECCAS)

Regional body	*Year of formation*	*Headquarters*	*Member states*
East African community (EAC) 	1st July, 1967	Arusha, Tanzania	_ Tanzania _ Uganda _ Kenya _ Rwanda _ Burundi _ South Sudan

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Common Market for Eastern And Southern Africa (COMESA) 	8thDec,1994	Lusaka, Zambia	_ Uganda _Sudan _ Rwanda _Kenya _ Madagascar _ Malawi _Djibouti _ Burundi _Egypt _ Eritrea _Comoros _ DRC _Zimbabwe _Ethiopia _ Zambia _Libya _ Zimbabwe _ Seychelles _ Swaziland.
Economic Community of West African States (ECOWAS) 	28thMay,1995	Lagos, Nigeria	_ Nigeria _Ghana _ Guinea _Gambia _ Guinea-Bissau _ Benin _Mali _ Cape Verde _ Burkina Faso_Togo _ Sierra Leone _Niger _ Cote d'Ivoire _ Senegal _Liberia NB: *Mauritania left in 2002.*
Southern African Development Community (SADC) 	17thAug,1979	Gaborone, Botswana	_ Botswana _Seychelles _ Zambia _ South Africa _ Angola _Mauritius _ Botswana _Comoros _ DRC _Namibia _ Tanzania _Eswatini _ Mozambique _Lesotho _ Madagascar _ Malawi _Zimbabwe
Intergovernmental Authority on Development (IGAD) 	1986	Djibouti, Djibouti	_ Djibouti _ Uganda _ Sudan _ Ethiopia _ South Sudan _ Somalia _ Kenya _ Eritrea

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Economic Community of Central African Community (ECCAS) 	**1983**	**Libreville, Gabon**	**_ Gabon** **_ Sao Tome and Principe** **_ Congo Brazzaville** **_ Chad** **_ Equatorial Guinea** **_ Rwanda** **_ Cameroon** **_ CAR** **_ DRC** **_ Burundi** **_ Angola**

***Activity:* Locate the different regional bodies on the sketch map of Africa**

Notable facts about Common markets in Africa.

- ✓ ***COMESA*** *is the largest common market in Africa.*
- ✓ *COMESA replaced the* ***Preferential Trade Area (PTA)***
- ✓ ***Tanzania*** *is the only East African country which is not a member state of COMESA.*
- ✓ *Tanzania felt that it was more profitable to participate in SADC than in COMESA.*
- ✓ ***SADC*** *replaced the Southern African Development Co-Ordination Conference (SADCC).*
- ✓ ***IGAD*** *replaced the Intergovernmental Authority on Drought and Development (IGADD) which had been formed to control drought and promote faster development in the member states.*
- ✓ *The Economic Community of West African States Monitoring Group (ECOMOG) is the military wing of ECOWAS.*
- ✓ ***ECOMOG*** *is responsible for maintaining peace in case there is a war among ECOWAS member states.*
- ✓ *Kagera Basin Organisation (KBO) was dissolved in 2004 because member states felt that they could achieve its objectives through other regional bodies.*
- ✓ *COMESA has a development bank in Bujumbura.*

EAST AFRICAN COMMUNITY (EAC) (Jumuiya ya Afrika Mashariki- in Kiswahili)

Founders	• **Dr. Apollo Milton Obote.** • **Jomo Kenyatta** • **Julius Nyerere**
Founder members	• **Uganda** • **Kenya** • **Tanzania**
Headquarters	• **In Arusha, Tanzania**
Objectives *(Why it was formed in 1967)*	• **To promote cooperation and unity among the member states.** • **To create a wider market for goods produced in east Africa.** • **To have common taxes on goods for similar prices.** • **To have a common currency in east Africa.** • **To promote peace and security in the region.** • **To reduce on smuggling of goods.** • **To allow easy movement of people and goods across the borders of the member states.**
Why it collapsed in 1977	• **Shortage of funds to run its activities.** • **Harassment of the Kenyans in Tanzania.** • **Political differences among the member states.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

	• Misunderstandings between Kenya and Tanzania which led to border closure. • Imbalance in economic development among the member states. • Declaration of Idi Amin Dada to take control of the Western part of Kenya.
Effects of the collapse of EAC	• Trade declined in East Africa. • It led to enmity among the member states. • It increased dependence on foreign aid by the East African countries. • It restricted movement of people and goods from one East African country to another.
Organs of the EAC	• The Summit of the heads of state headed by …….. • The Secretariat headed by Mr. *Liberat Mfumukeko*. • East African Legislative Assembly (EALA) headed by *Hon Martin Ngoga.* • East African Court of Justice headed by *Justice Dr. Emmanuel Ugirashebuja.* • Council of ministers • The Co-ordinating committee • The Sectoral committee
Symbols of the EAC	• East African community anthem • East African community emblem • East African community flag • East African community motto (One People One Destiny)
Benefits of EAC *a) To member states*	• It has promoted cooperation and unity among the member states. • It has created a wider market for goods produced in the member states. • It has promoted peace and security in the region. • Member states are allowed to transport their goods from one country to another without restrictions.
b) To individuals	• It has created job opportunities to people of east Africa. • People are free to move from one member state to another without restrictions. • It has widened market for goods in the region. • People are able to get access to goods which their countries cannot produce.
New member states	• South Sudan in 2016. • Rwanda and Burundi in 2007
Why the above countries joined the EAC.	• To widen market for their goods. • To be able to trade freely with other EAC member states. • To make it easier for their citizens to travel to other EAC member states. • To promote peace and security with in the region.

➢ *Activity: Mention all the regional bodies to which Uganda is a member.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

General objectives / aims of Common markets in Africa.

- To promote regional development.
- To promote cooperation and unity among the member states.
- To promote peace and stability in the region.
- To create a wider market for goods and services.
- To reduce over dependence on foreign countries.
- To ease movement of people and goods across borders of the member states.
- To eliminate trade barriers on locally manufactured goods.
- To have common taxes on goods for similar prices.

Benefits / importance of Common markets.

- They have promoted cooperation and unity among the member states.
- They have reduced smuggling.
- They have created a wider market for goods and services.
- They have eased movement of people and goods across borders of the member states.

Challenges facing regional bodies/ Common markets in Africa.

- Shortage of funds to run their programmes effectively.
- Civil wars in some member states.
- Production of similar goods which reduces trade.
- Absence of a common language.
- Absence of a common currency.
- Importation of low quality goods due to free trade.
- Different political systems in the member states.
- Member states are forced to buy low quality goods in order to support industries in the region.

Possible solutions to the challenges facing regional bodies.

- By improving on security in the region.
- By promoting democracy and good governance.
- By diversifying economies of different countries.
- By encouraging specialisation in production of goods.
- By legalising a unifying language which is understood by most people in the region.
- By holding peace talks in order to solve conflicts between countries.



Testing Exercise.

1. Write OAU in full.
2. Name the African leader who suggested the name of OAU.
3. Why did Morocco withdraw from OAU in 1984?
4. Give any three reasons for the formation of the OAU.
5. Mention any three organs of the defunct OAU.
6. Mention any three achievements of OAU during its time of operation.
7. State any three problems that affected the effectiveness of OAU in its work.
8. Mention any three failures of OAU.
9. Give any two reasons for the formation of the AU.
10. How is Durban town related to the African Union (AU)?
11. Mention any three organs of the African Union.
12. Name any three symbols of the African Union.
13. State any three problems facing the African Union.
14. Why are African countries encouraged to export more processed goods than raw materials?
15. Give any two ways agricultural production can be increased in African countries.
16. Give the meaning of a Common market.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

17. State any three reasons for the formation of the EAC in 1967.
18. Mention the three founder members of the EAC.
19. Name the organisation which was replaced by the EAC.
20. Give one way a national flag is important to a country.
21. State any three reasons for the collapse of the EAC in 1977.
22. Give any two ways the collapse of the EAC affected international trade in the region.
23. Name the three heads of state at the time of the collapse of EAC.
24. Why is 30th November, 1999 remembered in the history of East African Community?
25. Name the three heads of state who revived the East African Community.
26. Give any three reasons why the heads of state of East African countries revived the EAC.
27. Mention the newest member state of the East African Community.
28. Give any two reasons why the above country joined the East African Community.
29. State any three ways the people of East Africa benefit from the East African Community.
30. Mention any two organs of the EAC.
31. Name the common market that unites most countries in each of the following regions of Africa.
    (i) West Africa.
    (ii) East Africa
    (iii) Southern Africa.
    (iv) Horn of Africa.
32. Mention any three symbols of the EAC.
33. Mention any three regional bodies to which Uganda is a member.
34. How is the ECOMOG important to West African countries?
35. Name the only East African country which is a member of SADC.
36. Name the Ugandan who;
    (i) Designed the Uganda national coat of arms.
    (ii) Composed the Uganda national anthem.
    (iii) Designed the Uganda national flag.
    (iv) Designed the independence monument.
37. Give any three ways economic regional groupings have promoted trade in Africa.
38. Complete the table below correctly.

Common market	*Headquarters*	*Two member states.*	
(i) COMESA	----------	----------	----------
(ii) ---------	Djibouti, Djibouti	----------	----------
(iii) ECOWAS	----------	----------	Nigeria
(iv) SADC	----------	----------	----------

39. State any four problems facing the EAC as a common market.
40. Give any two ways the above challenges can be solved.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

EXCEL STANDARD SOCIAL STUDIES

PUPIL'S BOOK 7

FIRST EDITION

BY

EXCEL PUBLISHERS

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means of electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Copyright © Excel publishers

Excel Publishers
"Excellence in every page"

For Excellence in Social Studies

ACKNOWLEDGEMENT

Developing a book of this nature requires a lot of support from colleagues, friends and family. I would like to register my deep-rooted gratitude to the following people for their unlimited assistance offered towards the completion of this book.

All teachers of Social Studies in Victoria Mutundwe Primary School and Makindye Junior school with whom I worked at various levels for their positive advice and criticism.

All authors whose books we used and consulted during our research for some of the materials in this book.

We do sincerely regret any mistakes which may be found anywhere in this book. It is not intended to be part of this book but accidental.

However, any person who does any unauthorized act in relation to this publication without prior written permission from the original authors, may be liable to criminal prosecution and civil claims for damage.

Author: Kimbugwe Apollo

PREFACE

Excel Standard Social Studies, Pupils' Book Seven has been developed basing on the revised Primary Seven Social Studies Syllabus as prescribed by the new curriculum of the National Curriculum Development Center (NCDC). The book contains accurate, relevant and current information covering all topics in all terms of the year in their order. It is intended to guide both teachers and learners.

The pupil's book cares for the interests of the learners in terms of simple and concise language used, simplified content to cater for all learners with different abilities and clear illustrations to make learning enjoyable through observation. Key words for each topic have also been included in order to enrich the learner's vocabulary and mastery of concepts.

The topics have well organized, relevant, and easy to understand notes and facts. It is written in a simple language and is well aided with maps and illustrations/diagrams where necessary to ease understanding.

The book is remarkably precise but detailed in content with no fact left hanging. It has been mainly written for Primary Seven in a language that is suitable for both rural and urban Pupils. The book can therefore be used with minimum teacher guidance.

The book has inbuilt and continuous assessment activities at the end of topic. These questions are to help the learners to test their understanding of the concepts covered and are to enable the teacher to track progress as coverage goes on. This also makes the book convenient for individual and class learning by the candidates.

The content of the book has been enriched to enable learners get solutions to the three main levels of assessment at primary level that is to say: Knowledge, Comprehension and Application.

The book is intended to provide learners with knowledge, skills and the desired attitudes and values of Social Studies and the Environment that are important to prepare learners for final assessment of the primary level.

The book is written and developed by experienced teachers of Social Studies and Religious Education and we welcome all comments on the publication with an open mind for the improvement in the teaching and learning of Social Studies. Comments and orders can be communicated directly through the following contacts:

TEL: +256 771 623617  and +256 700 770630, KAMPALA.
Email address: apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com

THEME: LIVING TOGETHER IN AFRICA

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Topic 1: Location of Africa on the Map of the World.

- Introduction to The World……6
- Continents of The World……6
- Uniqueness of Africa ……7

- Locating Africa using Lines of Longitude and Lines of Latitude 7
- Using The Prime Meridian to tell the International time.....9
- The Shape and Size of Africa.....11
- African Countries 12
- Political Regions of Africa 14
- Land Locked Countries in Africa.....15

Topic 2: Physical Features of Africa.

- Introduction to Physical Features 22
- Location of Major Physical Features in Africa.....23
- Mountains 23
- Plateaus 26
- The Great Rift Valley and Basins.....27
- Coastal Plains 28
- Lakes 28
- Rivers 31
- The Influence of Physical Features 35

Topic 3: The Climate of Africa.

- Weather 39
- Climatic Zones of Africa 43
- Factors that Influence the Climate of Africa 50
- Breezes and Pressure Belts.....53
- Climate Change.....54
- The Influence of Climate on Human Activities.....55

Topic 4: Vegetation of Africa.

- Introduction to Vegetation 60
- Vegetation Zones of Africa 60
- Vegetation Distribution in Africa 67
- The Influence of Vegetation on Animals 68
- National Parks in Africa 69
- Tourism industry in Africa 72
- The Influence of Vegetation on Population 73
- Vegetation Conservation 74

Topic 5:The People of Africa, Ethnic Groups and Settlement patterns.

- Origin of the People of Africa 78
- Major Ethnic Groups in Africa 81
- Migrations today 86
- Political, Social and Economic Organisation among The People of Africa.....90
- Trans-Saharan trade 97

Topic 6. Foreign Influence in Africa.

- Foreign Traders in Africa.....100
- Trans-Atlantic trade.....102
- Christian Missionaries in Africa.....103
- European Explorers in Africa.....107
- The Portuguese Explorers in Africa.....112

- Colonialists in Africa.....114
- Scramble for and Partition of Africa.....115
- Establishment of Colonial Rule in Africa.....117
- Colonial Administrative systems in Africa.....119
- The Great Trek 121
- Apartheid Policy in South Africa.....122
- Reactions to Colonial Rule in Africa.....124
- Effects of Colonial rule.....126

Topic 7. Nationalism and The Road to Independence in Africa.

- Pan Africanism.....131
- The Rise of African Nationalism.....133
- The Struggle for Independence in Africa.....136
- Decolonisation of Africa.....137
- Systems of Government.....139
- Elections.....141

Topic 8. Post Independence Africa.

- Formation of The OAU.....146
- Formation of The AU.....148
- Regional Economic Groupings in Africa.....150
- EAC as a Common Market.....152

Topic 9. Economic Developments in Africa.

- Economic Resources and Developments in Africa.....156
- Industrial Development in Africa.....157
- Energy Resources in Africa.....159
- Multipurpose River Projects in Africa.....159
- Agricultural Development in Africa.....161
- Mining Industry in Africa.....163
- Tourism Industry in Africa.....164
- The Fishing Industry in Africa.....165
- Case Studies of Economic Developments.....167
- Challenges affecting Economic Developments in Africa.....185

Topic 10. Major World Organisations.

- Formation of The League of Nations.....193
- The United Nations Organisation (UNO).....193
- The Universal Declaration of Human rights.....197
- The Commonwealth of Nations.....199
- Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC).....202

TOPIC 9: ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS IN AFRICA.

INTRODUCTION TO RESOURCES.

- ***A resource*** **is any component of the environment that can be used to satisfy man's needs.**
- ***Natural resources*** **are components of the environment that exist on their own and can be used to satisfy man's needs.**
- **Natural resources are classified into renewable and non-renewable resources.**
- ***Renewable resources*** **are things in the environment used to satisfy man's needs that cannot get exhausted when used. e.g. wind / air, sunshine, water, soil.**
- **Renewable resources are also called *inexhaustible resources*.**
- ***Non-renewable resources*** **are components of the environment used to satisfy man's needs that can get exhausted when used. e.g. minerals, fossil fuels etc.**
- **Non-renewable resources are also called *exhaustible resources.***
- **Economic resources are resources which African countries depend on to earn revenue.**

Economic resources in Africa include;

- **Land / soil**
- **Climate**
- **Animals**
- **Water**
- **Minerals**
- **People**
- **Vegetation.**
- **Climate**

Note. -*Land is considered to be the most important resource because most of man's activities are carried out on land.*

Importance of various natural resources to Africa's development.

Land	• **It is used to grow crops, build on it factories, grazing animals, construct roads and railway lines, making bricks, source of income when sold.**
Animals	• **Some are a source of meat, milk** • **Some provide raw materials to industries eg.hides, skins, hooves etc.** • **Some animals are a source of income when sold.** • **Some animals are used as means of transport.**
Human resource/ people/ labour	• **They provide services to other people.** • **They help in management of other resources.** • **People provide market for goods and services.** • **They pay taxes to the government.** **Note:** ***-Unskilled labour*** *are people without training to do something.* *-**Semi-skilled labour** are people who have some training to do something.* *-**Skilled labour** are people who are trained to do something.*
Plants	• **They are a source of herb al medicine.** • **Vegetation helps in formation of rain which supports crop growing.** • **Plants are habitats for wild animals** • **Some plants attract tourists who bring in income.** • **Trees provide timber, wood fuel etc.**
Minerals	• **They are a source of income when sold.** • **They are used as raw materials in industries.** • **Mineral exports earn foreign exchange.** • **They are a source of employment to people.**
Sunshine	• **It helps in formation of rain which supports crop cultivation.** • **It helps in generation of solar electricity.** • **It provides light to people.** • **It helps plants to make their own food.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Waterbodies	• They are fishing grounds. • They are used as a medium of water transport. • They help in rain formation which promotes crop growing. • Rivers help in generation of hydro electricity. • Waterbodies attract tourists who bring in income.
Wind	• It helps in pollination of flowers. • It is used in winnowing. • It is used to generate power used in wind mills.

Factors hindering effective resource utilisation in Africa.

- ❖Shortage of skilled labour force.
- ❖Low level of technology.
- ❖Political instability in some parts of Africa.
- ❖Limited capital invested in resource utilisation.

ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS IN AFRICA.

- ***Economic development*** refers to the gradual growth in the economy of an area.
- ***Economy*** is the relationship between production, trade and supply of money in a particular area.

Indicators of Economic development in Africa.

- Development of regional bodies.
- Improved social services.
- High life expectancy.
- Industrial development.
- High levels of technology.
- Improved transport and communication.
- High levels of employment.
- Infrastructural development.

Major Economic developments in Africa.

- Industrialisation.
- Development of agriculture.
- Development of hydroelectric power dams.
- Formation of regional bodies.
- Development of the mining industry.
- Development of modern roads, airports and railway lines.
- Development of the tourism industry.

Factors that have promoted economic development in Africa.

- ❖ Formation of regional bodies.
- ❖ Improved transport and communication network.
- ❖ Presence of natural resources.
- ❖ Foreign aid.
- ❖ Increased levels of literacy.
- ❖ Availability of skilled and unskilled labour force.
- ❖ Peace and security in most parts of Africa.

Key sectors in the economy of Africa.

- Agriculture.
- Tourism
- Trade
- Mining
- Energy production.
- Industrial development.
- Fishing.
- Lumbering.

INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT IN AFRICA.

- ***An industry*** is a combination of firms producing related products.
- ***Industrialisation*** is the development of industries in an area on a large scale.

Types of industries.

Type	*Meaning*	*Examples.*
Primary industry.	It is an industry that deals with the production raw materials	• Farming industry • Lumbering industry. • Fishing industry • Mining industry

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Secondary industry	It is an industry that processes raw materials into manufactured goods.	• All Processing/ manufacturing industries e.g. meat processing industry, fish processing industry.
Tertiary industry	It is an industry that deals with the provision of social services.	• Transport industry • Banking industry • Communication industry • Tourism industry

Factors to consider before setting up an industry in an area.

- Availability of land.
- Availability of capital.
- Presence of raw materials.
- Availability of a water source.
- Market for goods.
- Availability of labour force.
- Government policy.
- Transport and communication network.
- Peace and stability.
- Energy source.

Importance of each of the above factors.

- *Capital* is used for buying raw materials, meeting transport costs and paying for labour.
- *Raw materials* are used in manufacturing goods.
- *Market* is used for selling off the processed goods.
- *Transport* makes movement of raw materials and processed goods faster and less expensive.
- *Energy* is used to run/ operate machines in industries.
- *Water* is used for cooling machines in industries.
- *Communication* helps buyers and sellers to get in touch.
- *Labour* is used in the management of industrial processes like in operating machines in industries.
- *Land* is used for establishment of structures and expansion of an industry.

Benefits of people to a nearby industry

- People provide raw materials to industries.
- They provide labour force in industries.
- They provide market for industrial goods.

Benefits of establishing an industry in an area.

- It creates job opportunities to people.
- It is a source of government revenue through taxing an industry.
- It creates market for goods produced in the community.
- It promotes the development of infrastructure like roads.
- It promotes the development of towns.

Note:

-***Agro-based industries*** *are industries which use agricultural produce as their raw materials.*

-***Textile industries*** *are industries which use cotton as their raw material.*

Dangers of setting up industries in an area.

- It leads to pollution of the environment.
- It promotes deforestation.
- It leads to displacement of wild animals.

Factors that have promoted Industrial development in Africa.

- Presence of raw materials.
- Improved peace and security.
- Availability of capital.
- Presence of energy sources.
- Presence of cheap labour force.
- Availability of large market for industrial goods.
- Favourable government policies.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Contributions of Industries to Africa's development.

- ❖ Industries provide job opportunities to people.
- ❖ They promote the development of towns.
- ❖ Exported industrial goods earn foreign exchange.
- ❖ Industries encourage agricultural production.
- ❖ They provide goods to people at cheap prices.

Problems affecting Industrial production in Africa.

- ❖ Limited energy supply.
- ❖ Shortage of funds.
- ❖ Limited supply of raw materials.
- ❖ Shortage of skilled labour force.
- ❖ Limited market for industrial goods.
- ❖ Political instability in some parts of Africa.
- ❖ Smuggling which reduces market for locally manufactured goods.

Note: -***Excise duty tax*** *is the tax paid on locally manufactured goods while* ***Customs duty tax*** *is the tax paid on imports.*

ENERGY RESOURCES IN AFRICA.

- Energy resources refers to things that can be exploited to generate energy.

Examples of energy resources.

- Animal wastes.
- Natural gas
- Crude oil
- Uranium
- Hot springs
- Fast flowing water
- Sunshine.
- Wind

Types of energy

- ❖ Solar energy generated from sunshine.
- ❖ Geothermal energy generated from hot springs.
- ❖ Hydro electricity from fast flowing water.
- ❖ Bio gas from animal wastes.
- ❖ Nuclear energy from uranium.
- ❖ Thermal energy from crude oil.
- ❖ Wind energy from wind.

HYDRO ELECTRIC POWER DAMS IN AFRICA.

- ***Hydro electricity*** is the type of energy which is generated by the power of flowing water.
- Hydro electricity is generated from rivers with waterfalls.
- ***A dam*** is a wall built across a river to control the flow of water and form a reservoir.
- Hydro electricity is the commonest used energy in Africa.

Advantages of Hydroelectricity.

- ❖ It does not pollute the environment.
- ❖ It can be used by many people for different purposes at the same time.

Disadvantages of Hydroelectricity.

- ❖ Power dams are very expensive to build.
- ❖ Creation of reservoirs leads to displacement of people.
- ❖ It is very expensive to pay for electricity bills.
- ❖ Creation of dams limits water supply by the same river from one area to another.
- ❖ Reservoirs cause flooding which destroys the natural environment.

MULTIPURPOSE RIVER PROJECTS IN AFRICA.

- ***A Multipurpose river project*** is a project set up on a river to serve several purposes.
- It involves the development of a dam on a large river extended over a large geographical area.
- This project serves many purposes at a single time such as acting as a hydroelectric power plant, provision of clean water, providing water for irrigation and checking the flow of river water hence the name multipurpose river projects.

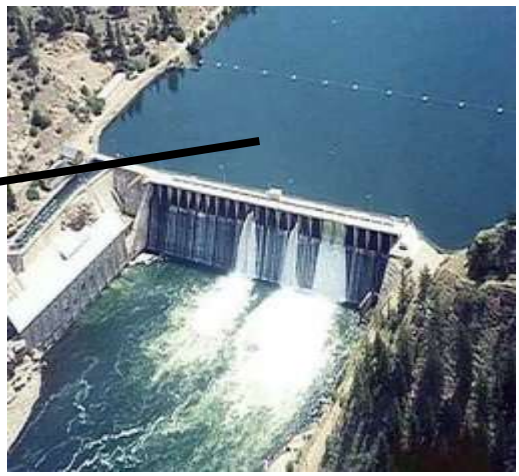
apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Examples of Multipurpose river projects in Africa.

River	*Multipurpose river project*	*Country*
River Nile	• Nalubaale power dam • Bujagali dam • Kiira dam	Uganda
	• Aswan High dam.	Egypt
	• Sennar dam • Roseires dam • Jebel Aulia dam	Sudan
River Niger	• Kainji dam	Nigeria.
River Volta	• Akosombo dam	Ghana
River Tana	• Seven forks dam (Masinga, Kamburu, Kindaruma, Gitaru and Kiambere dam)	Kenya
River Congo	• Inga dam • Nzilo dam	DRC
River Zambezi	• Kariba dam	Zambia
	• Cahora Bassa	Mozambique.
River Rufiji	• Mtera dam • Kidatu dam	Tanzania
River Pangani	• Nyumba ya Mungu dam	Tanzania

Major reservoirs in Africa.

Power dam	*Reservoir created*
Nalubaale power dam	Lake Victoria
Kariba dam	Lake Kariba
Aswan high dam	Lake Nasser
Akosombo dam	Lake Volta
Kainji dam	Lake Kainji
Nyumba ya Mungu dam	Nyumba ya Mungu lake



Kainji dam along River Niger in Nigeria

Note:

*-**Lake Volta** is the largest reservoir/ man made lake in Africa.*

*-**A reservoir** is an artificial or natural lake where water is stored before it is supplied to other areas.*

Why reservoirs are created/ built

- ***To control floods***
- ***To store water for irrigation.***
- ***To generate hydro electric power.***

Importance of reservoirs.

- They provide water for irrigation.
- They act as fishing grounds.
- They help in generation of hydro electricity.
- They are used for recreation and tourism.

Factors that favour the development of hydroelectric power dams.

- Presence of constant flow of water.
- Presence of narrow deep valleys.
- Presence of water falls.
- Presence of strong rocks that give a strong foundation.
- Presence of reliable market for hydroelectric power.

Problems affecting Hydroelectric power generation in Africa.

- Low levels of technology.
- Limited skilled labour force.
- Shortage of capital.

- ❖ Changes in the volume of water in some rivers.
- ❖ Low consumption of hydroelectric power.

Advantages of Multipurpose river projects.

- ❖ They create employment to people.
- ❖ They help in controlling floods.
- ❖ They improve navigation on rivers.
- ❖ They increase power generation.
- ❖ They generate revenue to the government through exporting Hydro electricity.
- ❖ They provide water for irrigation .

Importance of Energy in the development of Africa.

- ❖ It is used to operate machines in industries.
- ❖ It is used in pumping clean water for domestic use.
- ❖ It is used to operate communication facilities.
- ❖ It is used for lighting homes, industries and streets.
- ❖ It promotes mechanisation of farming activities.

Rural electrification.

- This is the extension/ supply of electricity to rural areas.

Benefits of Rural electrification.

- ❖ It promotes the development of rural areas.
- ❖ It saves human time and labour in rural areas.
- ❖ It reduces the need for wood fuel hence conserving the natural environment.

Qn: *How does rural electrification promote conservation of the natural environment?*

Challenges hindering Rural electrification.

- ❖ Shortage of funds.
- ❖ Poor transport network.
- ❖ Corruption.
- ❖ Ignorance among the people

AGRICULTURAL DEVELOPMENT IN AFRICA

- ***Agriculture*** is the growing of crops and rearing of animals.
- It is also called farming.
- Agriculture is the back bone of Africa's economy because it employs the biggest population in Africa hence the major source of income for African countries.
- Most people in Africa carry out small scale farming (subsistence farming) because it is very cheap to practice.

They grow non-traditional cash crops like beans, maize, ground nuts, rice, potatoes etc.

- Large scale / commercial farming (plantation farming) is not commonly practiced in Africa because it is very expensive to be practiced.
- Crops grown under this system include; coffee, cotton, tea, sisal, oil palm, cocoa.

Factors that have promoted Agricultural development in Africa.

- ❖ Presence of fertile soils.
- ❖ Presence of reliable rainfall.
- ❖ Availability of ready market for agricultural produce.
- ❖ Improved transport and communication network.
- ❖ Political stability in most parts of Africa.
- ❖ Availability of ready market for agricultural produce.
- ❖ Presence of high labour force.

IRRIGATION FARMING IN AFRICA.

- ***Irrigation*** is the artificial supply of water on land to support plant growth.
- ***Irrigation farming*** is the system of crop growing in which land is supplied with water by human means to support plant growth.
- ***Irrigation scheme*** is an area of land which is supplied with water by human means to support crop growth.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- Irrigation schemes are mostly set up in areas that do not receive reliable rainfall (dry areas).
- These areas much be having reliable permanent sources of water.

Notable Irrigation schemes in Africa.

- Gezira irrigation scheme for cotton.
- Managil irrigation scheme for cotton.
- Kenana irrigation scheme for sugar canes.
- Mwea Tebere irrigation scheme for rice.
- Kilombero valley irrigation scheme for sugar canes.
- Doho irrigation scheme for rice
- Ongom irrigation scheme in lira for citrus fruits.
- Olweny swamp irrigation scheme in Lira for rice
- Nsimbe and Rosebud irrigation schemes for flowers.

Irrigation scheme	*Source of water*	*District / country*	*Crops grown*
Doho	R. Manafwa	Butaleja	Rice.
Mubuku	R. Mubuku And R. Sebwe	Kasese	Mixed Crops
Tilda (Kibimba)	R. Mpologoma	Bugiri	Rice
Sango Bay	L. Victoria	Rakai	Sugarcanes and Maize
Kunifra	R. Kafu	Masindi	Sugarcanes
Kakira	L. Victoria	Jinja	Sugarcanes
Lugazi	L. Victoria	Buikwe	Sugarcanes
Pabo	R. Achwa	Kitgum	Rice
Kiige	L. Nabigaga	Kamuli	Citrus fruits
Agoro	R. Agago	Lamwo	Tomatoes, Okra, Maize
Mwea Tebere	R. Tana	Kenya	Rice
Gezira	Blue Nile	Sudan	Cotton.

Common methods of Irrigation.

- Gravity flow method
- Overhead sprinkler method

Advantages of Irrigation farming.

- ❖ Crops are grown at any time of the year.
- ❖ It promotes food security in the country.
- ❖ Irrigation farming helps to put idle desert land into use.
- ❖ Crops grow well without being affected by sunshine.

Disadvantages of Irrigation farming.

- ❖ It is very expensive to practice.
- ❖ It is not possible where there is no reliable source of water.
- ❖ It leads to soil leaching.

Contributions of Agriculture to Africa's development

- ❖ It provides a steady source of food to people.
- ❖ It is a source of raw materials for agro-based industries.
- ❖ Agricultural exports earn African countries foreign exchange.
- ❖ It has promoted the development of infrastructure like roads, railways.
- ❖ It is a source of employment to people.

Problems facing Agriculture in Africa.

- ❖ Shortage of funds.
- ❖ Prolonged drought.
- ❖ Presence of pests and diseases.
- ❖ Limited local market for agricultural produce.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- ❖ Poor transport network.
- ❖ Political instability in some parts of Africa.
- ❖ Competition from other sectors e.g. mining, tourism, fishing.
- ❖ Fluctuation of prices for agricultural produce.
- ❖ Rural-urban migration which reduces labour force on farms in rural areas.

Possible solutions to the problems affecting agricultural development in Africa.

- ❖ By providing small scale loans to farmers.
- ❖ By building better roads in different parts of Africa.
- ❖ By encouraging the use of irrigation farming.
- ❖ By promoting peace and security in all parts of Africa.
- ❖ By encouraging the use of pesticides and insecticides.

MINING INDUSTRY IN AFRICA.

- ***Mining*** is the extraction of minerals from where they exist.
- ***Minerals*** are valuable substances which exist naturally that are found on or below the earth's surface.
- ***A mineral deposit*** is a place where a particular mineral exists naturally in large amount.

Types of minerals.

- Metallic minerals e.g. copper, iron ore, lead, zinc.
- Non-metallic minerals e.g. Limestone, phosphates, diamonds.
- Fuel minerals e.g. Coal, crude oil, uranium.

Countries in Africa with the biggest quantities of minerals.

- South Africa.
- Democratic Republic of Congo
- Angola
- Botswana.

Types of mining.

- Traditional mining
- Modern mining.

Methods of mining

- Open cast mining e.g. salt, soda ash, limestone, gold.
- Underground mining e.g. copper, cobalt
- Drilling method e.g. crude oil

Importance of some particular minerals.

Mineral	*Importance*	*Area(s) where it exists*
Soda ash	❖ For making glasses	• Lake Magadi
Copper	❖ For making electric wires and copper coins.	• Kilembe in Kasese • Zambia copper belt • Katanga province in DRC.
Diamonds	❖ For making jewellery, drilling machines and equipment used for cutting glasses.	• Mwadui in Shinyanga • Kimberley in South Africa
Gold	❖ For making ornaments, jewellery, trophies, medals.	• Witwatersrand in South Africa. • In Karamoja.
Limestone.	❖ For making cement	• Hima in Kasese • Osukuru hills in Tororo
Salt	❖ For preserving food and human consumption/ for adding flavour to food.	• Lake Katwe • Lake Magadi
Petroleum/ Crude oil	❖ For making fuels e.g. petrol, diesel, oil, paraffin.	• Shores of lake Albert (Albertine region) • Niger delta in Nigeria

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Phosphates	❖ For making artificial fertilizers.	• In Tororo

Factors that have promoted the development of the Mining industry in Africa.

- ❖ Presence on many mineral deposits in different parts of Africa.
- ❖ Political stability in most parts of Africa.
- ❖ Availability of capital.
- ❖ Availability of both skilled and unskilled labour force.
- ❖ Availability of large market for minerals.
- ❖ Availability of reliable sources of energy.
- ❖ Improved transport and communication network in most parts of Africa.
- ❖ High levels of technology.

Contributions of the Mining industry to Africa's development.

- ❖ It is a source of foreign exchange to the government.
- ❖ It is a source of employment opportunities to people.
- ❖ It has promoted the development of roads and railway lines.
- ❖ It leads to urbanisation.
- ❖ It is a source of raw materials for industries.

Problems facing Africa's Mining industry.

- ❖ Shortage of capital.
- ❖ Low levels of technology.
- ❖ Shortage of skilled labour force.
- ❖ Unreliable power supply.
- ❖ Mineral exhaustion in some areas.
- ❖ Competition from other sectors e.g. agriculture, fishing etc
- ❖ Poor transport network in different parts of Africa.

Possible solutions to the problems facing the Mining industry in Africa.

- ❖ By constructing better roads to the mining sites.
- ❖ By training more miners.
- ❖ The government should invest more money in the mining industry.
- ❖ By borrowing money from international institutions to invest in the mining industry.
- ❖ By giving tax benefits to foreign investors who invest in the mining industry.

Dangers caused by mining.

- ❖ It leads to pollution of the environment.
- ❖ It leads to displacement of people and animals.
- ❖ It leads to land degradation.
- ❖ It promotes soil erosion.
- ❖ It promotes devegetation.

TOURISM INDUSTRY IN AFRICA.

- ***Tourism*** is the movement of people to places of interest for pleasure, enjoyment or study purpose.
- ***A tourist*** is a person who travels to places of interest for pleasure, enjoyment and study purposes.

Tourism is called an industry because;

- It generates income.
- It creates job opportunities to people.
- Tourism is called an ***invisible trade*** because it generates income without exchanging physical goods.
- Tourism is called an ***invisible export*** because it generates foreign exchange without exporting physical goods.

Types of tourists.

- Local tourists
- International tourists/ foreign tourists.
- *Local tourists* move from one part of the country to another for tourism while *international tourists* move from one country to another for tourism.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Tourist attractions in Africa.

- Wildlife
- Physical features
- Climate
- Historical sites
- Beautiful beaches
- Culture

Factors that have promoted the development of the Tourism in Africa.

- ❖ Presence of various tourist attractions in most parts of Africa.
- ❖ Improved transport and communication network.
- ❖ Political stability in most parts of Africa.
- ❖ Availability of better accommodation facilities in Africa.

Contributions of the Tourism industry to the development of Africa.

- ❖ It creates job opportunities to people.
- ❖ It promotes the development of infrastructure like roads, lodges, hotels.
- ❖ It promotes international relationship.
- ❖ It creates market for locally manufactured goods.
- ❖ It is a source of revenue to the government.
- ❖ It promotes conservation of wildlife.

Problems facing the Tourism industry in Africa.

- ❖ Political instability in some parts of Africa.
- ❖ Poor transport and communication network.
- ❖ Poor accommodation facilities
- ❖ Shortage of funds to promote the industry.
- ❖ Limited tourist attractions in some parts of Africa.
- ❖ Limited advertisement of tourist attractions on international media.

Possible solutions to the problems facing Africa's Tourism industry.

- ❖ By improving on security in Africa.
- ❖ By enforcing laws against poaching.
- ❖ By constructing better roads in all parts of Africa.
- ❖ By advertising Africa's tourist attractions on international media.
- ❖ By importing new species of wildlife in Africa.
- ❖ By training more game wardens.
- ❖ By building better accommodation facilities in Africa.
- ❖ By gazetting more wildlife conservation areas.

Dangers of Tourism.

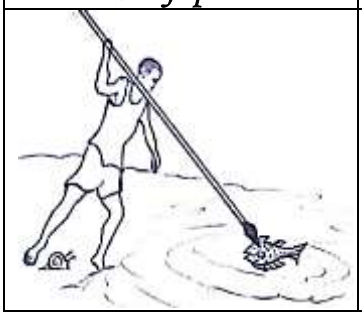
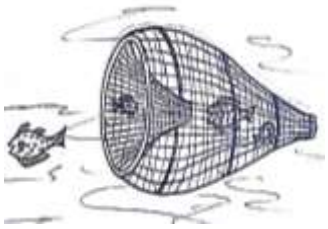
- ❖ Some tourists come as spies.
- ❖ Tourism can bring about spread of diseases in the country.
- ❖ Tourism can bring about change of culture.
- ❖ Some tourists teach people anti-social behaviours.

THE FISHING INDUSTRY IN AFRICA.

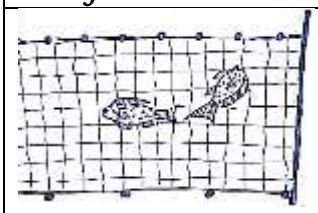
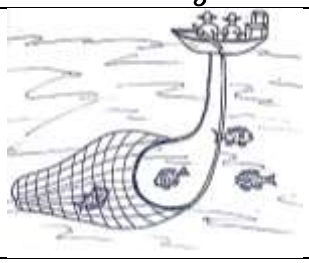
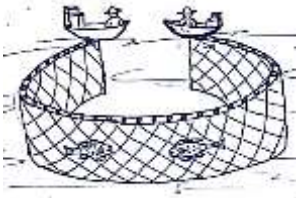
- *Fishing* is the extraction of fish from water bodies.
- Fishing in Africa is carried out in rivers, lakes, oceans and seas.
- Lake Victoria is the largest inland fishing ground in Africa.
- Nile perch is the largest fish species caught in Africa while Tilapia is the commonest type caught.
- Fish caught in Africa is sold locally to the consumers while some is exported to Europe and other continents.
- Traditional fishing methods used in Africa include;

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Use of baskets, hooks, spears and using bows and arrows.

use of spears	*use of hooks*	*use of bows and arrows*	*use of baskets*
			

- Modern methods of fishing such as, gill net method, trawling, line fishing method and drifting are also used.

Gill net method	*Trawling*	*Drifting*	*Line fishing method*
			

- Fish is preserved locally by smoking it, sun drying it and salting it. Refrigeration and tinning/canning are the commonly used modern methods of fish preservation in Africa.

Factors that have promoted the development of the Fishing industry in Africa.

- ❖ Availability of large fishing grounds.
- ❖ Availability of skilled and unskilled labour force.
- ❖ Availability of capital invested in the fishing industry.
- ❖ Availability of both local and international market.
- ❖ High levels of technology which has favoured the use of modern fishing methods eg.trawling method.

Contributions of the Fishing industry to Africa's development.

- ❖ It is a source of employment opportunities to people.
- ❖ Exported fish earns foreign exchange to the government.
- ❖ It is a source of food to people.
- ❖ Fish is used as a raw material in fish processing industries.
- ❖ Fish is a source of income when sold.
- ❖ Fish is used for making drugs e.g. Cod liver oil.
- ❖ It promotes the development of ports and landing sites.

Problems facing the Fishing industry in Africa.

- ❖ Indiscriminate fishing (catching of young fish) which leads to extinction of fish species.
- ❖ Water pollution which kills fish.
- ❖ Presence of water hyacinth.
- ❖ Limited capital.
- ❖ Presence of fish predators.
- ❖ Fluctuation of fish prices.
- ❖ Cultural beliefs which discourage some people from eating fish.
- ❖ Limited local market for fish due to high levels of poverty among the population.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Dangers of water hyacinth.

- It suffocates fish.
- It hinders water transport.
- It blocks fishing grounds.
- It breaks fishing nets.
- It harbours some disease vectors.

Ways of controlling water hyacinth.

- By spraying it with chemicals.
- By using machines to remove it.
- By using manual methods to remove it.
- By introducing beetles to feed on it.

Possible solutions to the problems facing the Fishing industry.

- By protecting fishing grounds from pollution.
- By encouraging foreign investors in Africa.
- By enforcing laws against indiscriminate fishing.
- By teaching fishermen the dangers of poor fishing methods.
- By encouraging people to practice fish farming.
- The government should provide fishermen with loans to invest in the fishing industry.

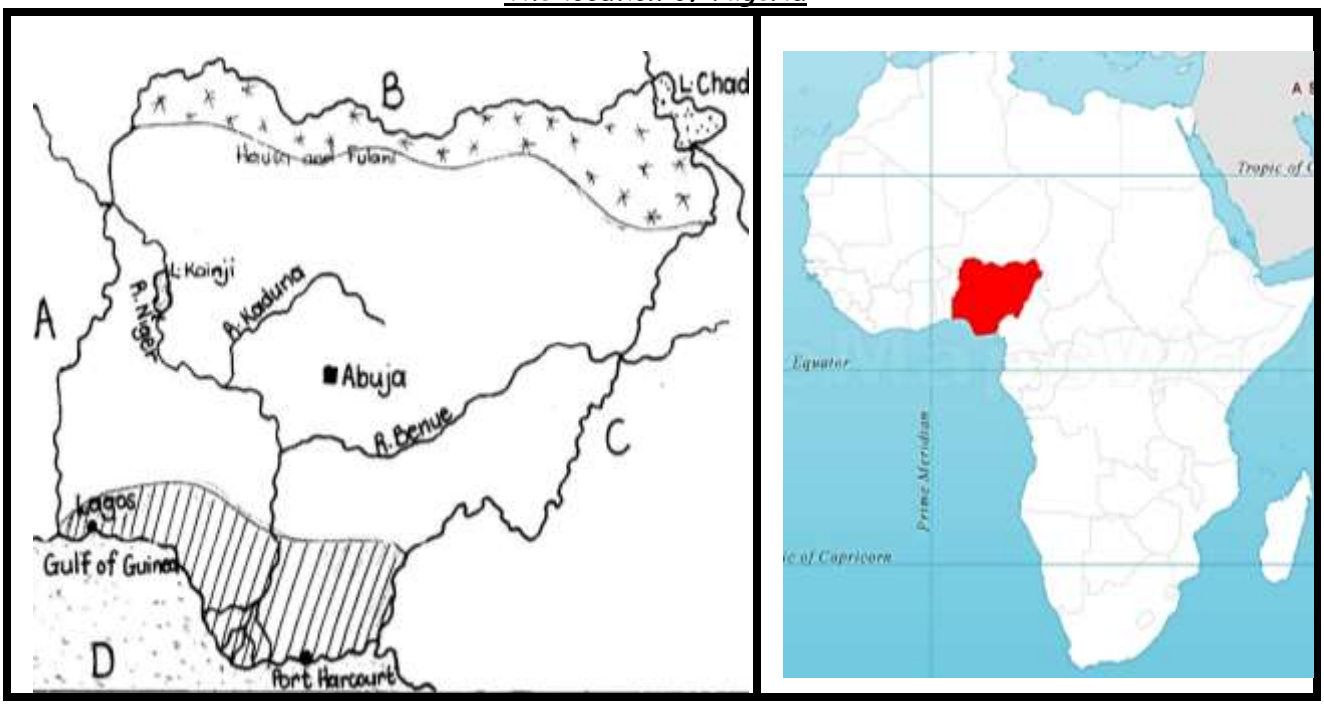
MAJOR ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS IN AFRICA (CASE STUDIES)

1. NIGERIA

Region of Africa	❖ West Africa
Capital city	❖ Abuja
Largest city	❖ Lagos
Official language	❖ English
Dominant tribes	-Hausa -Igbo -Yoruba
Religion(s)	❖ Christianity (52%) ❖ Islam (47%)
Current president	❖ Muhammadu Buhari
First president	❖ Nnamdi Benjamin Azikiwe
Independence from	❖ Great Britain
Date of independence	❖ 1st October, 1960
Population	❖ Over 190 million people
Currency	❖ Naira / Nigerian Naira
Time zone	❖ GMT + 1hr
Calling code	❖ +234
Neighbours	❖ Benin in the _____ ❖ Cameroon in the _____ ❖ Niger in the _____ ❖ Chad in the _____ ❖ Gulf of Guinea in the Atlantic ocean in the _____
Climate	❖ Equatorial climate ❖ Tropical / savannah climate ❖ Semi-desert climate
Hydroelectric power dam	❖ Kainji dam
Major economic activity	❖ Oil mining
Major sea ports	-Port Harcourt -Port Lagos.
Major physical features.	-River Niger -Jos plateau -River Benue -Adamawa highlands
Major minerals mined	-Crude oil / Petroleum -Coal -Iron ore -Uranium
Crops grown	-Oil palm -Cocoa -Rubber -Ground nuts

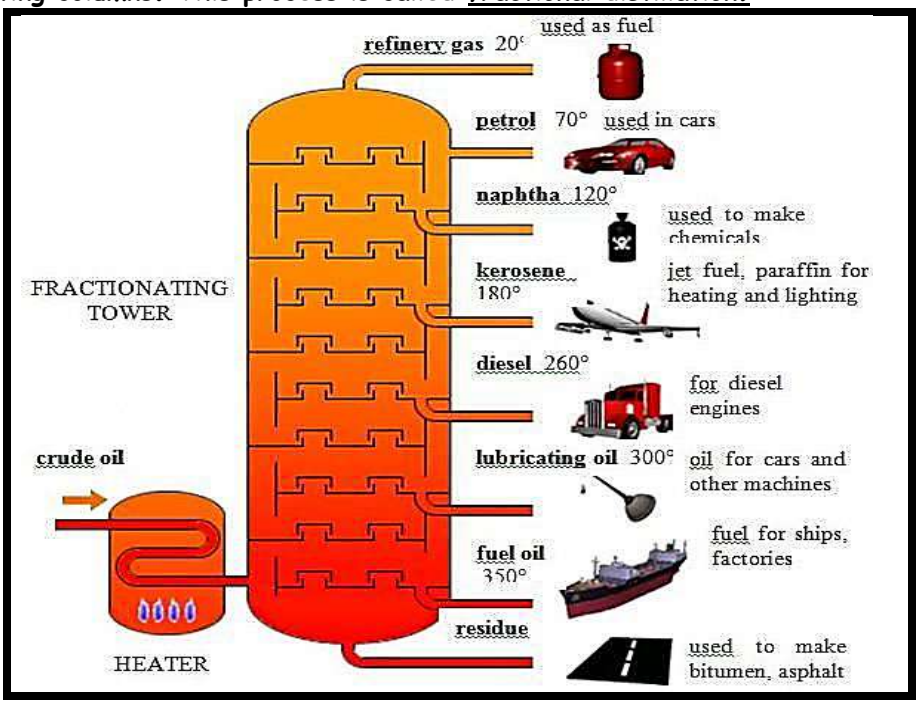
apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

The location of Nigeria



OIL MINING IN NIGERIA.

- **Nigeria is the leading producer of petroleum in Africa.**
- **Nigeria is largely dependent on oil drilling.**
- **The search for oil in Nigeria began in 1937 but the actual mining started in 1956 after the discovery of large quantities of oil in the mangrove swamps of the Niger delta.**
- **Crude oil cannot be used in raw form. It is refined in order to enable the manufacturing of oil products like petrol, diesel, kerosene, aviation fuel and others.**
- **By-products obtained from crude oil include; fertilizers, insecticides, drugs. etc**
- **Crude oil refining takes place at an oil refinery using machine heaters and separators called fractionating columns. This process is called *fractional distillation.***



apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- **Nigeria's oil is refined at Port Harcourt, Warri and Kaduna.**
- **Oil is transported by pipelines to ports and exported using large water vessels called oil tankers.**
- ***Nigeria's oil is not the leading oil exporter in Africa because*;**
  - **Nigeria's oil has a lot of impurities (sulphur) which makes it pollute the environment so much when burnt.**
  - **Nigeria is far away from Europe which makes it costly to transport her oil to the European buyers.**

Note:

- *In Uganda, oil was discovered around Lake Albert by the Heritage Company of Canada.*
- *Many oil wells were discovered in an entire passage from Arua in West Nile to Kanungu. Such oil wells include;Ngasa, Waraga, Mputa, Kingfisher, Karuka, Ngege etc.*
- *Oil drilling and refining will be done by Multinational companies such as Tullow Oil Company, China National offshore Oil Company and Total.*

Contributions of Oil mining to Nigeria's development.

- **It is a source of foreign exchange to the government.**
- **It has promoted the development of industries.**
- **It has created job opportunities to the people in Nigeria.**
- **It has promoted the development of roads.**
- **It is a source of cheap fuel to the people of Nigeria.**

Problems facing oil mining in Nigeria.

- ***Fluctuation of oil prices.***
- ***Competition from other oil producing countries.***
- ***Insecurity in some parts of the country.***

Problems caused by oil mining in Nigeria.

- ***Pollution of the environment.***
- ***It has led to rural-urban migration which reduces labour force in rural areas.***
- ***It has led to shortage of labour in other sectors.***

AGRICULTURE IN NIGERIA.

- **Agriculture is one of the major economic activities carried out in Nigeria.**
- **It includes crop cultivation and animal rearing.**
- ***Oil palm* is the chief cash crop grown in Nigeria.**
- **Oil palm growing requires heavy rainfall and high temperatures.**
- **Oil palm is used by the people of Nigeria to get palm oil from which palm wine, margarine, soap, candles and cooking oil are made.**
- **Its branch materials are used as fuel and for thatching houses.**
- **Other cash crops grown in Nigeria include; cocoa, coffee, rubber and cotton.**
- **Food crops grown in Nigeria include; bananas, maize, cassava, yams, millet, sorghum and ground nuts.**

Note:

- *In comparison to Uganda, oil palm growing is largely done in Kalangala by Bidco Oil Company.*
- *Harvested oil palm nuts are transported to Jinja for processing and Bidco cooking oil, Bidco washing soap and other products are obtained.*

Factors that have favoured Oil palm growing in Nigeria.

- **Presence of heavy rainfall received in the country.**
- **Presence of high temperatures experienced in the country**
- **Availability of well drained fertile soils.**

Contributions of Oil palm growing to the development of Nigeria.

- **Oil palm exports earn the country foreign exchange.**
- **It is a source of raw materials for agro-based industries.**
- **It has promoted the development of infrastructure like roads, railways.**
- **It is a source of employment to people.**

PASTORALISM IN NIGERIA.

- **Pastoralism in Nigeria is carried out by the *Fulani* people.**
- **The Fulani live in the Northern part of Nigeria which experiences Semi-desert climate.**
- **They mainly rear cattle and sheep.**
- **They use horses as main means of transport for surveying grazing areas.**
- **They exchange their cattle for cereals, root crops and vegetables.**
- **During the dry season, they move southwards in search for pasture and water for their animals.**
- **After the dry season, they move back northwards.**
- **This practice is called Transhumance.**

Note:

- ***Nomadic pastoralism*** *is the system of animal rearing where farmers moves with their animals from one place to another in search for pasture and water.*
- ***Transhumance*** *is the system of animal rearing where people move with their animals from one place to another due to changes in seasons.*

Reasons why the Fulani practice nomadism.

- **To search for pasture for animals.**
- **To search for water for animals.**
- **To search for tsetse fly-free grazing areas.**

Importance of livestock to the Fulani.

- **It is a source of income when sold.**
- **It is a source of food.**
- **It is used to settle disputes in form of fines.**
- **It is used for paying bride price.**
- **It is a source of skins and hides used for making foot wear and shelter.**

Problems facing the Fulani.

- **Outbreak of animal diseases**
- **Limited grazing land.**
- **Prolonged drought which leads to shortage of pasture for animals.**
- **Shortage of water for animals.**

Note:

- *The Fulani of Nigeria practice transhumance while the Karimojongs of Uganda and the Turkana of Kenya practice nomadic pastoralism.*
- *The government of Uganda has built valley dams in Karamoja subregion to provide water to animals*
- *Pastoral tribes can be resettled- by building valley dams in areas where they stay.*
  -and starting irrigation projects
- *The governments of East African countries have disarmed the pastoral tribes in order to control cattle rustling amongst them.*

Contributions of livestock farming to the economic development of Nigeria.

- **It is a source of employment opportunities to people.**
- **It is a source of raw materials to industries.**
- **Exported animal products earn foreign exchange to Nigeria.**
- **It is a source of food to the Nigerians.**
- **It is a source of government revenue through taxing livestock farmers.**

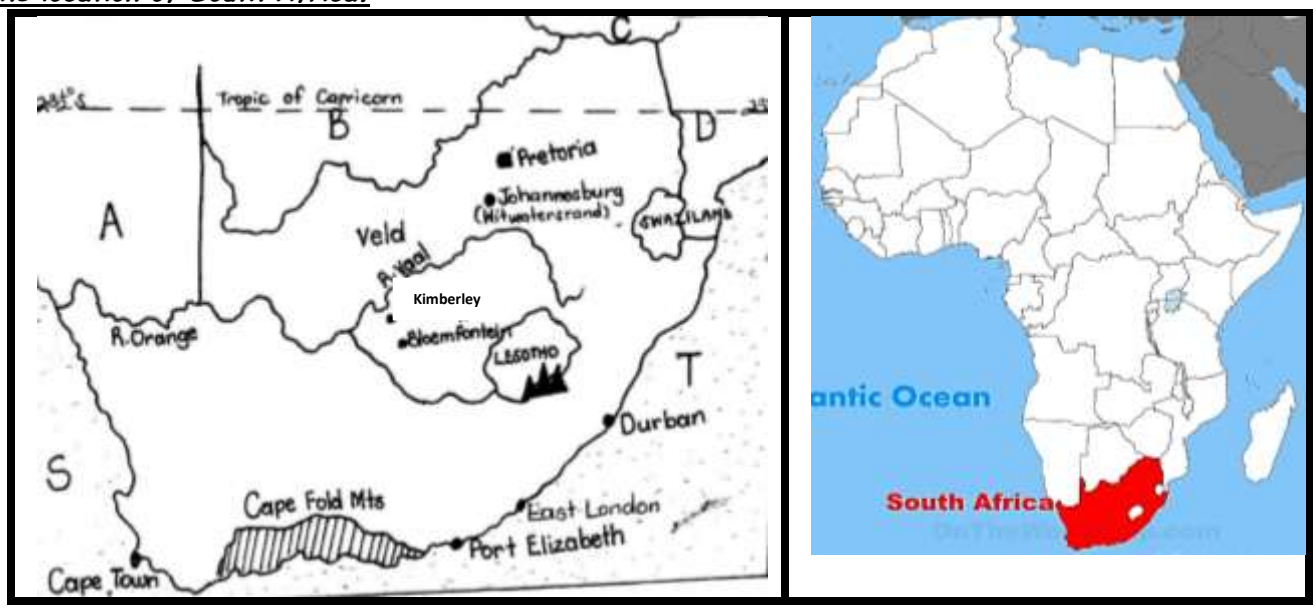
apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

2. THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA.

Region of Africa.	❖ Southern Africa
Capital city	❖ Pretoria (Executive capital city) ❖ Bloemfontein (Judicial) ❖ Cape Town (Legislative)
Largest city	❖ Johannesburg
Official language.  	❖ English Other official languages -Zulu -Venda - Ndebele -Sotho -Tswana -Tsonga -Xhosa -Afrikaans
Current president	❖ Cyril Ramaphosa (since 15th February, 2018)
Last white president	❖ Frederik de Klerk
First black president	❖ Nelson Mandela
Independence from	❖ Great Britain
Date of independence	❖ 10th may, 1994
Population	❖ Over 60 million people
Currency	❖ South African Rand
Time zone	❖ GMT + 2hrs
Calling code	❖ +27
Religions	❖ Anglicans (73%) ❖ Catholics (7%) ❖ Muslims (2%)
Neighbours	❖ Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe to the _____ ❖ Mozambique and Swaziland to the _____ ❖ Atlantic ocean to the _____ ❖ Indian ocean to the _____
Main sea ports	❖ Cape Town ❖ Port Elizabeth ❖ Port Durban ❖ Port East London.
Climate	❖ Mediterranean climate at the Cape province. ❖ Temperate climate in the High Veld. ❖ Tropical / Savannah climate in the North. ❖ Semi-desert climate in the extreme North.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

The location of South Africa.



MINING INDUSTRY IN SOUTH AFRICA.

- **Mining has been the main driving force behind the development of South Africa's economy.**
- **Large scale mining in South Africa started with the discovery of Diamond by the Boers at Kimberley in Orange Free State in 1867. The Diamond mines are on the banks of river Orange.**
- **Gold was later discovered at Witwatersrand in 1886.**
- **South Africa is the world's largest producer of iron, lead, chromium, manganese, platinum, vanadium, limestone, phosphates, copper, tin, uranium etc.**

NB: *-Coal is used for power production while Chromium is the metal added to Iron to make stainless steel, from which stainless steel forks, knives, spoons are made.*

Factors that have contributed to the development of the mining industry in South Africa.

- **The discovery of various minerals in South Africa.**
- **Improved transport and communication network.**
- **Availability of both skilled and unskilled labour force.**
- **Presence of many foreign investors in South Africa.**
- **High levels of technology.**

Gold mining in South Africa.

- **South Africa is the leading producer of Gold in Africa.**
- **Witwatersrand / the Rand is the chief gold mining area in South Africa.**
- **Gold was first discovered in South Africa in 1886 in Witwatersrand in Transvaal by an Austrian Gold miner called *George Harrison.***

The Witwatersrand gold rush.

- **This is the period of quick movement of miners into the Rand in search for gold.**
- **The discovery of gold in the Rand by George Harrison in 1886 was the major cause of the Witwatersrand gold rush.**
- ***Uitlanders* were the foreign migrant workers during the initial exploitation of gold in Transvaal.**
- ***Rand lords* were the rich businessmen who controlled the diamond and gold mining in South Africa before World War II.**

Results of the Witwatersrand gold rush.

- **It led to development of towns in South Africa.**
- **It attracted many foreign investors into South Africa.**
- **It led to outbreak of the second Boer war.**
- **It led to migration of Uitlanders into South Africa.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- ❖ It created a super wealthy class of people called rand lords.

Diamond mining in South Africa.

- Diamond in South Africa was discovered on the banks of river Orange in 1867 by a white man called Erasmus Jacobs.
- *Kimberley* is the chief diamond mining area in South Africa.

Other countries which produce diamond in Africa.

- Tanzania at Mwadui in Shinyanga.
- Botswana.
- Democratic Republic of Congo.

Contributions of the Mining industry to the economic development of South Africa.

- ❖ Minerals are used as raw materials in industries.
- ❖ It has created employment opportunities to people of South Africa.
- ❖ It has promoted the development of infrastructure like roads.
- ❖ It has promoted the development of towns.
- ❖ Mineral exports earn South Africa foreign exchange.
- ❖ It has attracted many foreign investors in South Africa.

AGRICULTURE IN SOUTH AFRICA.

- Agriculture is the growing of crops and rearing of animals.
- The major farming activities in South Africa include; crop farming, ranching, dairy farming, sheep and goat rearing.

Major crops grown in South Africa.

- Maize
- wheat
- Sorghum

Other cash crops grown include

- Cotton
- Tea
- Tobacco
- Flowers

Crop growing areas in South Africa.

Crop grown	*Area*
Maize	-Orange Free State and Kwazulu-Natal
Sorghum	-Mpumalanga, -Orange Free State -Gauteng -Limpopo
Wheat	-Western Cape
Fruits	-Kwazulu-Natal
Tobacco	-Mpumalanga and Limpopo
Tea	-Western Cape
Sugarcane	-Natal province

Contributions of crop farming to the economic development of South Africa.

- ❖ It has created job opportunities to people.
- ❖ It has promoted the development or roads and railway lines in the country.
- ❖ It is a source of raw materials for industries.
- ❖ Crop exports earn South Africa foreign exchange.

Livestock farming in South Africa.

- Livestock farming is the largest agricultural sector in South Africa.

Ranching in South Africa.

- *Ranching* is the rearing of cattle for beef production.
- Cattle on ranches are provided with highly with veterinary services.
- The bulls are castrated in order to fatten them faster, and are usually sold off as soon as they are fattened.
- Castrated bulls are called bullocks.
- Weak cows that cannot produce good quality calves are slaughtered or sold.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Dairy farming in South Africa.

- ***Dairy farming*** **is the rearing of cattle mainly for milk production.**
- **South Africa is the largest producer of milk and beef in Africa.**
- **Dairy farming is mainly done in Transvaal and Orange Free State.**

Factors that have promoted Dairy farming in South Africa.

- **Presence of plenty of pasture for animals.**
- **Presence of cool climate which favours dairy farming.**

Sheep and goat rearing.

- **Sheep and goat rearing ion South Africa is basically done for commercial purposes.**
- ***Merino sheep*** **is the breed of sheep that is mainly reared in South Africa while** ***Angora*** **is the breed of goats that is mainly reared.**
- **Merino sheep is mainly reared because it produces a high amount of wool.**
- **Wool exports earn a lot of income to the government of South Africa.**
- **It was introduced to South Africa in 1800s from Spain.**

NB: *-The major economic activity carried out in Temperate grasslands of South Africa (the Veld) is* ***sheep rearing.***

TOURISM IN SOUTH AFRICA.

- **South Africa is a popular tourist destination.**

Tourist attraction in South Africa include;

- **National parks**
- **Climate**
- **Cultural and Historical sites.**
- **Sport activities**
- **World heritage sites.**

NB: *-Kruger national park is the largest national park in South Africa.*

Factors that have led to the development of the Tourism industry in South Africa.

- **Improved peace and security in South Africa.**
- **Availability of various tourist attractions.**
- **Improved transport and communication network.**
- **Availability of good accommodation facilities in South Africa.**

Contributions of the Tourism industry to the development of South Africa.

- **It has created job opportunities to the natives.**
- **It has promoted the development of roads and railways.**
- **It is a source of foreign exchange to South Africa.**
- **Revenue earned from tourism is used to develop other sectors.**

INDUSTRIALISATION IN SOUTH AFRICA.

- **Most industries in South Africa are found in the Rand / Witwatersrand.**
- **Johannesburg is the major industrial centre in South Africa.**

Other Industrial towns in South Africa include;

- **Durban**
- **Port Elizabeth**
- **Cape Town**
- **Johannesburg**
- **Bloemfontein**
- **East London.**

South Africa's major industries.

Bloemfontein	-textile -chemicals -food processing -heavy engineering.
Johannesburg	-cement making -chemicals -electricals -farm machines -vehicle assembly -food processing -jewellery making
Port Elizabeth	-motor vehicle assembly -fertilizers making -foot wear -food processing
Durban	-textiles -pharmaceuticals -food processing -chemical industries.

Factors that have promoted Industrial development in South Africa.

- Presence of raw materials.
- Improved peace and security.
- Availability of capital.
- Presence of energy sources.
- Presence of cheap labour force provided by a large population.
- Availability of large market for industrial goods.

Contributions of industries to South Africa's development.

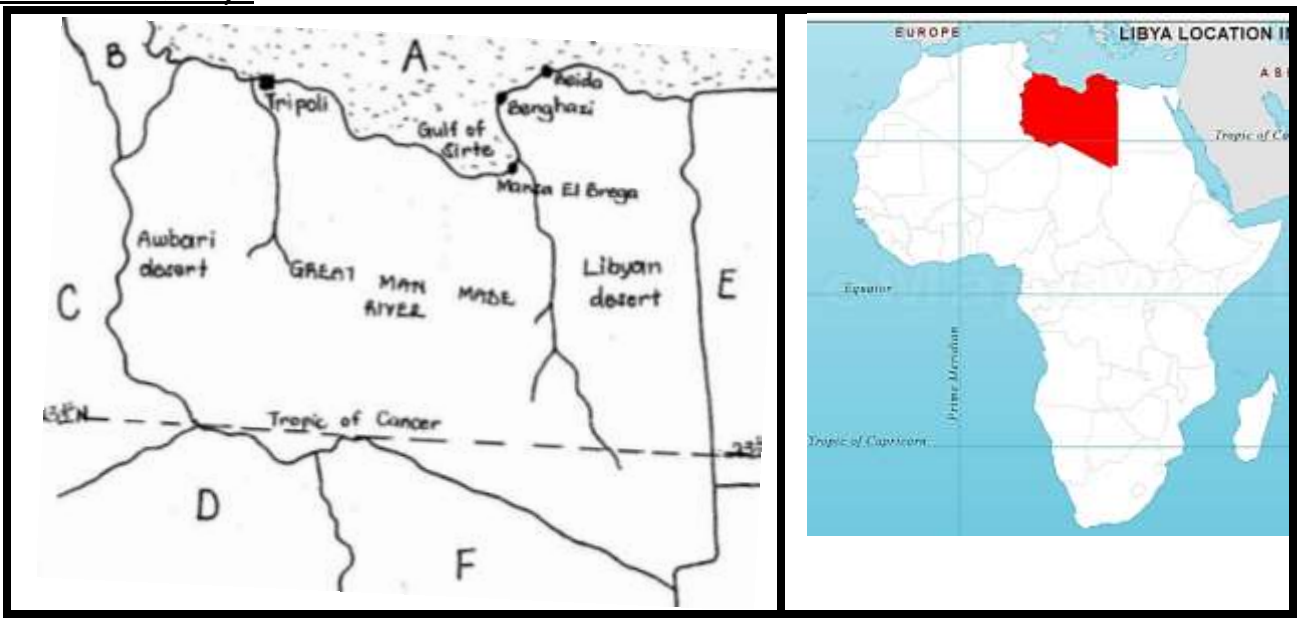
- Industries provide job opportunities to people.
- They promote the development of towns.
- Exported industrial goods earn foreign exchange.
- Industries encourage agricultural production.
- They provide goods to people at cheap prices.

3. **LIBYA.**

Region of Africa	❖ North Africa
Official language	❖ Arabic
Religion	❖ Islam
Current president	❖ ----------
First president	❖ King Idris I
Independence from	❖ Italy
Date of independence	❖ 24thDec, 1951
Population	❖ Over 7 million people
Currency	❖ Libyan Dinar
Time zone	❖ GMT + 2hrs
Calling code	❖ +218
Original inhabitants	❖ Berbers
Climate	❖ Mediterranean climate ❖ Desert climate
Neighbours	❖ Mediterranean sea to the _____ ❖ Egypt to the _____ ❖ Sudan to the _____ ❖ Chad to the _____ ❖ Algeria and Tunisia to the _____
Main sea ports	❖ Port Benghazi ❖ Marsa El-Brega.
Major project	❖ The Great manmade river.
Major economic activities	❖ Oil mining ❖ Tourism ❖ Irrigation farming

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

The location of Libya



OIL MINING IN LIBYA.

- **Libya is the leading exporter of oil in Africa.**
- **Most of the oil fields in Libya are found in the North.**
- **These oil fields are linked to the refineries and ports by pipelines.**
- **Libya's oil is exported to Europe where it attracts a large market because of the short distance across the Mediterranean Sea.**

Reasons why Libya's oil is on high demand.

- **Libya's oil has less impurities (is of high quality) which makes it not to pollute the environment so much when burnt.**
- **Libya is nearer to Europe which makes it cheaper to transport her oil to the European buyers.**

Contributions of Oil mining to Libya's development.

- **It has created job opportunities to people in Libya.**
- **It has promoted the development of industries in Libya.**
- **It has attracted many foreign investors to the country.**
- **It has promoted the development of infrastructure e.g. the Great manmade river called the Seven Wonders of the World.**
- **Oil exports earn the county foreign exchange.**
- **The people of Libya enjoy cheap fuel from their nation.**
- **Oil revenues are used to improve social services like building of schools, hospitals and modern estates.**

Note:

Most people in Libya live in the Northern part of the Libya along the coast because;

- *There are many job opportunities due to oil mining.*
- *Presence of the Mediterranean sea which promotes fishing.*
- *The Northern part experiences Mediterranean climate which promotes farming.*
- *There are many trade opportunities since it is near Europe.*
- *There are better social services because of the presence of the capital city.*

CROP FARMING IN LIBYA.

- **Crop farming in Libya is done under irrigation because the country receives very little rainfall.**
- **The government of Libya constructed the Great manmade river called the Seven Wonders of the World to supply water from the Mediterranean sea to different parts of the country.**
- **It was built to provide water for use in irrigation and in industrial projects.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- The Great manmade river also provides water for domestic use to the people of Libya.
- This river enabled the country to achieve the objective of the Green revolution.

Some crops grown in Libya.

- ❖ Oranges
- ❖ Dates
- ❖ Maize
- ❖ Lemons
- ❖ Tomatoes
- ❖ Onions

Note:

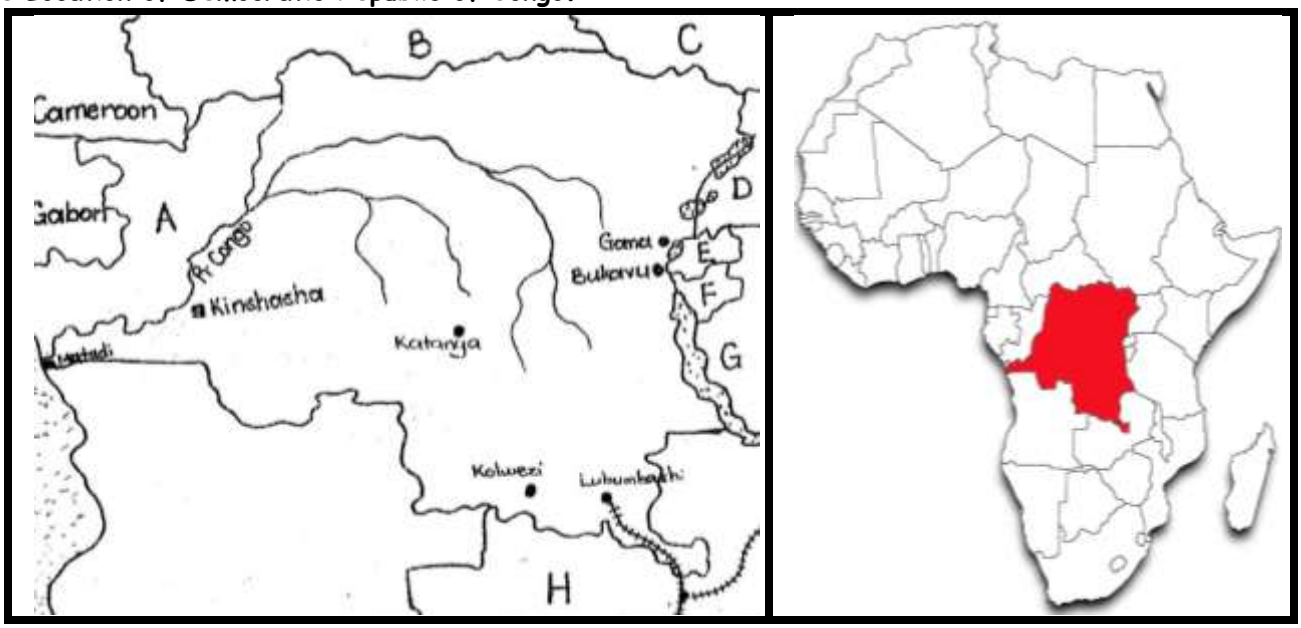
- ***Green Revolution*** *was a plan aimed at changing the desert country into an agricultural country that would be able to produce its own food.*
- *Sand dunes and oases are the major tourist attractions in Libya.*

4. DEMOCRATIC REPUBLIC OF CONGO

Region of Africa	❖ Central Africa
Former name	❖ Zaire (1971-1997)
Capital city	❖ Kinshasa
Official language	❖ French (It was colonised by the Belgians who speak French)
Recognised national language(s)	❖ Lingala ❖ Kikongo ❖ Swahili ❖ Tshiluba
First president	❖ Joseph Kasa-Vubu
First prime minister	❖ Patrice Lumumba
Current president	❖ Felix Tshisekedi (from 24th Jan,2019)
Date of independence	❖ 30th June, 1960
Independence from	❖ Belgium
Population	❖ Over 78 Million People.
Currency	❖ Congolese Franc
Time zone	❖ GMT + 1 To 2hrs
Calling code	❖ +243
Religions	❖ Christianity (93.7%) ❖ Kimbanguism (An Indigenous religion) (2.8%) ❖ Islam (1.2%)
Neighbours	❖ Central African Republic and South Africa to the _____ ❖ Uganda, Rwanda, Burundi and Tanzania to the _____ ❖ Zambia to the _____ ❖ Angola to the _____ ❖ Congo-Brazzaville and The Atlantic ocean to the _____
Main sea port	❖ Port Matadi
Major HEP dams	❖ Inga dam on river Congo ❖ Nzilo dam on river Lualaba.
Climate	❖ Equatorial Climate
Major economic activities	❖ Mining ❖ Lumbering ❖ Crop Cultivation.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

The Location of Democratic Republic of Congo.



THE MINING INDUSTRY IN DRC.

- **The economy of DRC largely depends on mining.**
- **DRC is the leading producer of diamonds in the world.**
- **The chief mining area in DRC is the *Katanga province* (formerly known as Shaba province).**
- **Lubumbashi and Kolwezi are the most important towns in Katanga region.**
- **Diamond mines are supplied with electricity from Inga and Nzilo dams on river Congo.**

Other minerals mined in DRC include;

- **Copper**
- **Cobalt**
- **Uranium**
- **Zinc**
- **Crude oil**
- **Lead**
- **Coal**
- **Tin**

Note: -*Copper in DRC is mined in Katanga region. Copper deposits in this region cover a large area which extends into Zambia to form the Zambia copper belt.*

Factors that have promoted the development of the Mining industry in DRC.

- **Presence of a variety of minerals.**
- **Presence of both skilled and unskilled labour force.**
- **Availability of power generated from river Congo.**
- **The improvement in air transport in the country.**
- **Availability of capital provided by foreign investors.**

Contributions of the Mining industry to the economic development of DRC

- **Minerals are used as raw materials for industries.**
- **It has created employment opportunities to people of DRC**
- **It has promoted the development of infrastructure like roads.**
- **It has promoted the development of towns.**
- **Mineral exports earn DRC foreign exchange.**
- **It has attracted many foreign investors in DRC**

Problems facing the Mining industry in DRC.

- **Political instability in the country.**
- **Poor ground transport system.**
- **High levels of poverty among the natives.**
- **Shortage of skilled labour force.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Note:-***Ground transport in DRC is very poor due to;***

- *The presence of many thick forests which hinder road construction.*
- *The presence of many rivers which make construction of bridges very expensive.*
- *The heavy rainfall received making the soil soggy.*
- *Destruction of existing roads due to civil wars.*

Water transport is common in DRC because DRC has many rivers.

-Road transport can be made possible across rivers by constructing bridges

LUMBERING IN DRC

- ***Lumbering*** **is the felling of mature trees for production of timber**
- **Lumbering is one of the major economic carried out in DRC because DRC has many thick forests.**

Factors that have contributed to the development of Lumbering industry in DRC

- **Presence of many forests.**
- **Increased foreign investment.**
- **Availability of capital invested in the lumbering industry.**

Problems facing Lumbering industry in DRC

- **Internal conflicts (civil wars)**
- **Poor ground transport.**
- **Illegal extraction of wood.**

AGRICULTURE IN DRC

- ***Agriculture*** **is one of the major economic activities carried out in DRC**
- **It is divided into subsistence and commercial farming (plantation farming)**
- **Subsistence farmers mainly produce cassava, potatoes, pineapples, maize, yams, and rice.**
- **Commercial farmers mainly produce coffee, rubber, oil palm, cocoa, tea**
- ***Coffee*** **is the leading crop export of DRC**
- **Robusta coffee is more grown in DRC than Arabica coffee**
- **Coffee is mostly exported to Italy, France, Belgium and Switzerland.**

Rubber growing in DRC

- **Rubber is grown for latex production.**
- **Latex is the thick white liquid produced by rubber trees.**

Products got from latex.

- **Car tyres**
- **Shoe soles**
- **Gloves**
- **Erasers**
- **Elastic bands**
- **Condoms**
- **Balls**
- **Gum boots**

Factors that favour Rubber growing in DRC.

- **Presence of heavy rainfall.**
- **Deep well drained fertile soils**
- **High temperatures throughout the year.**

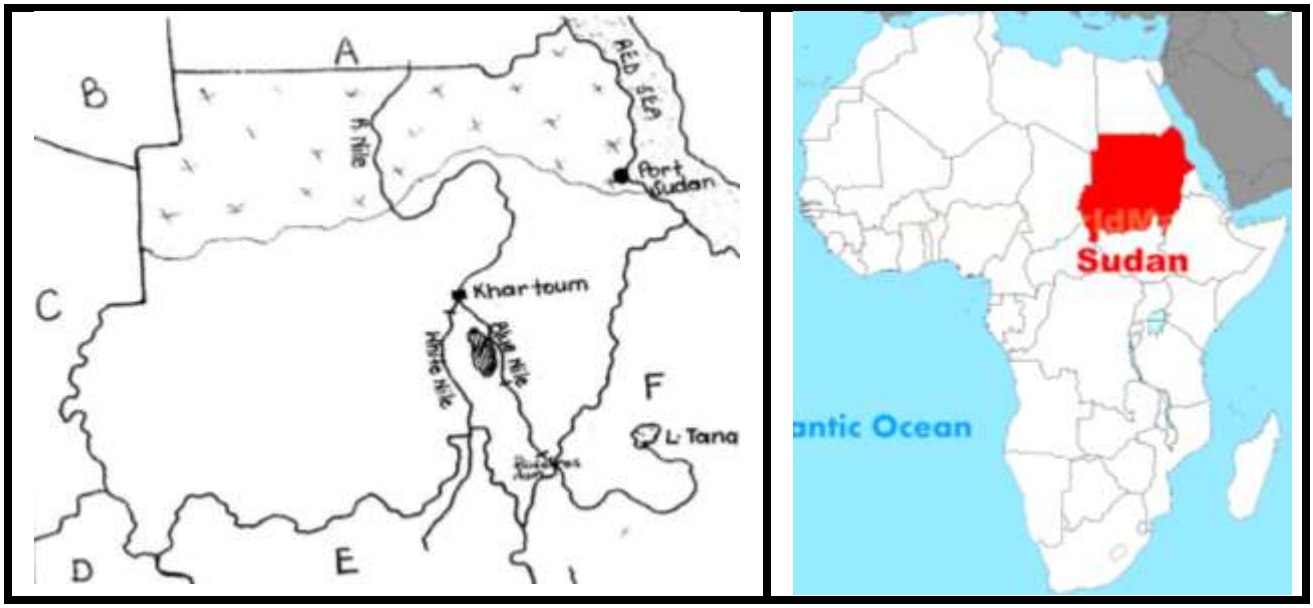
5. SUDAN .

Region of Africa	❖ North Africa
Capital city	❖ Khartoum
Official language(s)	❖ Arabic ❖ English
Religion	❖ Islam
Current president	❖ _____
First president	❖ Ismail al-Azhari
Independence from	❖ Great Britain
Date of independence	❖ 1st Jan, 1956.
Population	❖ Over 40 million people.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Currency	❖ Sudanese Pound
Time zone	❖ GMT + 2hrs
Calling code	❖ +249
Climate	❖ Desert climate ❖ Semi-desert climate ❖ Tropical / savannah climate
Neighbours	❖ Egypt to the _____ ❖ Red sea, Eritrea and Ethiopia to the _____ ❖ South Sudan to the _____ ❖ Central African Republic to the _____ ❖ Chad to the _____ ❖ Libya to the _____
Main sea port	❖ Port Sudan.
Major economic developments	❖ Gezira irrigation scheme ❖ Industrial development ❖ Hydro-electric power generation
Major HEP dams	❖ Sennar dam along the Blue Nile. ❖ Roseires dam on Blue Nile. ❖ Jabel Aulia dam along the White Nile.

The Location of Sudan



IRRIGATION FARMING IN SUDAN.

- ***Irrigation*** is the artificial supply of water on land to support crop growth.
- ***Irrigation farming*** is the system of crop growing in which land is supplied with water by artificial means to support crop growth.
- ***Irrigation scheme*** is an area of land which is supplied with water by human means to support crop growth.

Major irrigation schemes in Sudan.

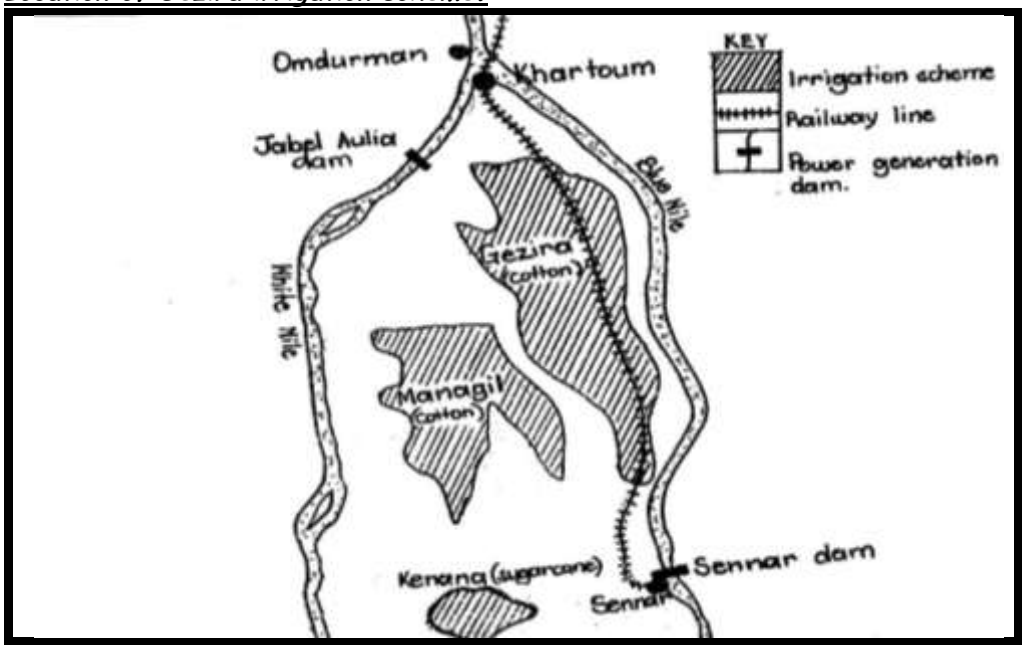
- Gezira irrigation scheme
- Managil irrigation scheme
- Kenana irrigation scheme.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

THE GEZIRA IRRIGATION SCHEME.

- **Gezira irrigation scheme is the largest irrigation scheme in Africa.**
- **It is found between the Blue Nile and the White Nile.**
- **Gezira produces 75% of Sudan's cotton.**
- **Managil and Kenana are the two extensions to the Gezira.**
- **Cotton is the major crop grown in Managil irrigation scheme while sugarcane is the main crop grown in Kenana.**

Location of Gezira irrigation scheme.



Management of the scheme.

- **The scheme is managed by Gezira management board (Sudan Gezira board).**
- **All land belongs to the board and is only rented out to tenant workers.**

Importance of the Gezira Management Board.

- **It controls water supply on the scheme.**
- **It ploughs land on the scheme.**
- **It trains workers on proper farming methods**
- **It provides seeds and fertilizers to the tenants.**
- **It buys and markets cotton produce.**

The work of the tenants on the scheme.

- **They plant, weed, spray and harvest cotton.**
- **They remove plant residue from the scheme.**
- **They clear channels for irrigation.**

Methods of irrigation used on the Gezira.

- **Overhead sprinkler irrigation method**
- **Gravity flow method**

NB: -*Gravity flow method is commonly used on the scheme.*

Factors that favoured the establishment of Gezira.

- **Presence of the Blue Nile which supplies water for irrigation.**
- **Availability of a large sparsely populated land.**
- **Availability of capital from the government.**
- **Availability of gently sloping land which favours agricultural mechanisation and the use of gravity flow method of irrigation.**
- **Availability of both skilled and unskilled labour force.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Benefits of the Gezira irrigation scheme.

- **It has created job opportunities to the people in Sudan.**
- **It has promoted the development of towns.**
- **It has promoted the development of roads and railways.**
- **It has led to the development of industries.eg.ginneries.**
- **It is a source of income to the Sudanese government.**

Note:

-A railway line was built on Gezira irrigation scheme to ease transportation of cotton to the processing industries in Sudan.

-Sennar dam supplies hydroelectricity on Gezira irrigation scheme.

Problems faced at the Gezira scheme.

- **Outbreak of cotton pests and diseases.**
- **Limited capital to run activities on the scheme effectively.**
- **Land fragmentation**
- **Fluctuation of cotton prices on the world market.**
- **Competition from other cotton producers.**
- **Shortage of labour especially during the harvesting period.**

Possible solutions to the problems facing Gezira irrigation scheme.

- **Regular spraying should be done to control pests and diseases.**
- **The management should get loans from financial institutions.**
- **Tenants should be allowed to own their plots.**
- **By employing more skilled labour force on the scheme.**

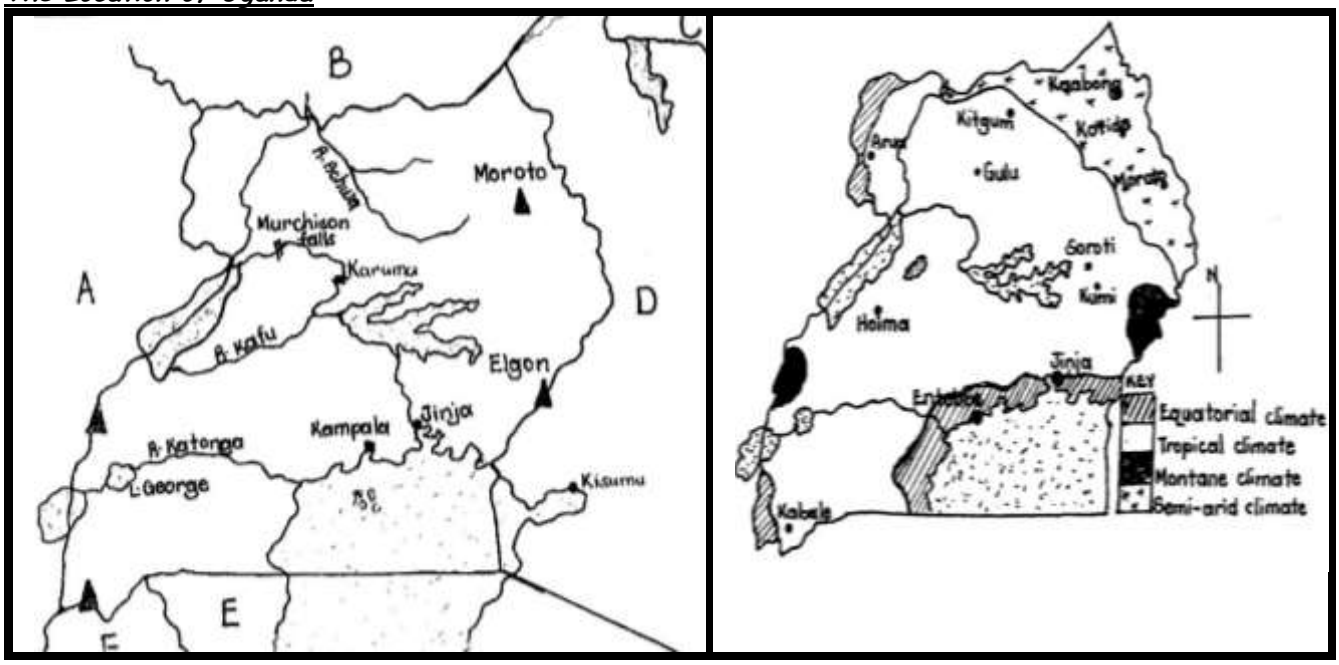
6. UGANDA.

Region of Africa	❖ East Africa.
Capital city	❖ Kampala *-Was at Entebbe during colonial rule.*
Official language	❖ English (Uganda was once colonised by the British who speak English.)
Dominant local languages	❖ Luganda ❖ Ateso ❖ Lusoga ❖ lumasaba ❖ Runyankole ❖ Rukiga ❖ Ngakarimojong
National motto	❖ For God and My Country
National anthem	❖ "Oh Uganda, Land of beauty" composed by George W.Kakoma.
Current president	❖ H.E ----------
Vice president	❖ H.E Edward Ssekandi
Prime minister	❖ Dr. Ruhakana Rugunda
First executive president	❖ Dr.Apollo Milton obote
First non-executive president	❖ Sir Edward Muteesa II
Independence from	❖ Great Britain
Date of independence	❖ 9th Oct, 1962
Currency	❖ Ugandan shilling
Time zone	❖ GMT + 3hrs

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Driving on the	❖ Left
Population	❖ Over 42million people
Calling code	❖ +256
Religion	❖ Christianity (84%) • Catholics (39%) • Anglicans (32%) • Born again (11%) • Seventh day Adventists (1.7%) • Baptists (0.3%) • Orthodox (0.1) ❖ Islam (14%)
Current constitution	❖ The 1995 constitution, ➢ It is called the people's constitution because it was made basing on people's views. ➢ It was promulgated on 8th October 1995 at the Constitutional square (City square)
Neighbours	❖ Kenya to the _____ ❖ South Sudan to the _____ ❖ Rwanda to the _____ ❖ Tanzania to the _____ ❖ Democratic Republic of Congoto the _____
Climate	❖ Tropical/savannah climate in Gulu, Lira, Masindi etc. ❖ Semi desert climate in Moroto, Kotido, Kaabong, Abim etc. ❖ Equatorial climate in Kalangala, Wakiso, Mukono, Buikwe, Jinja ❖ Montane climate/mountain climate in Kabale, Mbale, Kasese.
Main economic activities	❖ Crop cultivation ❖ Fishing ❖ Pastoralism ❖ Tourism ❖ Mining

The Location of Uganda



apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

AGRICULTURE IN UGANDA

- **Agriculture is the growing of crops and rearing of animals.**
- **Agriculture is the back bone of Uganda's economy because it employs the biggest population hence the main source of income to Ugandans.**

Major non- traditional cash crops grown in Uganda;

- **Beans**
- **Sweet potatoes,**
- **Maize**
- **Millet**
- **Sorghum**
- **Peas**
- **Ground nuts**

Major traditional cash crops grown in Uganda;

- **Coffee**
- **Cotton**
- **Sugarcane**
- **Tea**
- **Tobacco**
- **Cocoa**
- **Oil palm**

Note;

- *Traditional cash crops are crops that were originally grown for sale while Non-traditional cash crops are crops that were originally grown for food but can now be sold.*
- *Coffee is the chief cash crop grown in Uganda*
- *Arabica coffee is commonly grown in highland areas with low temperatures while Robusta coffee is grown in low lands with high temperatures.*

Contributions of Agriculture to Uganda's economy

- **It has created job opportunities to many people.**
- **It has promoted the development of roads and railways.**
- **Source of raw material to agro-based industries.**
- **It is a steady source of food to Ugandan people.**
- **Agricultural exports earn the country foreign exchange**

Problems facing Agriculture in Uganda

- **Outbreak of crop pests and diseases**
- **Poor transport and communication in some parts of Uganda.**
- **Shortage of capital to invest in the agricultural industry**
- **Shortage of land due to increasing population**
- **Rural urban migration which leads to shortage of labour force on farms in rural areas**
- **Price fluctuations of agricultural products.**
- **Prolonged drought**

Possible solutions to the problems facing the Agricultural sector in Uganda

- **By teaching farmers better farming methods.**
- **The government should provide quick maturing seeds to farmers**
- **The government should provide small scale loans to farmers**
- **By spraying the crops using pesticides**
- **The government should develop feeder roads that connect to main roads**

TOURISM INDUSTRY IN UGANDA

- **Tourism is one of the major developed sectors in Uganda's economy.**

Major tourist attractions in Uganda;

- **Wild life**
- **Physical features**
- **Climate**
- **Vegetation**
- **Cultural sites**

Factors that have promoted the development of the Tourism in Africa.

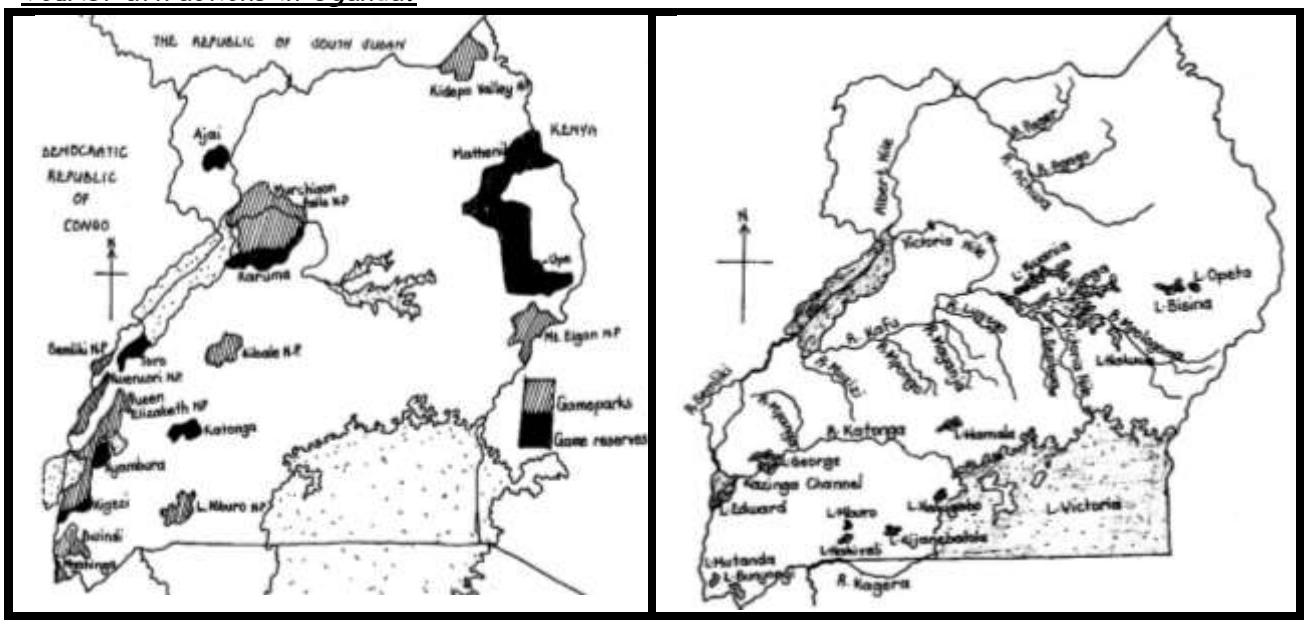
- **Presence of various tourist attractions in most parts of Uganda.**
- **Improved transport and communication network.**
- **Political stability in most parts of Uganda.**
- **Availability of better accommodation facilities in Africa.**
- **Hospitality of Ugandans to the tourists**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: **+256771623617 / +256700770630**

Contributions of the Tourism industry to the development of Uganda.

- ❖ It creates job opportunities to people.
- ❖ It promotes the development of infrastructure like roads, lodges, hotels.
- ❖ It promotes international relationship.
- ❖ It creates market for locally manufactured goods.
- ❖ It is a source of revenue to the government.
- ❖ It promotes conservation of wildlife.

Tourist attractions in Uganda.



Problems facing the Tourism industry in Uganda.

- ❖ Poor transport and communication network.
- ❖ Poor accommodation facilities.
- ❖ Shortage of funds to promote the tourism industry.
- ❖ Limited tourist attractions in some parts of Uganda.
- ❖ Limited advertisement of tourist attractions on international media.

Possible solutions to the problems facing Uganda's Tourism industry

- ❖ By enforcing laws against poaching.
- ❖ By constructing better roads in all parts of Uganda.
- ❖ By advertising Uganda's tourist attractions on international media.
- ❖ By importing new species of wildlife in Uganda.
- ❖ By training more game wardens.
- ❖ By building better accommodation facilities in different parts of Uganda.
- ❖ By gazetting more wildlife conservation areas.

CHALLENGES AFFECTING ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENTS IN AFRICA.

Social challenges	*Economic challenges*	*Political challenges*
❖ Illiteracy ❖ Poverty ❖ Ignorance ❖ Diseases	❖ Poor transport and communication ❖ Low level of technology ❖ High dependency ratio. ❖ Unemployment	❖ Civil wars and coups ❖ Violation of human rights ❖ High number of refugees ❖ Foreign domination ❖ Dictatorship

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

❖ High infant and maternal mortality rate ❖ Teenage pregnancies and early marriages. ❖ Famine	❖ Corruption ❖ Brain drain ❖ Economic collapse	

Possible solutions to the problems affecting Economic developments in Africa.

- ❖ By promoting good governance in all African countries.
- ❖ By mechanising agriculture.
- ❖ By promoting unity among the people of Africa.
- ❖ By promoting human rights.
- ❖ By promoting women emancipation.
- ❖ By introducing universal education in all African countries.
- ❖ By enforcing laws against corruption.
- ❖ By improving health services in all African countries.
- ❖ By modernising infrastructure like roads, industries.

Note

-Women emancipation *refers to giving women freedom to gain access and control of all forms of resources.*

-Women emancipation makes women free from old social limitations and customs that denied them power in the society.

-The status of women can be raised through equal opportunities in education, politics, employment, ownership of property and active participation in family planning.

How women emancipation can be promoted

- ➢ *Promoting girl child education*
- ➢ *Abandoning cultural beliefs which discriminate women*
- ➢ *Discouraging early marriages among girls*

(a) *Political challenges affecting Economic developments in Africa.*

1. *Dictatorship*

- This is a political system where a leader misuses power and does not rule according to the principles of democracy.

Indicators of dictatorship

- ❖ People in the country have no freedom of speech, movement and expression.
- ❖ Innocent people are imprisoned without court trial.
- ❖ Political opponents are tortured or killed.
- ❖ Leaders rule according to their wishes.
- ❖ Free and fair elections are not regularly conducted.

2. *Military coups.*

- This is a sudden attempt by the army to take control of the government by violence.

Causes of coups in Africa.

- Dictatorship
- Bad governance
- Unfair elections
- Denial of human rights.

How coups can be reduced.

- ❖ By promoting good governance.
- ❖ By organising regular free and fair elections in the country.
- ❖ Leaders should have respect for human rights.
- ❖ Leaders should listen to people's problems and solve them.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

3. Civil wars

- This is a war that is fought between citizens of the same country.

African countries that have experienced civil wars.

- Somalia
- south Sudan
- Democratic Republic of Congo.

Causes of civil wars.

- Greed for power.
- Opposition against bad governance.
- Dictatorship.

Dangers of civil wars.

- ❖ They lead to destruction of property.
- ❖ They led to decline in local trade.
- ❖ They lead to loss of lives.
- ❖ They discourage the coming of foreign investors in the country.

How African countries can reduce civil wars.

- ❖ By promoting peace and security in the country.
- ❖ By holding peace talks.
- ❖ By using diplomacy to end disagreements.
- ❖ By signing peace agreements.

4. Refugee problems

- *A refugee* is a person who is forced to leave his / her country because of a disaster or persecution.
- An internally displaced person is a person who is forced to leave his / her home for the same reasons as a refugee but remains in his / her own country.

Causes of refugees in Africa.

- Civil wars.
- Religious persecution.
- Natural disasters

International organisations that care for refugees

- United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)
- World Food programme (WFP)
- World Health Organisation (WHO)

Problems faced by refugees

- ❖ Poverty
- ❖ Unemployment
- ❖ Shortage of food and clean water.
- ❖ Easy spread of diseases due to overcrowding.
- ❖ Shortage of medical facilities.

Ways how refugee problems can be solved.

- ❖ By improving on security.
- ❖ By promoting rule of law.
- ❖ By using peaceful means to solve political difference

5. Foreign domination

- Foreign aid refers to the assistance which African countries receive from other countries
- It includes; multilateral aid (aid given by international organisation like IMF, World bank, UN agencies), bilateral aid (aid given by a donor country), relief aid (aid given after disasters)

Forms of foreign aid

- Loans
- Grants
- Donations
- Skilled people (expatriates)

How African countries can reduce foreign domination.

- ❖ Exporting processed good instead of raw materials
- ❖ Increasing agriculture production
- ❖ Widening the tax base to increase source of income
- ❖ Training more skilled workers.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

(b) *Economic challenges affecting Economic developments in Africa.*

6. *Under development*

- **It refers to the state when a country is unable to improve the quality of life of its people.**

Causes of under development in African countries.

- **Political instability**
- **Shortage of funds to provide social services.**
- **Low production levels**

7. *Corruption*

- **It is an act where one uses his or her position of responsibility for dishonest gains.**

Forms of corruption

- **Asking for bribes**
- **Paying for goods which have not been delivered**
- **Paying salaries to non-existent workers**
- **Taking public funds for personal use**
- **Paying more money than actual money that had to be spent**

Dangers of corruption.

- **It leads to inefficiency in government departments**
- **It leads to loss govern revenue**
- **It discourages foreign investors**
- **It makes it difficult for people to access social services**

Ways through which corruption can be controlled.

- **By enforcing strict laws against corruption**
- **By paying attractive salaries to workers**
- **By teaching people about the dangers of corruption**

Bodies that were established to check on corruption in Uganda

- **The office of the Inspector General of Government (IGG)**
- **The Public Accounts Committee of the parliament**
- **Ministry of Ethics and Integrity**

Note:

- ***Special Revenue Protection Services (SRPS)*** *is the body that was set up by URA to control smuggling in Uganda.*
- ***URA*** *is the body responsible for collecting taxes in Uganda.*
- ***Taxation*** *is the major source of government revenue in Uganda.*
- *Other sources of government revenue include: grants, loans, donations, tourism industry, airport charges, court fines and traffic fines, licences, sale of minerals.*

8. *Economic collapse*

- **This is when the economy of the country does not sustain the needs of people**

Indicators of economic collapse

- **Unemployment**
- **Shortage of essential commodities**
- **Decline in the value of the national currency**
- **Limited investments**
- **Inflation (general and progressive increase in prices)**

9. *Brain drain*

- **Brain drain is the movement of highly trained people (skilled labour) from their country to go and work in another country. E.g. Engineers, teachers, doctors.**

- It is the movement of professionals to other countries looking for better paying jobs.
- ❖ Such people are usually attracted by better pay and other good working conditions.
- ❖ African countries lose skilled people who would have contributed towards provision of social services and production of goods.
- ❖ They also lose taxes they would have collected from such people.
- ❖ The governments also lose what was invested in them during their training.

(c) *Social challenges affecting Economic developments in Africa.*

10. Famine

- It is a large scale shortage of food lasting for a long time in an area.

Causes of famine

- Civil wars and conflicts
- Prolonged drought
- Rural urban migration
- Outbreak of crop pests and diseases.
- Poor agricultural methods
- Poor storage facilities
- Putting much emphasis on production of cash crops than food crops

Dangers of famine

- ❖ It leads to death of people
- ❖ It Increases dependence on foreign aid

Ways of controlling famine.

- ❖ By mechanising agriculture
- ❖ By encouraging farmers to use modern farming methods
- ❖ By promoting peace and stability in the country
- ❖ By planting high yielding seeds to increase food production
- ❖ By encouraging the growing of more food crops than cash crops

11. Low life expectancy

- Life expectancy refers to how long in terms of years people in a country are expected to live.
- Most African countries have low life expectancy

Causes of low life expectancy in Africa

- Poor feeding
- High levels of poverty
- Poor medical services
- Limited access to clean and safe water.

Ways of increasing life expectancy

- ❖ Having proper nutrition
- ❖ Creating more job opportunities
- ❖ By providing clean and safe water
- ❖ By providing education services

12. High infant and maternal mortality rate

- *Mortality rate* is the rate at which people die
- *Infant mortality rate* is the rate at which babies die while *maternal mortality rate* is the rate at which pregnant mothers die during delivery.

Causes of high infant and maternal mortality rate.

- Lack of immunisation services
- Poor sanitation
- Poor medical services
- Poor feeding

13. Illiteracy

- Illiteracy is the state when people in a country cannot read and write with understanding

Causes of high levels of illiteracy in Africa

- Shortage of funds to invest in education
- Ignorance among people
- Social injustice where girls are denied education

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

How illiteracy can be controlled

- By introducing universal education programmes eg: UPE, USE
- Government should introduce adult literacy programs
- By constructing more schools in the country
- Laws should be put in place to make primary education compulsory
- By educating parents on the importance of education

Note: *-The government of Uganda introduced the* ***Alternative Basic Education for Karamoja*** *(ABEK) to reduce the high levels of illiteracy among the Karimojongs.*

14. ***Poor social service delivery***.

- Social services are services provided to improve people's welfare.
- Such services include; Education, security, communication, banking, transport etc

Problems faced in providing social services.

- Shortage of funds
- High population.
- Poor transport network.
- Insecurity in some areas
- Corruption
- Shortage of skilled labour





1. Give the meaning of each of the following.
   (i) A resource
   (ii) Natural resources
2. Mention any two examples of of the following types of natural; resources.
   (i) Renewable resources
   (ii) Non-renewable resources.
3. Why is land considered to be the most important resource?
4. Give one way the following components act as resources,
   (i) Wind
   (ii)Sunshine
5. Give any two reasons why some natural resources in Africa are not yet exploited.
6. Mention any three factors that have promoted industrial development in many African countries.
7. Mention any two examples of each of the following;
   (i) Primary industry
   (ii) Secondary industry
   (iii) Tertiary industry
8. Mention any three factors one would consider before setting up an industry in an area.
9. State one way a large population has promoted industrial production in Kampala.
10. Why are Ugandans encouraged to export more processed goods than raw materials?
11. Give any three ways people benefit from a nearby industry in their area.
12. Give any two ways people benefit a nearby industry in their area.
13. State any two problems that may result from the large scale establishment of o industries in an area.
14. Give any two ways a sugarcane outgrower can benefit from a sugar processing industry in his community.
15. Give any two ways the industrial sector has promoted economic development in Africa.

16. State any one challenge that affect industrial development in Africa.
17. Give one way smuggling can affect industrial development in Africa.
18. Complete the table below correctly.

Type of energy	*Source*
(i) Hydro electricity	----------
(ii) ----------	Sunshine
(iii) ----------	Animal wastes and garbage
(iv) Geothermal energy	----------

19. What are Multipurpose river projects?
20. Mention one major multipurpose river projects on each of the following rivers.
    (i) River Niger.
    (ii) River Volta.
    (iii) River Zambezi.
    (iv) River Congo.
21. Mention any three hydro electric power dams along river Nile outside Uganda.
22. Give any three ways Multipurpose river projects are important.
23. Give two ways hydro electric power generation has promoted economic development in Africa.
24. Give the meaning of Rural electrification.
25. Give one reason why the government is promoting rural electrification.
26. How does rural electrification promote the conservation of the natural environment.
27. State any two challenges that hinder the extension of hydro electricity to all parts of Uganda.
28. Give the meaning of Irrigation farming.

Irrigation scheme	*Major crop grown*	*Source of water*
(i) Tilda	----------	----------
(ii) ----------	Rice	River Manafwa
(iii) Gezira	----------	----------
(iv) Mwea Tebere	----------	----------
(v) Kiige	----------	----------

29. Why is agriculture referred to as the back bone of Africa?
30. Give any two reason why most farmers in Africa practice subsistence farming.
31. Give one way plantation farming has promoted industrial development in Uganda.
32. How can crop farming be made possible in North Eastern Uganda?
33. Why is agriculture referred to as an industry?
34. Give any two ways rural -urban migration has affected the development of agriculture in rural areas.
35. State any three problems faced by crop farmers in Uganda.
36. State any two ways the government can help farmers to increase food production.
37. What name is given to the industries that use cotton as their raw material?
38. Name the raw material used for making insecticides.
39. What are Agro-based industries?
40. State any two advantages of irrigation farming.
41. Why is irrigation farming not effective in North Eastern Uganda.
42. Name the major cash crop grown on Kilombero valley irrigation scheme.
43. Mention any three methods of mining commonly used in East Africa.
44. Give any two reasons why some minerals in different parts of Africa are not yet extracted.
45. State any three factors that have promoted the development of the mining industry in Africa.
46. How is Kimberley in South Africa similar to Mwadui in Tanzania in terms of mineral distribution?
47. State any two problems caused by mining in an area.
48. Give any two ways the mining industry has promoted economic development in Africa.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

49. Name the major minerals mined in each of the following area.
    (i) Witwatersrand in South Africa.
    (ii) Hima in Kasese.
    (iii) Osukuru hills in Tororo
    (iv) Kilembe in Kasese.
    (v) Lake Magadi in Kenya.
50. How has the extraction of limestone in Kasese promoted industrial development in that area?
51. Mention any two products obtained from copper.
52. Name any one mineral that is used for making artificial fertilizers.
53. Why is tourism referred to as an invisible export?
54. Give any three factors that have promoted the development of the tourism industry in East Africa.
55. How is poaching a threat to the Uganda's tourism industry?
56. State any two problems facing the tourism industry in East Africa.
57. Why are hotels always built near the major tourist attractions in Africa?
58. Give any two ways the tourism industry has promoted economic development in Uganda.
59. Give any two reasons why Kenya's tourism industry is more developed than that of Uganda.
60. State any three ways Uganda's tourism industry can be improved.
61. Name the largest fish species caught in Africa's inland fishing grounds.
62. If you were the ministry of trade and industry, which suitable processing industry would you recommend to be started in Kalangala?
63. Give any three ways fishing has promoted economic development in Uganda.
64. How is indiscriminate fishing dangerous to the fishing industry in Africa?
65. State any two ways water hyacinth affects the development of the fishing industry in Uganda.
66. State any three problems facing the fishing industry in Uganda.
67. Give one reason why the government discourages the use of undersized nets during fishing.
68. Which type of transport is most suitable for transporting petroleum to the refineries?
69. How is the Niger delta similar to the Albertine region?
70. Mention any three products obtained from petroleum.
71. Name the major mineral mined in the Niger delta.
72. Give any two reasons why Nigeria is not the leading oil exporter and yet it is the leading producer of oil.
73. Give any three ways oil mining has promoted of Nigeria.
74. Name the cash crop that is largely grown in Kalangala by Bidco oil company.
75. Give any two factors that have promoted oil palm growing in Nigeria.
76. Mention any two products obtained from palm oil.
77. Compare the Karimojong and the Fulani of Nigeria in terms of occupation.
78. Give any two reasons why the Karimojong live an unsettled life.
79. In which way can the governments of East African countries curb cattle rustling among the pastoral tribes?
80. Mention one step the government of Uganda has taken to make the Karimojongs live a settle life.
81. Mention any three industrial towns in South Africa.
82. Name the type of sheep that is mainly reared in the temperate grasslands of South Africa.
83. How is Ranching different from Dairy farming?
84. Give any two reasons why Libya is the leading oil exporter in Africa.
85. State the main reason for the construction of the Great manmade river in Libya.
86. Give any two reasons why most people in Libya live in the Northern part of the country.
87. Name the major mineral mined in Libya.
88. Compare the Katanga region and Zambia copper belt in terms of mineral distribution.

89. State the main reason for the construction of the Tazara railway line.
90. Give any one reason why road transport is still under developed in most parts of DRC.
91. State any two factors that favour lumbering in DRC.
92. Name the largest irrigation scheme in Africa.
93. Mention the commonest method of irrigation used on the Gezira irrigation scheme.
94. State any three factors that favoured the establishment of the Gezira irrigation scheme.
95. Mention the main source of water used on Gezira irrigation scheme.
96. Why was a railway line established on the Gezira irrigation scheme?
97. Name the power dam that supplies hydro electricity to Gezira irrigation scheme.
98. Mention any one factor that favours agricultural mechanisation on the Gezira irrigation scheme.
99. State any four challenges affecting economic development in Uganda.
100. Give any four ways the challenges hindering economic development in Africa can be solved.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

TOPIC 10: MAJOR WORLD ORGANISATIONS

- These are organisations formed by countries in different parts of the world for particular purposes.

Examples of major world organisations.

- The United Nations Organisation (UNO)
- The Commonwealth of Nations
- Organisation of Petroleum Exporting Countries (OPEC)

THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANISATION (UNO)

UNITED NATIONS

- The United Nations Organisation (UNO) is also known as the *United Nations (UN).*
- UN is an international organisation that was formed on 24th October, 1945 replacing the League on Nations which had been formed in 1919 after World War I.
- The UN has its headquarters in ***New York City***, United States of America (USA).
- The UN has 193 member states.
- *Vatican City* and *Palestine* are fully recognized as non-members of the UN. Other six countries are not members but are recognized by at least one country that is a UN member. These countries are; Taiwan, Western Sahara, Kosovo, South Ossetia, Abkhazia and Northern Cyprus.

The First World War (World War I)

- ✓ At the beginning of the 20th century, *Germany* under *Kaiser William II* had the ambition to conquer and control the whole world.
- ✓ *France, Russia* and *Britain* prepared to defend themselves.
- ✓ On 28th June, 1914, *Franz Ferdinand*, the crown prince of Austria and his wife Sophie, were killed by a Serbian student called Gavrilo Principe in Serbia.
- ✓ *Austria*, an ally to Germany declared a war on Serbia.
- ✓ *Russia* and France prepared to fight alongside *Serbia* and in return, *Germany* declared a war on both *Russia* and *France*.
- ✓ *Britain* also decided to side with *Russia* and *France*.
- ✓ The war lasted from 1914-1918 and *Germany* was eventually defeated.

Note:

- *European countries formed the **League of Nations** in 1919 to prevent outbreak of the Second World War.*
- *The League of Nations took away all colonies that belonged to Germany as a punishment that was given to Germany for causing the First World War.*
- *These colonies were given to other European countries as Mandate territories.*
- ***Mandate territories** were the former colonies of Germany that were handed over to other European countries by the League of Nations after World War I. eg. Rwanda, Burundi, Tanzania, Cameroon, Togo, Namibia.*
- *European governments which were given mandate territories were meant to rule them for the good of the natives, till they were ready for their independence.*

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- *Tanzania (German East Africa) was the East African country which was mostly affected during the war.*

Qn. *Give the main reason for the formation of the League of Nations in 1919?*
Qn. *Why did Germany lose her colonies in Africa after World War I?*
Qn. *What is a mandate territory?*

The Second World War (World War II).

- ✓ ***Adolf Hitler*** **became the leader of Germany in 1933 and formed a party of the Nazis (his supporters).**
- ✓ **Hitler's aim was to make Germany regain her former glory.**
- ✓ **Hitler allied with *Mussolini* of *Italy* whose supporters were called the Facists.**
- ✓ **On 1st September,1939, Hitler attacked *Poland*.**
- ✓ **On 28th June,1941, *Britain* and *France* declared a war on *Germany* and *Italy*.**
- ✓ **The war lasted for 6 years and ended in 1945 causing death to millions of people,destruction of property and displacement of people.**
- ✓ **African countries were involved in the war because their colonial masters took men to work as soldiers and porters in the war zones.**
- ✓ ***Algeria, Ethiopia*** **and *Somalia* became battle grounds.**

Note:

- *The UN was formed in 1945 to create everlasting peace in the world.*
- *The Mandate territories were handed over to the UN trusteeship council as Trust territories.*
- *-**Trust territories** were former colonies of Germany that were handed over to the United Nations after World War II.*

ORGANS OF THE UN.

Organ	*Role*	*Headquarters*
United Nations General Assembly	❖ **To discuss matters related to world peace, security, health etc.** ❖ **To approve the UN budget.** **NB:** *The heads of state and government meet once a year.*	**New York,USA**
The International Court of Justice (ICJ)	❖ **To settle disputes among the member countries.** ❖ **It is the judicial organ of the UN.** ❖ **It has 15 judges elected by the general assembly.**	**Hague,Netherlands**
United Nations Secretariat.	❖ **To organize the UN international conferences.** ❖ **Monitor peace keeping operations.** ❖ **Makes the agenda for the general assembly.** ❖ **Translates the UN international documents.** ❖ **Makes the budget for the general assembly.** ❖ **Compiles and keeps records of world statistical information.** **Note:** ✓ *The United Nations secretariat is headed by the* ***Secretary General.*** ✓ ***Mr. Antonio Guterres*** *from Portugal is the current Secretary General of the*	**New York,USA**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

	United Nations. He replaced ***Mr. Ban Ki Moon*** ***<u>The Last four (4) Secretary Generals of the UN.</u>*** • **Boutros Boutros Ghali from Egypt.** • **Kofi Annan from Ghana.** • **Ban Ki Moon from South Korea.** • **Antonio Guterres from Portugal.**	
United Nations Security Council	❖ **To maintain international peace and security.** ❖ **It sends peace keeping forces to countries that have political conflicts.** ❖ **The council has 15 member states including 5 permanent member states.** **Note:** ✓ *USA, United Kingdom, France, China and Russia are permanent member states on the United Nations Security Council.*	**New York, USA**
The Economic and Social Council (ECOSOC)	❖ **It is responsible for economic and social affairs of the UN.** ❖ **It uplifts the standards of living among the people of the world.**	**New York, USA**
The Trusteeship Council	❖ **It was responsible for the administration of the 11 trust territories.**	**No longer in existence**

Note:

- ✓ *The* ***International Court of Justice (ICJ)*** *settles conflicts between countries while the* ***International Criminal Court (ICC)*** *punishes people for genocide, crimes against humanity and war crimes.*
- ✓ *ICC was created on 1st July,2002 and is also based in* ***Hague, Netherlands****.*

<u>AGENCIES OF THE UN.</u>

Agency	*Headquarters*	*Role(S)*
United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF)	**New York, USA**	❖ **It provides food and medicine to vulnerable children.** ❖ **It promotes gender equality through girl-child education.**
United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (UNESCO)	**Paris, France.**	❖ **It promotes standards of education world-wide.** ❖ **It promotes scientific advancement in research.** ❖ **Ensures protection of cultural heritages.**
World Health Organisation (WHO)	**Geneva, Switzerland**	❖ **It funds projects that promote public health in developing countries.** ❖ **It approves the newly invented drugs.** ❖ **It fights outbreak of epidemic diseases.** ❖ **It works in areas such as immunisation, health education and provision of essential drugs.**
World Food Programme (WFP)	**Rome, Italy**	❖ **It promotes food security world-wide.** ❖ **It saves lives through providing food to those affected by famine.**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Food and Agricultural Organisation (FAO)	Rome, Italy	❖ It works to improve agricultural productivity and food security.
International Monetary Fund (IMF)	Washington DC, USA	❖ It provides financial advice to central banks. ❖ It gives short term loans to countries with deficit budget. ❖ It controls inflation of national currencies.
International Labour Organisation (ILO)	Geneva, Switzerland.	❖ It defends the rights of the workers. ❖ It formulates programmes to improve working conditions and employment opportunities. ❖ It defines international labour standards.
World Meteorological Organisation (WMO)	Geneva, Switzerland	❖ It promotes scientific research on the atmosphere and climate change. ❖ Facilitates the global exchange of meteorological data and information.
United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees (UNHCR)	Geneva, Switzerland	❖ It provides temporary shelter to refugees. ❖ It provides food to refugees. ❖ It provides clothes to refugees.
United Nations Industrial Development Organisation (UNIDO)	Vienna, Austria	❖ It promotes industrial development in developing countries. ❖ It provides technical assistance and training on issues concerning industrial development.
International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA)	Vienna, Austria	❖ It works for the safe and peaceful use of atomic energy.
International Maritime Organisation (IMO)	London, UK	❖ It seeks to prevent marine pollution from ships. ❖ It encourages marine safety and improving international shipping procedures.
International Telecommunication Union (ITU)	Geneva, Switzerland	❖ It coordinates usage of radio and TV frequencies.
United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO)	Madrid, Spain	❖ It fosters tourism education. ❖ It provides technical advice on how to improve the tourism industry.
International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO)	Montreal-Quebec, Canada	❖ It ensures safety and security of air transport. ❖ It ensures regularity of air transport. ❖ It serves as the medium of cooperation in all areas of civil aviation.
World Bank Group	Washington DC, USA	❖ It provides loans to developing countries to reduce poverty.
International Fund for Agricultural Development (IFAD)	Rome, Italy	❖ It mobilises financial resources for better food production and better nutrition among the poor in developing countries.
Universal postal union (UPU)	Bern, Switzerland	❖ It improves postal services. ❖ It provides technical assistance on postal matters.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

World intellectual property organisation (WIPO)	Geneva, Switzerland	❖ It promotes international protection of property. ❖ It fosters cooperation on trademarks, copyrights and industrial designs.
United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC)	Vienna, Austria	❖ It ensures prevention of crimes and drug abuse

Objectives of the UN

- ❖ To prevent outbreak of another world war.
- ❖ To maintain international peace and security in the world.
- ❖ To promote cooperation and unity among the member states.
- ❖ To promote respect for human rights.
- ❖ To promote better living standards of the people of the world.
- ❖ To eradicate poverty in developing countries.

Activities done by the UN

- ❖ Settling disputes among nations.
- ❖ Eradicating poverty in developing countries.
- ❖ Working towards improving people's living standards.
- ❖ Fighting against diseases which affect people.

Achievements of the UN.

- ❖ It has promoted cooperation and unity among the member states.
- ❖ It has promoted international trade.
- ❖ It has promoted peace in the world.
- ❖ It has promoted respect for human rights.
- ❖ It provides technical and financial advice to developing countries.

Challenges faced by the UN.

- ❖ Shortage of funds to run its programmes effectively.
- ❖ Insecurity in some parts of the world.
- ❖ Differences in political systems among the member states.
- ❖ World dictators.
- ❖ Conflicts among the member states.

Similarities between the UN and the AU.

- ❖ Both work towards creating peace in the member states.
- ❖ Both work towards promoting respect for human rights.
- ❖ Both help in settling disputes among countries.
- ❖ Both aim at eradicating poverty among people.
- ❖ Both work towards improving people's living standards.

Differences between the UN and the AU.

- ❖ UN works towards promoting peace in all parts of the world while AU works towards promoting peace in African countries.
- ❖ UN aims at eradicating poverty in all parts of the world while AU aims at eradicating poverty in African countries.
- ❖ UN unites countries in all parts of the world while AU unites only African countries.
- ❖ UN works towards promoting respect for human rights in all parts of the world while AU works towards promoting respect for human rights in African countries.
- ❖ UN works towards improving people's standards of living in all parts of the world while AU works towards improving people's standards of living in African countries.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

THE UNIVERSAL DECLARATION OF HUMAN RIGHTS.

- The Universal Declaration of Human Rights (UDHR) was the declaration which was adopted by the United Nations (UN) General assembly on 10th Dec, 1948 in Paris, France.
- It consists of 30 articles and all national constitutions are expected to uphold all the rights as contained in this declaration.
- *Human rights* are basic natural freedoms all human beings are entitled to.

These human rights include;

1. We are all born free and fair. We have our own thoughts and ideas. We should all be treated in the same way.
2. Freedom from discrimination.
3. The right to life.
4. Freedom from slavery.
5. Freedom from torture.
6. We have rights no matter where we go.
7. We are all equal before the law.
8. The right to have our rights protected by the law.
9. Freedom from unfair detainment.
10. The right to trial.
11. We are always innocent till proven guilty.
12. The right to privacy.
13. Freedom to move.
14. The right to seek a safe place to live.
15. Right to a nationality.
16. Every grown up has the Right to marry and have a family.
17. The right to own property.
18. Freedom of thought. we have a right to believe in what we want, to have religion or to change it if we want.
19. Freedom of expression. We have a right to say what we think and share our ideas with other people.
20. The right to public assembly. We have a right to meet our friends and work together.
21. The right to democracy.
22. Right to social security. We have the right to affordable housing, medicine, education and childcare.
23. Every grown up has the right to do a job.
24. The right to play.
25. Right to food and shelter.
26. The right to education.
27. The right to copyright.
28. The right to a fair and free world. There must be proper order so we can all enjoy rights and freedoms in our own country and all over the world.
29. Responsibility. We have a duty to protect the rights and freedoms of other people.
30. No one can take away your own rights.

Human rights abuse / violation

- This is the denial of the basic natural freedoms to which all people are entitled.
- *Child abuse* is the denial of basic natural freedoms to which all children are entitled.

Forms of Human rights abuse/Ways in which human rights are violated.

- Torturing of political opponents.
- Slavery
- Death penalty
- Racial segregation.
- Raping of women.
- Sexual mutilation.
- Denial of freedom of movement.
- Killing of political opponents.
- Domestic violence against women.
- Detention of people without court trial.

Forms of child abuse.

- Physical child abuse
- Emotional child abuse/Psychological child abuse.
- Sexual child abuse.

Ways of controlling human rights abuse.

- By promoting peace and security in the country.
- By enforcing laws against human rights abuse.
- By sensitising people about their rights.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

❖ **By establishing organisations that promote human rights eg. Uganda Human Rights Commission (UHRC).**

Note:- *UHRC was established in 1995 in recognition of Uganda's violent history characterized by arbitrary arrests, detention without trial, torture etc.*

International organisations that monitor human rights.

- **Amnesty international.**
- **International federation for human rights.**
- **Youth for human rights international.**
- **Human rights watch.**

Note:

- ***Basic needs*** *are things which man can not live without eg. food, clothes, medical care, security, education etc.*
- ***Children's rights*** *are the basic natural freedoms to which all children are entitled.*
  Examples of children's rights include;*The right to food, right to medical care, right to shelter, right to education, right to play, right to clothes etc.*

THE COMMONWEALTH OF NATIONS

- **The Commonwealth of Nations is an organisation which is made up of Britain and her former colonies, protectorates and dominion states.**
- **Dominion states are independent states that regard the queen of England as their head of state e.g. Canada, Australia and New Zealand.**
- **To date, the Commonwealth of Nations has 53 member states.**
- **The Commonwealth of Nations is headed by the Queen of England.**
- ***Queen Elizabeth II*** **is the current head of the Commonwealth of nations (since 6th February,1952)**

Commonwealth countries is Africa.

- **Botswana**
- **Cameroon**
- **Ghana**
- **Kenya**
- **Lesotho**
- **Malawi**
- **Tanzania**
- **Mauritius**
- **Mozambique**
- **Namibia**
- **Nigeria**
- **Rwanda**
- **Seychelles**
- **Sierra Leone**
- **South Africa**
- **Swaziland**
- **Gambia**
- **Uganda**
- **Zambia**

Commonwealth countries in Europe.

- **United Kingdom (Britain, Northern Ireland, Wales, Scotland)**
- **Cyprus**
- **Malta**

Commonwealth countries in Asia

- **Bangladesh**
- **Brunei**
- **India**
- **Malaysia**
- **Pakistan**
- **Singapore**
- **Sri Lanka**

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

Commonwealth countries in Australia.

- Fiji
- Australia
- Tonga
- New Zealand
- Solomon islands
- Tuvalu
- Nauru
- Kiribati
- Papua New Guinea
- Samoa
- Vanuatu

Commonwealth countries in America.

- Canada
- Antigua and Barbuda
- Bahamas
- Barbados
- Belize
- Dominica
- Grenada
- Guyana
- Jamaica
- Saint Lucia.
- Trinidad and Tobago
- Saint Vincent and Grenadines
- Saint Kitts and Nevis



Queen Elizabeth II

Note: ***Commonwealth countries are united by the following***.

- ✓ *They use English as their official language.*
- ✓ *They were mostly former colonies of Britain.*
- ✓ *They have similar education systems.*
- ✓ *They regard the queen of England as their head.*

Structure of administration of the Commonwealth of Nations.

ii) The Heads of state summit.

- It is the policy making body of the Commonwealth of Nations.
- It is made up of heads of state or governments.
- The heads of state meet for a week once in every 2 years.
- They have lengthy discussions on issues that are affecting the member states.

iii) The Secretariat.

- It is headed by the Secretary General who is elected by the Commonwealth Heads of state.
- Chief Emeka Anyaoku from Nigeria was the first Secretary General of the Commonwealth of Nations.
- *Patricia Scotland* from Dominican Republic is the current Secretary general of the Commonwealth of Nations.

Duties of the Secretary General.

- To prepare the agenda of the secretarial meetings.
- To supervise commonwealth committees.
- To chair the secretariat meetings.

iv) Ministerial meetings.

- Ministers of Finance and Defense meet once every year while those of Education and Health meet once every after 3 years.
- These ministers meet to discuss issues concerning trade, technology, development, political stability and improved social services.

v) High commissioners.

- *A High commissioner* is a representative of a commonwealth state to another commonwealth state.

for example, the representative of Uganda in South Africa is given a title of a high commissioner.

- His office is at the High commission e.g. The South African High commission in Uganda.
- *An Ambassador* is a representative of a non-commonwealth country in another country.

For example, the representative of USA in Uganda is given a title of an ambassador.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

➢ His office is at the embassy e.g. The American Embassy in Uganda.

Commonwealth areas of work.

- Education
- Sports
- Democracy
- Human rights
- Economics

Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM)

- *CHOGM* is a meeting in which Commonwealth heads of governments meet to discuss matters of mutual interest.
- It is the main decision making forum for the Commonwealth organisation.
- It is held every after 2 years and the Commonwealth chairperson is the president of the hosting country.
- *Mr Boris Johnson* from United Kingdom is the current chairperson of the Commonwealth of Nations (19th-20th April,2018)
- The next CHOGM will be held in Rwanda in 2020 and will be chaired by H.E Paul Kagame.
- *President Yoweri Museveni* was the chairperson of the Commonwealth of Nations in 2007 (23rd-25th November).

Benefits of CHOGM.

- It promotes the development of infrastructure such as hotels, roads etc.
- It attracts many foreign investors.
- It creates market for locally manufactured goods.
- It strengthens friendship among commonwealth countries.
- It opens up the country to the outside world.

Commonwealth games.

- These are an international multi-sport event held every after 4 years.
- The last commonwealth games were held between 4th and 15th April 2018 in Gold Coast-Queensland, Australia.
- The next commonwealth games will be held in Birmingham, England in 2022.

Examples of commonwealth games.

- Athletics
- Badminton
- Beach volleyball
- Boxing
- Cycling
- Wrestling
- Diving
- Gymnastics
- Hockey
- Lawn bowls
- Netball
- Squash
- Swimming
- Tennis
- Weight lifting

Note: -*Commonwealth games promote cooperation among commonwealth countries and also promote the development of infrastructure in the hosting country.*

Objectives of the Commonwealth of Nations.

- To promote democracy among commonwealth member states.
- To promote respect for human rights Commonwealth countries.
- To eradicate poverty in the Commonwealth member states.
- To uplift the standards of living among people in Commonwealth countries.
- To oppose racism in Commonwealth member states.
- To promote trade among Commonwealth states.

Benefits of the Commonwealth of Nations.

- It provides scholarships to students in Commonwealth countries.
- It promotes peace and security in the Commonwealth member countries.
- It provides financial assistance to member states.
- It promotes respect for human rights in its member countries.
- It promotes trade among commonwealth countries.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

❖ It organises commonwealth games which promote friendship among commonwealth countries.

Symbols of the Commonwealth of Nations.

- English language.
- Commonwealth flag.
- Commonwealth anthem.
- Commonwealth day (2nd Monday in March)

Similarities between the UN and the Commonwealth of nations.

❖ Both aim at promoting peace among the member states.
❖ Both promote development in the member states.
❖ Both aim at promoting unity in the member states.
❖ Both work towards improving people's standards of living.

ORGANISATION OF PETROLEUM EXPORTING COUNTRIES (OPEC)



- OPEC is an international organisation that was formed in Baghdad conference on 10th-14th September, 1960 by Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Saudi Arabia and Venezuela.
- It is made up of 15 member states.
- It has its headquarters in Vienna, Austria.

OPEC member states in Africa.

- Algeria
- Angola
- Libya
- Nigeria
- Gabon
- Equatorial Guinea
- Congo Brazzaville.

Other member states of OPEC.

- Iraq
- Iran
- Kuwait
- Qatar
- Saudi Arabia
- United Arab Emirates (UAE)
- Venezuela
- Ecuador

Objectives of OPEC.

❖ To ensure a steady supply of oil products.
❖ To unite all oil producing countries.
❖ To regulate oil production and supply.
❖ To make oil prices constant.

Note:

❖ *Uganda is not a member of OPEC because it has not yet started producing and exporting her petroleum.*
❖ *In East Africa, crude oil is refined at Mombasa in Kenya and Dar-es-salaam in Tanzania.*

Benefits of oil mining to African countries.

❖ It is a source of employment to people.
❖ Oil exports earn foreign exchange.
❖ It is a source of government revenue through taxing oil mining companies.
❖ It is a source of raw materials to industries.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

- ❖ It promotes the development of infrastructure.
- ❖ It is a source of cheap fuel to the people of Africa.

Problems caused by oil mining.

- ❖ It leads to pollution of the environment.
- ❖ It has led to shortage of labour in other sectors.
- ❖ It has led to devegetation.
- ❖ It has led to Rural-urban migration.

Problems facing oil mining in Africa.

- ❖ Insecurity in some oil mining areas.
- ❖ Fluctuation of oil prices on the world market.
- ❖ Competition from other oil producing countries.



Testing Exercise.

1. Name the organisation that was formed to maintain world peace after world war I.
2. What were the Mandate territories?
3. Why did Germany lose her colonies in Africa after world war I?
4. State the main reason for the formation of the league of Nations in 1919.
5. Mention any four mandate territories in Africa during colonial rule.
6. Why does Rwanda use English as her official language?
7. Which East African country is mostly affected by world war I?
8. Why was Uganda involved in world war I?
9. Mention any four organs of the UNO.
10. State the main reason for the formation of the league of nations.
11. Name any three permanent members on the UN Security council.
12. State any two duties performed by the Secretariat of the UN.
13. Who is the current secretary general of the UNO?
14. Which European country is blamed for causing world war I?
15. How was the country in (14) above punished for causing world war I?
16. How is the International Court of Justice important to the UN member states?
17. Which European country colonised Rwanda and Burundi?
18. Why does Rwanda use French as her official language?
19. State the main reason for the formation of the UNO.
20. Name the organisation that was replaced by the UN.
21. Mention any four agencies of the UNO.
22. Give any two ways UNICEF benefits people in your community.
23. State any three ways the UN is important to the member countries.
24. Write the following in full.
    (i) UNESCO
    (ii) UNICEF
    (iii) UNHCR
25. State any three challenges facing the UNO.
26. Where is the headquarters of the UNO?
27. Give any two ways the work of the UNO is similar to that of the African Union.
28. Give any one way UNHCR benefits people in African countries.
29. State any two ways the work of the UNO is different from that of the African Union.
30. Which agency of the UN is responsible for performing the following role?
    (i) Resettling people in war torn areas.

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

(ii) Improving the welfare of vulnerable children.
(iii) Promoting education through culture.

31. Give the meaning of each of the following;
    (i) Basic needs
    (ii) Human rights.
32. Apart from food, mention any two other basic needs of man.
33. Why is food regarded to be a basic need?
34. Give any three reasons why some people in Uganda fail to get basic needs.
35. Mention any four examples of fundamental human rights.
36. Mention any three examples of children's rights.
37. Give any two ways human rights are abused in our society today.
38. Mention any two forms of human rights abuse.
39. Give one way pupils can contribute towards violation of their rights at school.
40. Write UHRC in full.
41. Give one way UHRC is important to the people of Uganda.
42. Give any two ways the government can reduce the violation of people's rights in the community.
43. Name the international organisation that unites all former British colonies.
44. State any two characteristics of the commonwealth countries.
45. Why does Nigeria use English as her official language?
46. State any two reasons for the formation of the Commonwealth of nations.
47. How is a High commissioner different from an Ambassador?
48. Apart from Uganda, mention any four commonwealth member countries in Africa.
49. What title is given to a diplomat who represents;
    (i) Uganda in South Africa?
    (ii) Russia in Uganda?
    (iii) Nigeria in Canada?
50. Write the following in full.
    (i) CHOGM.
    (ii) OPEC
51. Give any three ways Uganda benefited from hosting CHOGM in 2007.
52. Mention any three examples of commonwealth games.
53. Why do individuals who travel abroad to represent Uganda in Commonwealth games carry the Uganda national flag?
54. Give any two ways Uganda benefits from participating in Commonwealth games.
55. Give one reason why the Uganda national anthem is sung in schools.
56. Mention any three member states of OPEC in Africa.
57. Give any two reasons why OPEC was formed.
58. Name the mineral that was discovered in the Albertine region recently.
59. Mention any three oil wells located in the Albertine region.
60. Give any three ways Ugandans will benefit from the extraction of petroleum in the Albertine region.

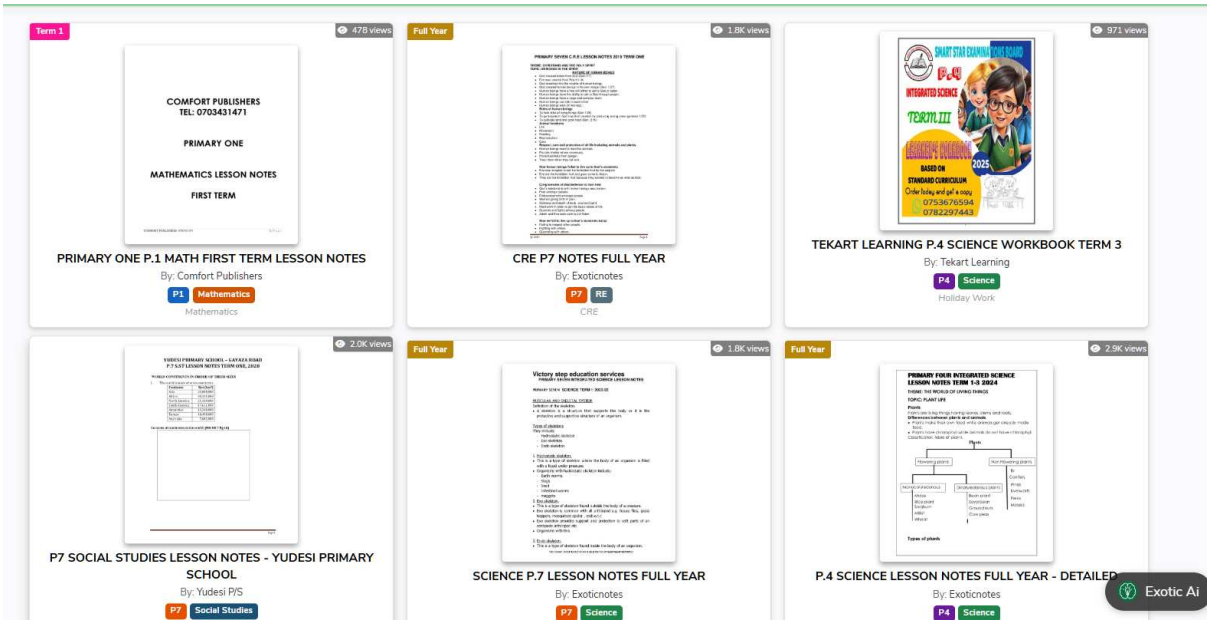
End Of Primary Seven Social Studies Syllabus



"Wishes You Success In Your PLE Exams"

apolokimbugwe504@gmail.com TEL: +256771623617 / +256700770630

This document was downloaded from https://exoticnotes.com



Do you need more LESSON NOTES for Primary (All classes)?

Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/

If you need LESSON NOTES for SCIENCE (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/science/

If you need LESSON NOTES for English (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/english/

If you need LESSON NOTES for Mathematics (P.1 – P.7)
Click
https://exoticnotes.com/notes/primary/mathematics/